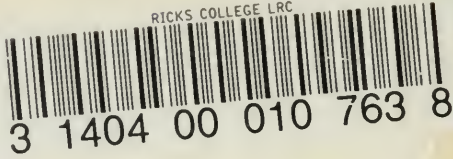
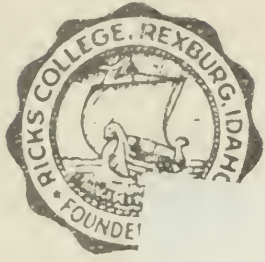




# David O. McKay Library



## DATE DUE

DATE DUE	
DEC 19 1997	
FEB 26 2001	

200







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2013

# The Students' Interlinear Translations

THE INTERLINEAR is admittedly the student's most effective aid in translating the classics. Directly beneath each Latin or Greek word (and the original text form is given in full) is the English equivalent. Thus the exact meaning of each word is clearly understood and a clear translation can be obtained without constant turning to the vocabulary and grammar for forgotten words and constructions.

Caesar's Gallic War  
Cicero on Old Age and  
Friendship  
Cicero's Orations  
Cornelius Nepos  
Demosthenes On the  
Crown  
Homer's Iliad  
Horace  
Juvenal  
Livy, Books 21-22 and  
Selections from Books  
1-6

Ovid's Metamorphoses Com-  
plete  
Sallust's Catiline and Jugurth-  
ine Wars  
Tacitus' Germany & Agricola  
Virgil's Aeneid, First 6 Books  
Virgil's Aeneid, 12 Books  
Virgil's Eclogues, Georgics and  
the last 6 Books of Aeneid  
Xenophon's Anabasis  
Xenophon's Memorabilia  
Greek New Testament, \$2.50

*Price, \$2.00 each*

Translation Publishing Co., Inc.

76 Fifth Avenue

New York City

CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES

ON THE

GALLIC WAR

*The Original Text with a Literal Interlinear Translation  
and Explanatory Notes*

BY

FREDERICK HOLLAND DEWEY, A. B.



TRANSLATION PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.

76 FIFTH AVENUE

NEW YORK CITY

COPYRIGHT, 1916  
COPYRIGHT, 1918

TRANSLATION PUBLISHING COMPANY, INC.

PRINTED IN THE U. S. A.

## INTRODUCTION

---

Since Caesar is the first Roman author studied by beginners in Latin, a translation of his work should be practical and helpful for both teacher and student. Such a translation, especially an inter-linear, must not be so smooth and polished in English style and diction as to escape the true Latin meaning of word and phrase, or so slavishly literal and exact that the real meaning is clouded by the abuse of English idiom.

Owing to the style and nature of Caesar's work, it is impossible to produce an elegant, polished English rendering, and at the same time indicate the full force and meaning of the original. The Commentaries of Caesar are camp notes, hastily composed, and sent to Rome annually, merely as military reports. The author never considered them a classical production and for that reason never carefully revised and polished them as did Cicero his famous orations.

As Caesar, in early life, devoutly studied and practiced versification, with the secret hope of becoming a famous poet, his writings are occasionally enlivened with poetic terms and expressions. Although his epigrams and lyrics have disappeared, his military notes, hastily written, have become immortal. The poetic element in the Commentaries appearing in many vivid and original uses of words, calls for especial attention in a translation. These Commentaries, little valued as a literary work by the author, were soon adopted as a text by ancient Roman teachers, and ever since have been found indispensable in classical instruction because of their artistic perfection. We have endeavored to indicate these natural touches by following Caesar as closely as possible.

The elements of Caesar's work which render it so suitable as a means of instruction also make it the most difficult to translate into good English. The Commentaries, being mere camp notes, are written with a conciseness, force and teeming thought in a climactic progress, which the English idiom can with difficulty reproduce from the brevity of the Latin. Caesar's command of climax, his fluency, his poetic use of words, together with his philosophic outlook, cause a strictly literal translation to be very inadequate.

The frequent use of indirect discourse is also an added difficulty for the translator. If the rendering of such passages is too free, the translation as a reproduction of the Latin thought and a clue to the Latin construction, will be most misleading to the student. For practical use a translation must be transparent and behind it the original language must be visible. In certain passages where Caesar desires to represent rapid action, he has used a vivid and condensed form of construction, even for Latin. A smooth and easy rendering would fail to reproduce the life and vitality of Caesar's thought.

He will suddenly use a word in a bright and original manner, even as we might expect from the pen of a poet, and unless the feeling and force of the passage is rendered as well as the bare thought, an important element of Caesar's style is entirely lost. Caesar possessed such a command of both the essential and secondary meanings of Latin terms that his brief and cursory notes shine with these gems of thought. The natural Latin order of thought and expression, a style somewhat inverted to the English thinking mind, of course is found in Caesar in all its Roman complexity. Beside Caesar has inverted forms of expression, peculiarly his own.

Translators therefore have found it impracticable to preserve the Latin order of the original and the student after the use of the interlinear must reconstruct his own translation and by comparison with the usual text book, will be able to appreciate the power and beauty of the Latin language, which must in a large degree escape even the most careful translation, as a result of the artificial English order of the Latin words.



Owing to the prevalence of these difficulties throughout the Commentaries of Caesar and the inadequacy of the usual methods of translation, a new system has been adopted in the production of this interlinear. In the reproduction of the Latin words into English it has been the endeavor to render the Latin terms as literally and exactly as possible, consistent with good English idiom. To remedy the crudeness of passages which have been impossible to render exactly into our idiom in an interlinear translation and which would become too wordy beneath the Latin, explanatory notes have been added in many instances providing a freer translation. Notes of this nature are an innovation in an interlinear and taken together with the parallel translation will afford both a free and an exactly literal rendering. In this manner the full meaning, the original and poetic feeling, the strength and rapidity, the artistic completeness of Caesar's style, by comparison of the renderings, can be obtained.

In order to modify exact renderings so that a more pleasing English idiom may be produced, not too far removed from the Latin sense, brackets have been used about these synonymous terms and expressions. In translating, if desired, these bracketed portions may be substituted for the more exact renderings which immediately precede. It has been the endeavor in every instance not to use in brackets any forms which would mislead the student concerning the essential meanings of the Latin text.

Words and expressions which may be entirely omitted or those which may be supplied bodily to suit more nearly the English phraseology, and which are not synonymous, have been inserted in parentheses. Such parenthetical portions may be used or omitted as the student's judgment may decide in order to obtain the best English rendering. In the preparation of this work the standard Latin school text as regards punctuation and orthography in so far as possible has been followed.





THE COMMENTARIES OF  
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR  
ON THE  
GALLIC WAR

---

FIRST BOOK

Cæsar, in recounting the events of the war which he waged in Gaul, first describes Gaul itself, then tells of two battles against the Helvetians and then of one against the Germans.

1. Omnis<sup>1</sup> Gallia est divisa in tres partes: unam  
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one  
quarum Belgæ incolunt; aliam Aquitani; tertiam,  
of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third,  
qui linguâ ipsorum appellantur  
(those) who in (the) language of themselves are called  
Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter  
Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between  
se linguâ, institutis, legibus. Flumen  
themselves in language, in institutions, (and) in laws. The river  
Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis,  
Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,  
Matrona et Sequana à Belgis. Belgæ sunt  
the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are  
fortissimi omnium horum, propterea quod absunt  
the bravest of all these, because (that) they are distant  
longissimè à cultu atque humanitate  
farthest from the cultivation and humanity [refinement]  
Provinciæ; que mercatores minimè sæpe  
of the Province [Provence]; and merchants least often

commēant ad ěos, atque important ěa,  
resort to them, and import those (things)

quæ pertinent ad animos effeminandos.  
which tend to minds to be effeminated [to enfeeble

Sunt proximi Germanis, qui  
their minds]. They are nearest to the Germans, who

incōlunt trans Rhenum, cum quibus gērunt  
dwell beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry on

bellum continenter : de quâ causâ Helvetii  
war continually : from which cause the Helvetii

quōque præcedunt reliquos Gallos virtute ;  
also go before [excel] the remaining Gauls in valor ;

quòd contendunt cum Germanis fērè, quotidianis  
because they contend with the Germans almost, in daily

prœliis quum aut prohibent ěos suis  
battles when either they prohibit [bar] them from their own

finibus, aut ipsi gērunt bellum in  
borders, or they [themselves] carry on war in

finibus eorum.<sup>2</sup> Una pars eorum, quam  
the borders of them [their]. One part of them, which

dictum-est Gallos obtinere, cāpit initium à  
it has been said the Gauls to hold, [possess] takes beginning from

flumīne Rhodāno ; continetur flumīne Garumnâ,  
the river Rhone ; it is bounded by the river Garonne,

Oceāno, finibus Belgarum ; etiā attingit  
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum<sup>3</sup> à Sequānis et  
[reaches to] the river Rhine from the Sequani and

Helvetiis ;<sup>4</sup> vergit ad Septentriones.  
the Helvetii : it inclines to the seven stars [the North].

Belgæ oriuntur ab extremis finibus Galliæ ;  
The Belgæ rise from the farthest borders of Gaul ;

pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni ;  
they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine ;

spectant in Septentriones et orientem solem.  
they look unto [towards] the North and the rising sun.

Aquitaniā pertinet à flumīne Garumnâ ad  
Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et ěam partem Oceāni,  
 the Pyrenees mountains, and that part of the Ocean,  
 quæ est ad Hispaniā, spectat inter occasum  
 which is [next] to Spain, it looks between the going down  
 Solis et Septentriones.  
 of the sun [West] and the North.

2. Orgetōrix fuit longè nobilissimus et ditissimus  
 Orgetorix was by far the most noble and the richest  
 apud Helvetios. Is, Marco Messalā et Marco  
 among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus  
 Pisone consulibus, inductus cupiditate regni,  
 Piso (being) consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom, [of  
 fecit conjurationem nobilitatis; et persuasit  
 reigning] made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded  
 civitati, ut exirent de suis finibus  
 (to) the state that they should go out from their own borders  
 cum omnibus copiis: esse perfacile, quum  
 with all their forces: to be [that it was] very easy, since  
 præstarent (imp. subj.) omnibus virtute, potiri  
 they were excelling (to) all in valor, to gain  
 imperio totius Galliæ. Persuait id eis<sup>5</sup>  
 the empire of all Gaul. He persuaded (to) this (to) them  
 hoc facilius, quòd Helvetii continentur  
 by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained in [hemmed in]  
 undique natura loci; ex<sup>6</sup> unā parte,  
 on every side by the nature of the place; from [on] one side,  
 latissimo atque altissimo flumine Rheno,  
 by the widest [very wide] and very deep river Rhine,  
 qui dividit Helvetium agrum à Germanis:  
 which divides the Helvetian land from the Germans:  
 ex alterā parte, altissimo monte Jurā,  
 on the other side, by the very high mountain Jura, [St. Cloude]  
 qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios;  
 which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (on the)  
 tertīa, lacu Lemano, et  
 third (side), by lake Lemanus [the lake Geneva], and  
 flumine Rhodāno, qui dividit nostram provinciam  
 by the river Rhone, which divides our province

ab Helvetiis. Fiebat  
 [Provence] from the Helvetii. It was made [it happened]  
 his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp.sub.) minus  
 by these things, that both they were roving less  
 latè et possent (imp.sub.) minus facilè inferre  
 widely and were able less easily to bring on  
 bellum finitimis. De<sup>7</sup> quâ causâ homines  
 [wage] war (on) neighbors. From which cause men  
 cupidi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem  
 desirous of warring were affected with great distress. But  
 arbitrabantur<sup>8</sup> se habere angustos fines, pro  
 they were deeming themselves to have narrow borders, for  
 multitudîne hominum et pro gloriâ belli atque  
 the multitude of men and for the glory of war and  
 fortitudinis; qui patebant ducenta et  
 of bravery; which was lying open [extending] two hundred and  
 quadraginta millia passuum in longitudinem, centum  
 forty thousand (of) paces into [in] length, a hundred  
 et octoginta in latitudinem.  
 and eighty into [in] width.

3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate  
 Induced by these things, and excited by the authority  
 Orgetorigis, constituerunt comparare ea,  
 of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)  
 quæ pertinerent (imp.subj.) ad proficiscendum;  
 which were pertaining to setting out; [the expedition]  
 coëmère quàm maximum numerum  
 to buy up as the greatest [the greatest possible] number  
 jumentorum et carrorum; facerè<sup>9</sup> quàm  
 of beasts of burden [cattle] and of wagons; to make as  
 maximas sementes, ut copia frumenti suppeteret  
 the greatest sowings, that a supply of corn might be at hand  
 in itinere; confirmare pacem et amicitiam cum  
 on the way [march]; to confirm peace and friendship with  
 proximis civitatibus. Duxerunt biennium<sup>10</sup>  
 the nearest states. They led [thought] two years  
 esse satis sibi ad eas res  
 time to be enough for themselves for those things

conficiendas ; confirmant lege profectionem  
to be accomplished; they established by law (their) departure

in tertium annum. Orgetōrix<sup>11</sup> deligitur ad  
upon [for] the third year. Orgetorix is chosen for

ĕas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sibi  
those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself

legationem ad civitates. In ěo itinĕre persuadet  
an embassy to the states. In this journey he persuades

Castico, filio Catamantaledis, Seqāno, pāter<sup>12</sup>  
(to) Casticus, son of Catamantaledes, a Sequanian, the father

cujus obtinuĕrat regnum in Sequānis multos  
of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many

annos, et appellatus-ĕrat amicus Romani populi  
years, and had been called friend of the Roman people

à Senatu, ut occuparet regnum in  
by the Senate, that he should occupy the kingdom in

sũa civitate, quod pāter antĕ habuĕrat: que  
his own state, which (his) father before had held: and

item persuadet Ædũo Dumnorīgi, fratri  
likewise he persuades (to) the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother

Divitiāci, qui ěo tempĕre obtinebat principatum  
of Divitiacus, who in this time was holding sovereignty

in sũa civitate, ac ĕrat maximĕ acceptus  
in his state, and was especially acceptable

plebi, ut conaretur ĭdem;  
to the common people, that he should attempt the same (thing);

que dat sũam filiam in matrimonium ĕi.  
and gives his daughter into [in] marriage to him.

Prĕbat illis esse perfacile factu  
He proves to them to be [that it was] very easy to be done

perficĕre conata, propterĕa quod ipse  
to effect (the things) attempted, because (that) (he) himself

esset (imp.subj.) obtenturus imperium sũæ  
was about to hold [obtain] the empire of his

civitatis: esse non dubium quin  
state: to be [that it was] not doubtful but that

Helvetii possent (imp.subj.) plurimum totius  
the Helvetians were able most [most powerful] of all



Gallïæ; confirmat,<sup>13</sup> se conciliaturum  
 Gaul; he confirms [assures], himself about to secure  
 regna illis suis copiis que suo exercitu.  
 the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.

Adducti hâc oratione, dant inter se  
 Induced by this speech, they give between themselves  
 fidem et jusjurandum; et regno  
 faith and oath; and the kingdom [government]

occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos  
 being occupied by three most powerful and most steadfast

populos, sperant<sup>14</sup> sese posse potiri totius  
 peoples, they hope themselves to be able to possess (of) all

Gallïæ.  
 Gaul.

4. Ut ãa res enuntiata-est Helvetiis per  
 When this thing [action] was declared to the Helvetii through  
 indicium, suis moribus coegerunt Orgetorigem dicere  
 a disclosure, by their customs they forced Orgetorix to say

causam ex vinculis. Oportebat pœnam  
 [plead] (his) cause from [in] bonds. It must be punishment

sęqui damnatum, ut cremaretur  
 to [should] follow (him) condemned, (viz:) that he be burnt

igni. Die constitutâ dictionis causæ,  
 with fire. On the day appointed of saying [pleading] the cause,

Orgetorix coegit omnem suam familiam, ad  
 Orgetorix collected all his family, [clan] to [about]

decem millia hominum ad judicium; et<sup>15</sup>  
 ten thousand (of) men to the trial; and

conduxit eodem omnes suos clientes que  
 he led together to the same place all his clients and

obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numerum:  
 debt bondsmen, of whom he was having a great number;

per eos, eripuit se ne-diceret  
 by these, he rescued himself that he might not plead

causam. Quum civitas, incitata ob  
 the cause. When the state, excited on account of

eam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exęqui suum jus  
 this thing, was endeavoring to execute its right

armis, que magistratus cogērent (imp. subj.)  
by arms, and the magistrates were collecting

multitudīnem homīnum ex agris, Orgetōrix mortūus-est;  
a multitude of men out of the fields, Orgetorix died;

nēque<sup>16</sup> suspiciō ābest, ut Helvetīi arbitrantur, quin  
nor suspicion is absent, as the Helvetii think, but that

ipse consciverit (perf. subj.) mortem sibi.  
himself determined death to himself [committed suicide].

5. Nihilominūs post mortem ejus Helvetīi  
Nevertheless after the death of him the Helvetii

conantur facere id, quod constituērant, ut  
endeavor to do this, which they had determined, that

exēant ē sūis finibus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt  
they may go out from their borders. When now they deemed

se paratos-esse ad ěam rem, incendunt  
themselves to have been prepared to [for] this thing, they set fire to

omnia sūa oppīda, ad duodēcim nunēro, vicos  
all their towns, to [about] twelve in number, viliares

ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia;  
to [about] four hundred, the remaining private buildings;

comburunt omne frumentum, prāter quod ěrant  
they burn up all the eorn, except (that) which they were

portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis  
about to carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return

dōmum sublatā, essent<sup>17</sup> paratiores ad  
home being taken away, they might be more ready to

omnia pericūla subeunda: jūbent quemque  
all dangers to be undergone: they order each

afferre dōmo sibi molīta cibariā trīum  
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of [for] three

mensūm. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,  
months. They persuade (to) the Rauraei, and (to) the Tulingi,

et Latobrigis, finitīmis, uti usi  
and (to) the Latobrigi, (their) neighbors, that having adopted

eodem consilio, sūis oppīdis que vicis  
the same plan, their towns and villages

exustis, profiscantur unā cum eis:  
having been burnt up, they should depart together with them:

que<sup>18</sup> adsciscunt receptos ad se socios  
 and they vote in received to themse. es as allies  
 sibi, Boios, qui incoluerant trans Rhenum  
 to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt across the Rhine  
 et transierant in Noricum agrum, que  
 and had passed over into the Norican land, and  
 oppugnarent Noreiam.  
 had besieged Noreia.

6. Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus  
 There were in all two roads, by which roads  
 possent exire domo; unum per  
 they might be able to go forth from home; one through  
 Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem  
 the Sequani narrow and difficult between Mount  
 Juram et flumen Rhodanum, qua singuli  
 Jura and the river Rhone, by [in] which single  
 carri vix ducerentur; autem altissimus  
 wagons scarcely could be led; but [moreover] the highest [a very  
 mons impendebat, ut perpauci facile  
 high] mountain was overhanging, so that very few easily  
 possent prohibere; alterum per nostram  
 would be able [could] (to) prohibit; the other through our  
 provinciam, multo facilius atque expeditius;  
 province, much more easy and more unimpeded;  
 propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et  
 because (that) between the borders of the Helvetii and  
 Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati-erant,  
 of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace [subdued]  
 Rhodanus fluit, que is nonnullis locis transitur  
 the Rhone flows, and this in some places is passed  
 vado. Genava est extremum oppidum Allobrogum  
 by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges  
 que proximum finibus Helvetiorum; ex eo  
 and nearest to the borders of the Helvetii; from that  
 oppido pons pertinet ad Helvetios. Existimabant<sup>19</sup>  
 town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They were thinking  
 sese ve persuasuros Allobrogibus, (dat.) quod  
 themselves either about to persuade the Allobroges, because



viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bõno anõmo in  
 they were seeming not yet with good mind towards  
 Romanum popũlum; vel coacturos vi,  
 the Roman people; or about to force by violence,  
 ut paterentur õos ire per sũos fines.  
 that they should suffer them to go through their borders.  
 Omnĩbus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,  
 All things being prepared for (their) departure,  
 dicunt dõem, quã dõe omnes conveniant  
 they say [appoint] a day, on which day all may assemble  
 ad ripam Rhodãni. Is dões õrat ante quintum  
 at the bank of the Rhone. This day was before the fifth  
 dõem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucõo Pisone,  
 day of the Kalends of April [27th March]; Lucius Piso,  
 Aulo Gabinõo consulĩbus.  
 Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls.

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsãri,  
 When this had been told to Cæsar (that),  
 õos conari facõre õter per nostram  
 them to [they would] endeavor to make a journey through our  
 provinciã, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et  
 province, he hastens to depart from the city, and  
 contendit in ulteriorem Gallĩam itinerĩbus<sup>20</sup> quã  
 rushes into farther Gaul by journeys as  
 maxĩmis põtest, et pervõnit ad Genavam. Impõrat  
 greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders  
 toti provinciãe quã maxĩmum  
 (to) the whole province (to furnish) as greatest [the greatest  
 numõrum milĩtum (una legõo õrat omnino  
 possible] number of soldiers (one legion was in all  
 in ulteriore Gailã). Jũbet pontem, qui õrat  
 in farther Gaul). He orders the bridge, which was  
 ad Genavam, rescindi. Ubi Helvetĩi facti-sunt  
 at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made  
 certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissĩmos  
 more certain [told] of the arrival of him, they sent the noblest  
 civitatis legatos ad õum; cujus legationis  
 of the state (as) ambassadors to him; of which embassy

Nummeius et Verudoctius obtinebant principem locum:  
 Numcius and Verodoctius were holding the chief place:

qui dicèrent esse sibi in animo,  
 who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they  
 sine ullo maleficio facere iter per  
 intended) ,without any damage to make a journey through  
 provinciam, propterea quod haberent (imp. subj.) nullum  
 the province, because (that) they were having 110

aliud iter: rogare,<sup>21</sup> ut liceat sibi  
 other journey [road]: to ask, that it may be lawful to themselves  
 facere id voluntate ejus. Cæsar,<sup>22</sup> quod tenebat  
 to do this by the will of him. Cæsar, because he held

memoriam, Lucium Cassium consulem occisum, que  
 in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and  
 exercitum ejus pulsum ab Helvetiis, et missum  
 the army of him driven [routed] by the Helvetii, and sent

sub jugum, putabat non concedendum; neque  
 under the yoke, considered (it) not to be granted; nor

existimabat homines inimico animo, facultate  
 did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty

faciendi itineris per provinciam datam,  
 of making a journey through the province being given,

temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio: Tamen  
 about to refrain [would refrain] from injury and damage: However

ut spatium posset intercedere, dum milites,  
 that a space [period] might be able to intervene, while the soldiers,

quos imperaverat, convenirent, respondit,  
 whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, (to the

se<sup>23</sup> sumpturum diem ad deliberandum;  
 ambassadors) himself about to take a day [time] to deliberate;

si vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad  
 if they were wishing any thing let them return at

idos Aprilis.  
 the ides of April.

8. Inter ea eam legione, quam habebat  
 Meanwhile with this legion, which he was having

cum se que militibus qui conveniant ex  
 with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from

provinciā, perducit murum in altitudinem  
the province, he constructs a wall into [in] height

sēdecim pēdum, que fossam à lācu Lemanno,  
(of) sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,

qui inflūit in flumen Rhodānum, ad montem Juram,  
which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura,

qui dividit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis,  
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

dēcem<sup>24</sup> et nōvem millia (pl.) pasūm. Eo opère  
ten and nine [nineteen] thousand (of) paces. This work

perfecto, disponit præsidiā, communit castella;  
being completed, he posts garrisons, (he) fortifies the redoubts;

quō posset prohibere faciliūs, si  
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.  
they should endeavor to pass over, himself (being) unwilling.

Ubi ēa dīes venit, quam constituērat cum  
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad eum;  
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him;

nēgat<sup>25</sup> se more et exemplo Romani  
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

popūli, posse dāre iter per provinciā ulli;  
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.  
and shows (himself) about to prohibit, if they attempt

subj.) facere vim. Helvetii dejecti ēa  
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from this

spe, alii, navibus<sup>26</sup> junctis, que compluribus  
hope, others [some], ships being joined, and a great many

ratibus factis, alii vadis Rhodāni, quā<sup>27</sup>  
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdū,  
the least depth of the river was, sometimes in daytime,

sæpiūs noctu, conati si possent (imp.  
more often by night, having endeavored if they were able

subj.) perrumpere, repulsi munitione (sing.)  
to break through repulsed by the fortifications

opëris, et concursu et telis  
of the work, and by the charge and weapons

militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.  
of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavor.

9. Una vïa per Sequanos relinquebatur;  
One way through the Sequani was left;

quâ, Sequanis invitis, poterant non  
by which the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustias. Quum possent (imp.  
to go on account of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere iis (dat.) suâ sponte,  
not to persuade them by their own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorigem Ædum,  
they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduam,

ut, eo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à  
that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequanis. Dumnorix poterat plurimum  
the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most [had very great in-

fluence] apud Sequanos gratiâ et largitione, et  
with the Sequani by service and (by) iavishness, and

erat amicus Helvetiis, quòd<sup>28</sup> duxerat in  
was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonium filiam Orgetorigis ex eâ civitate;  
marriage the daughter of Orgetorix from that state;

et<sup>29</sup> adductus cupiditate regni, studebat  
and induced by a desire of the kingdom, he was eager

novis rebus; et volebat habere quamplurimas  
for new things; and was wishing to have as many as possible

civitates obstrictas suo beneficio sibi. Itaque  
states bound by his favor to himself. Therefore

suscipit rem, et impetrat à Sequanis,  
he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetios ire per suos  
that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

fines, que perficit uti dent obsides inter  
borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequani ne prohibeant  
themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit [that they may

not prohibit] Helvetios the Helvetii itinēre; from the journey; Helvetii, the Helvetii  
 ut transēant sine maleficio et injuriā.  
 that they may pass without damage and injury.  
 10. Nuntiatur Cæsāri, esse in animo,  
 It is announced to Cæsar, to be [it is] in the mind,  
 Helvetiis facere iter per agrum  
 to [of] the Helvetii to make the journey through the land  
 Sequanorum et Æduorum in fines  
 of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the borders  
 Santōnum, qui absunt non longè à  
 of the Santones, who are distant not far from  
 finibus Tolosatium, quæ civitas est in provinciâ.  
 the borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province.  
 Si id fieret (imp. subj.) intelligebat futurum  
 If this should be[were]done he understood (it) about to be[it would  
 cum magno periculo provinciæ, ut haberet  
 be] with great danger of the province, that it should have  
 bellicosos homines, inimicos Romani populi,  
 warlike men, enemies of the Roman people,  
 finitimos locis patentibus et maxime  
 neighbors to places open and especially  
 frumentariis. Ob eas causas præfecit  
 abounding in corn. On account of these causes he appointed  
 Titum Labienum legatum ei munitioni quam  
 Titus Labienus lieutenant to this fortification which  
 fecerat: ipse contendit in  
 he had made: (he) himself hastens into  
 Italiam magnis itineribus que ibi conscribit duas  
 Italy by great journeys and there he levies two  
 legiones; et educit ex hibernis tres,  
 legions; and he leads from winter quarters the three,  
 quæ hiemabant circum Aquileiam; et<sup>30</sup> quâ  
 which were wintering around Aquileia; and by which  
 iter erat proximum in ulteriorem Galliam  
 (way) the journey was nearest into farther Gaul  
 per Alpes, contendit ire cum his  
 through the Alps, he hastens to go with these



quinque legionibus. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli,  
 five legions. There the Centrones and the Graioceli,  
 et Caturiges, superioribus locis occupatis  
 and the Caturiges, the higher places having been occupied  
 conantur prohibere exercitum itinere. His  
 endeavor to check the army on the journey. These  
 pulsus compluribus præliis, pervenit ab  
 having been repulsed in several battles, he comes from  
 Ocelo, quod est extremum citerioris provinciæ,  
 Ocelum, which is the extreme(town) of the hither province,  
 in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciæ  
 into the borders of the Vocontii of the farther province  
 septimo die; inde in fines Allobrogum;  
 on the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;  
 ducit exercitum ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos.  
 he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiavi.

Hi sunt primi extra provinciã trans Rhodanum.  
 These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxerant suas copias  
 The Helvetii already had led over their forces

per angustias et fines Sequanorum et  
 through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and  
 pervenerant in fines Æduorum, que  
 had come into the borders of the Ædui, and  
 populabantur agros eorum. Ædũi, quum  
 were laying waste the lands of them. The Ædui when  
 possent (imp. subj.) non defendere se que<sup>31</sup>  
 they were able not to defend themselves and

sua ab his, mittunt legatos ad  
 their own(effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsarem rogatum auxilium; "se omni tempore  
 Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

meritos esse ita de Romano populo, ut,  
 (to) have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercitus, agrum  
 almost in sight of our army, (their) lands

deberint (perf. subj.) non vastari, liberi<sup>32</sup>  
 ought not to be laid waste the children

eorum abduci in servitatem, oppīda  
 of them to be led away into slavery, the towns  
 expugnari.” Eodem tempore, Ædūi  
 to be taken by storm.” At the same time, the Ædui  
 Ambarri quōque, necessariī et consanguinēi  
 Ambarri also, friends and kinsmen  
 Æduorum, faciunt Cæsārem certiorē,  
 of the Ædui, make Cæsar more certain [inform Cæsar],  
 “sese, agris<sup>33</sup> depopulatis, non facīlè prohibere  
 “themselves, the lands being depopulated, not easily to prohibit  
 vim hostīum ab oppīdis.” Item  
 the violence of the enemy from the towns.” Likewise  
 Allobrōges, qui habebant vicos que  
 the Allobroges, who were having villages and  
 possessiones trans Rhodānum, recipiunt se fūgā  
 possessions beyond the Rhone, betake themselves in flight  
 ad Cæsārem; et<sup>34</sup> demonstrant, nihil reliqui  
 to Cæsar; and show, nothing of remaining  
 esse sibi præter solum agri. Adductus  
 to be to themselves beside the soil of the land. Induced  
 quibus rebus, Cæsar statuit non expectandum  
 by which things, Cæsar resolved not to be waited  
 sibi, num, omnibus  
 to [by] himself [that he ought not to wait], until, all  
 fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetiī  
 the fortunes of the allies having been consumed, the Helvetii  
 pervenirent (imp.subj.) in Santōnes.  
 should come into the Santones.  
 12. Arar est flumen, quod influit in  
 The Arar [the Saone] is a river, which flows into  
 Rhodānum incredibili lenitate per fines  
 the Rhone with incredible smoothness through the borders  
 Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit  
 of the Ædui and of the Sequani: so that it is possible  
 non judicari oculis in utram partem  
 not to be judged by the eyes in which part [direction]  
 fluat. (pres. sub.) Helvetiī transibant id, ratibus ac  
 it flows, The Helvetii were crossing this, rafts and

lintribus junctis. Ubi<sup>35</sup> Cæsar factus-est certior  
 boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain  
 per exploratores, Helvetios jam transduxisse  
 by scouts (that), the Helvetii already to have [had] led over  
 id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam  
 this river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth  
 partem esse reliquam citra flumen Ararim;  
 part to be remaining on this side the river Arar [Saone];  
 de tertîâ vigiliâ profectus è  
 from [at] the third watch [midnight] having set out from  
 castris cum tribus legionibus pervenit ad eam  
 the camp with three legions he arrives [comes] to this  
 partem, quæ nondum transierat flumen.  
 part, which not yet had passed the river.  
 Aggressus eos impeditos et inopinantes  
 Having attacked them encumbered and unaware  
 concidit magnam partem eorum; reliqui  
 he cut up [slew] a great part of them; the rest  
 mandârunt sese fugæ atque abdiderunt in  
 committed themselves to flight and hid away into [among]  
 proximas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:  
 the nearest woods. This canton was called the Tigurine:  
 nam omnis Helvetia civitas divisa-est in  
 for all the Helvetian state has been divided into  
 quatuor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum  
 four cantons. This one canton, when  
 exisset (pl. pref. subj.) dõmo, memoriâ  
 it had gone out from home, in the memory  
 nostrorum patrum, interfecerat Lucium Cassium  
 of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius  
 Consulem, et miserat exercitum ejus sub  
 the Consul, and had sent the army of him [his army] under  
 jûgum. Ita sive casu, sive consilio  
 the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the plan  
 immortalium deorum, pars Helvetiæ civitatis,  
 of the immortal gods, the part of the Helvetian state,  
 quæ intulerat insignem calamitatem Romano  
 which had brought on a remarkable calamity to the Roman



popŭlo, ěa princeps persolvit pœnas. In quâ  
 people, this chief [first] paid penalties. In which  
 re Cæsar ultus-est non solùm publicas sed etiã  
 thing Cæsar avenged not only public but also  
 privatas injuriãs; quòd Tigurini interfecerãnt  
 private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain  
 Lucium Pisonem legatum, ãvum Lucii  
 Lueius Piso the lieutenant, (general) grandfather of Lueius  
 Pisonis soceri ejus, eodem prœlio,  
 Piso father in law of him [Cæsar], in the same battle,  
 quo Cassium.  
 in which (they slew) Cassius.

13. Hoc prœlio facto, ut posset  
 This battle having been made, that he might be able  
 consēqui reliquas copias Helvetiorum, curat<sup>36</sup>  
 to reach the remaining fores of the Helvetii, he takes care  
 pontem faciendum in Arãre, atque ita transducit  
 a bridge to be made on the Arar, [Saone] and so leads over  
 exercitum. Helvetii commoti repentino adventu  
 the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival  
 ejus, quum<sup>37</sup> intelligerent (imp. subj.) illum  
 of him, when they were understanding him  
 fecisse uno die id, quod ipsi  
 to have [he had] done in one day that, which [they] themselves  
 confecerãnt ægerrimè viginti diebus, ut  
 had accomplished most grievously in twenty days, that  
 transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad  
 they should pass the river, send ambassadors to  
 ěum; cujus legationis Divico fuit princeps, qui  
 him; of which embassy Divico was chief, who  
 fuerat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano bellum.  
 had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war.  
 Is ita egit cum Cæsãre; “si Romanus  
 He thus acts [treats] with Cæsar; “if the Roman  
 popŭlus faceret pacem cum Helvetiis, Helvetios  
 people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii  
 ituros in ěam partem, atque futuros  
 about to go[would go] into that part, and about to [would] be

ĭbi, ubi Cæsar constituisset atque voluisset  
 there, where Cæsar might appoint and might wish (them)  
 esse; sin perseveraret persęqui bello,  
 to be; but if he should continue to pursue with war,  
 reminisceretur vetęris incommōdi Romani  
 let him remember (of) the old misfortune of the Roman  
 popŭli, et pristinę virtutis Helvetiorum:  
 people, and (of) the ancient valor of the Helvetii:  
 quōd adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvisō  
 because he had assailed unexpectedly  
 unum pagum, quum ĩi, qui trans-  
 one canton, when these, who had  
 ĩsset (pl. perf. subj.) flumen, possent (imp. subj.)  
 crossed the river, were able  
 non ferre auxiliŭm sŭis; tribuęret  
 not to bring aid to their (people); let him attribute  
 ne aut magnopęre sŭę virtuti ob  
 not either very greatly to his own valor on account of  
 ęam rem, aut despiceret ipsos.  
 this thing, nor let him despise themselves.  
 Se ĩta didicisse ā sŭis patribus  
 They themselves so (to) have learned from their fathers  
 que majoribus, ut contendęrent męgis  
 and elders, that they should contend more  
 virtute quām niterentur dōlo, aut  
 by valor than (that) they should strive by deceit, or  
 insidiis. Quare committeret ne, ut  
 stratagems. Wherefore he should permit not, that  
 is lōcus, ũbi constitissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
 this place, where they had stood  
 capęret nomen ac prodęret memorięm  
 should take (its) name and hand down the memory  
 ex calamitate Romani popŭli, et  
 from the calamity of the Roman people, and  
 interneccione exercitŭs.  
 the destruction of the army.

14. Cæsar respondit ĩta his; “ęd  
 Cæsar answered thus to these (words); “therefore

mĭnus dubitationis dāri sĭbi, quòd  
less (of) doubt to be [was] given to himself, because

teneret (imp.subj.) ěas res memoriā, quas  
he was holding these things in memory, which

Helvetĭi legati commemorāssent (pl. perf.  
the Helvetian ambassadors had mentioned

subj.), atque ferre ěò gravĭus,  
and to bear [he bore it] for this the more heavily,

quòd accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) mĭnus  
that they had befallen the less

merĭto Romani popŭli, qui si  
by the merit of the Roman people, which if

fuisse (pl. perf. subj.) conscĭus sĭbi alicujus  
it had been conscious to itself of some

injurĭæ, fuisse non  
injury (done to the Helvetii) to have been not [it would not have been]

difficĭle cavere; sed deceptum  
difficult to beware [to be on guard], but to have [it was] deceived in

ěo, quòd nĕque intelligĕret (imp. subj.)  
this, because neither was it thinking (anything)

commissum à se, quare timeret; nĕque  
to have [had] been committed by itself, wherefore it should fear; nor

putaret (imp.subj.) timendum sine causā.  
was it thinking to be feared [it should fear] without cause.

Quòd si vellet (imp.subj.) oblivisci vetĕris contumeliā,  
But if he was wishing to forget (of) the ancient insult,

num posset etiā deponĕre memoriā  
whether would he be able also to lay aside the memory

recentĭum injuriarum, quòd, ěo invito,  
of the recent injuries, that, he (being) unwilling,

tentāssent (pl. perf. subj) iter per Provinciā  
they had attempted a march through the Province

per vim, quòd vexāssent (pl. perf. subj.) Ædŭos,  
by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,

quòd Ambbarros, quòd Allobrōges? Quòd  
that (also) the Ambarri, that (also) the Allobroges? That

gloriarentur (imp.subj.) tam insolenter sŭā victoriā;  
they were boasting so insolently in [of] their victory;

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injuriās  
and that they wonder that they (to) have committed outrages

impunè tam dīu, pertinere eòdem.  
with impunity so long, to pertain [pertains] to the same thing.

Enim immortales dēos consuēsse,  
For the immortal gods (to) have been accustomed,

quòd homīnes dolēant gravīus ex  
that men may grieve more heavily from [by]

commutatione rerum, quos vēlint (pr. subj.) ulcisci  
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelēre eorum, interdum concedēre  
for the wickedness of them [their wickedness], sometimes (to) grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem  
more prosperous affairs to these, and more lasting

impunitatem. Cūm ēa sint (pres. subj.)  
impunity. Although these (things) are

īta, tāmen si obsides dentur (pres. subj.) sibi ab iis,  
so, yet if hostages may be [are] given to himself by them,

ūtī intelligat facturos ēa  
that he may understand (that they) about to [will] do these (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfaciant  
which they promise; and if they satisfy

Ædūis de injuriis, quas  
(to) the Ædui concerning the wrongs, which

intulērint (perf. subj.) ipsis que sociis  
they have inflicted on them and on the allies

eorum, item si Allobrogibus, sese esse  
of them [their allies], likewise (if) (to) the Allobroges, he himself to be

facturum pacem cum iis." Divico respondit:  
about to [will] make peace with them." Divico answered;

"Helvetios institutos-esse ita à majoribus,  
"the Helvetii (to) have been instructed thus by (their) ancestors,

ūtī consueverint (perf. subj.) accipere, non dare  
that they should be accustomed to receive, not to give

obsides; Romanum populum esse testem ejus rei."  
hostages; the Roman people to be [are] witness of this thing."

Hoc responso dato, discessit.  
This answer having been given, he departed.

15. Postĕro dĕ mōvent castra ex ěo  
 On the next day they move the camp from that  
 lōco. Cæsar fācit ĭdem; que præmittit  
 place. Cæsar does the same; and sends forward  
 omnem equitatum ad numĕrum quatĕor millĭum,  
 all the cavalry to the number of four thousand,  
 quem habebat coactum ex omni provinciâ,  
 which he was having collected from all the province,  
 et Ædĭis atque sociis eorum;<sup>37a</sup>  
 and from the Ædui and from the allies of them;  
 qui vidĕant in quas partes hostes faciānt  
 who may see into what parts the enemy may make  
 ĭter: qui, insecuti cupidĭus  
 (their) way: who, having followed up more [too] eagerly  
 novissĭmum agmen, committunt prælium  
 the last troop [the rear], join battle  
 cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno  
 with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange [an unfavorable]  
 lōco, et pauci de nostris cādunt. Quo prælio  
 place, and a few of our (men) fall. By which battle  
 Helvetĭi sublati, quōd quingentis  
 the Helvetii being lifted up [elated] because with five hundred  
 equitĭbus propulĕrant tantam multitudĭnem  
 horsemen they had repulsed so great a multitude  
 equĭtum, cœperunt subsistere audaciĭs;  
 of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly;  
 nonnunquam ex novissĭmo agmine lacessere  
 sometimes from the last troop [the rear] to challenge  
 prælio nostros. Cæsar continebat sĭos  
 with battle our (men). Cæsar was restraining his (men)  
 à prælio, ac habebat sātis  
 from battle, and was holding (it) enough  
 in præsentiâ prohibere hostem  
 in [for] the present to prohibit the enemy  
 rapinis, pabulationĭbus, que populationĭbus.  
 from rapines, from foragings, and from devastations.  
 Ita circĭter quindĕcim dĭes fecerunt ĭter,  
 So about fifteen days they made the march,



ŭti inter novissimum agmen hostium et  
 that between the last troop [rear] of the enemy and  
 nostrum primum, non ampliùs quinīs aut  
 our first [front], not more (than) five or  
 senis millibus passuum interesset.  
 six thousand (of) paces intervened.

16. Intērim<sup>38</sup> Cæsar quotidie flagitare  
 Meanwhile Cæsar daily to demand earnestly from

Ædūos frumentum, quod polliciti-essent (p).perf.  
 the Ædui the corn, which they had promised

subj.) publicè. Nam propter frigōra quòd  
 publicly. For on account of the cold because

Galliā posita est sub Septentrionibus (pl.),  
 Gaul is situated under [toward] the North

(ut dictum-est antè,) non mōdò frumenta  
 (as has been said before,) not only the corn (crops)

erant non matura in agris sed ne  
 were not ripe in the fields but not

pabuli<sup>39</sup> quidem satis magna copia,  
 of forage even a sufficiently great plenty,

suppetebat. Autem poterat minus ut eo (abl.)  
 was supplied. But he was able less to use this

frumento, quod subvexerat navibus flumine  
 corn, which he had carried up in ships by the river

Arare, propterea quod Helvetii avertērant  
 Arar, because (that) the Helvetii had turned away

iter ab Arare, à quibus nolebat  
 the march from the Arar, from whom he was unwilling

discedere. Ædūi<sup>40</sup> ducere diem  
 to depart. The Ædui to lead [put off] day

ex die, dicere conferri,  
 from [after] day, to say (the corn) to be brought together

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit  
 to be conveyed, to be present [ready]. When he understood

se duci diutius, et diem  
 (he) himself to be [is] led [put off] longer, and the day

instare, quo die oporteret metiri  
 to be [is] at hand, on which day it would be due to measure out

frumentum      militibus ;      principibus      eorum  
corn      to the soldiers;      the chiefs      of them

convocatis,<sup>41</sup>      quorum      habebat      magnum  
having been called together,      of whom      he was having      a great

copiam      in      castris,      in      his      Divitiāco  
number      in      the camp,      in [among] these      Divitiaeus

et Lisco, qui præerat      summo magistratūi  
and Liscus, who was over [invested with] the highest magistracy

(quem Ædūi      appellant vergobretum,      qui      creatur  
(which the Ædui      name      vergobretus,      which is created

annūus      que      hābet potestatem vitæ      que      necis  
annually      and      has      the power      of life      and      of death

in      suos),      accusat      eos      graviter,  
over his own (people) ),      he accuses      them      severely,

quòd quum      posset (imp.subj.)      nēque      emi,  
because when      it was possible      neither      to be bought,

nēque      sumi      ex      agris,      tempore tam  
nor      to be taken      from      the fields,      in a time      so

necessario,      hostibus      tam      propinquis,  
necessary,      the enemy (being)      so      near,

sublevetur (pres.subj.)      non ab iis ;      præsertim quum,  
he is succored      not by them; especially      when,

ex<sup>42</sup> magna parte      adductus      precibus eorum  
from a great part      induced      by the prayers      of them

suscepērit (perf.subj.)      bellum,      queritur etiam  
he has undertaken      the war,      he complains      also

multò gravius      quòd      destitutus-sit (perf.subj.).  
much the more severely      that      he had been left destitute (of corn).

17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione  
Then at last Liscus induced by the speech

Cæsaris, proponit      quod antèa      tacuerat :  
of Cæsar, sets forth      (that) which      before      he had kept silent:

“Esse<sup>43</sup>      nonnullos,      auctoritas      quorum  
“To be [that there are]      some,      the authority      of whom

valēat (pres.subj.) plurimum      apud      plebem,  
avails      most[very much]      with the common people,

qui      privati      possint (pres.subj.)      plus  
who (though) private (persons)      are powerful      more

quàm	magistratus	ipsi,	hos	seditiosâ
than	the magistrates	themselves,	these	by seditious
et	imprõbâ	oratione deterrere	multitudïne	ne
and	wicked	speech (to) deter	the multitude	lest
	confèrant	frumentum;	quòd	dicant
	they may bring together	the corn;	because	they say
(pres. subj.)	præstare,	si	jam	possint
	to be [it is] preferable	if	now	they may be able
non	obtinere	principatum	Galliæ,	perferre
not	to obtain	the sovereignty	of Gaul,	to induce
imperïa	Gallorum	quàm	Romanorum;	nẽque
the commands	of the Gauls	than	of the Romans;	nor
debẽant (pres. subj.)	dubitare	quin,	si	Romani
ought they	to doubt	but that,	if	the Romans
superavẽrint	Helvetios,	sint (pres. subj.)		
should overcome	the Helvetii,	they are		
erepturi	libertatem	Ædũis	unâ	
about to snatch away	liberty	from the Ædúi	together	
cum	reliquâ	Galliâ:	ab	ĩsdem
with	remaining	Gaul:	by	the same (persons)
consilia, quæque	gerantur (pres. subj.)	in castris, (pl.)		
councils, whatsoever	are carried on	in the camp,		
enuntiari	hostibus;	hos	posse	non
to be [are] announced	to the enemy;	these	to be [are] able	not
coërceri	à	se:	Quin-etiam,	quòd
to be restrained	by	himself:	Moreover,	because
enuntiãrit (perf. subj.)	rem	necessariò	Cæsãri,	
he has told	the thing	necessarily	to Cæsar,	
sese intelligẽre	cum	quanto	pericũlo	
himself to understand [that he is aware]	with	how great	danger	
fecërit (perf. subj.)	id;	et	ob	ẽam
he has done	it;	and	for	this
				causam
				cause
tacuisse	quamdũ	potuërit'.	(perf. subj.)	
to have [he] kept silent	as long as	he could'.		
18. Cæsar	sentiebat	Dumnorĩgem	fratrem	
Cæsar	was perceiving	Dumnorix	the brother	
Divitiãci	designari	hãc	oratione	Lisci;
of Divitiacus	to be [was] indicated	by this	speech	of Liscus;



sed, quòd            nolebat                    ĕas    res  
but,   since   he was not wishing (that)   these   things to [should]

jactari                    plurĭbus            præsentiĭbus,            dimittit  
be tossed [debated],            more            (being) present,            he dismisses

conciliũm,   celeriter,   retinet Liscum:   quærit ex  
the council,   quickly,   he retains Liscus:   he seeks from (him)

solo ĕa,                    quæ   dixĕrat   in   conventu.  
alone those (things), which   he had said   in   the assembly.

Dicit   liberiũs,            atque   audaciũs.            Quærit  
He speaks   more freely,            and   more boldly.            He inquires

ĕadẽm            ab aliis   secretò,   reperiter esse vera:  
the same (things) from others   apart,   he finds   to be true:

“Dumnoriĕgem ipsum   esse            summâ   audaciã,  
“Dumnorix            himself   to be [is] with (of) the highest boldness,

magnâ   gratiã   ăpud   plebem   propter  
in great   favor   with   the common people   on account of

liberalitatem,   cupĭdum   novarum   rerum;  
(his) liberality,   desirous   of new   things [revolution];

habere                    portoriã   que omniã   reliĕua  
to have [that he had]   the customs duties and   all   the remaining

vectigaliã   Æduorum   complures   annos   redempta  
taxes   of the Ædui   many   years   purchased

parvo pretĭo;   propterĕa quòd,   ille licente,   nemo  
for a small price;   because (that,) he bidding,   no one

audĕat (pres. subj.)   liceri   contrã;            his   rebus  
dares                    to bid   against (him); by these things

et   auxisse<sup>44</sup>            sũam   familiarem   rem,   et  
both   to have [he] increased   his   family   estate,   and

comparãsse   magnas   facultates   ad   largiendum:  
to have [he] procured   great   means   for   giving bribes:

semper            alĕre                    magnum  
always   to maintain [that he always maintained]            a great

numĕrum equitatũs   sũo   sumptu, et habere  
number   of horsemen at his own   expense, and to have [had] (them)

circum se:   nĕque posse                    largĭter  
around himself: nor to be able (to bestow) largely [nor was he powerful]

solũm dõmi,   sed etiã   ăpud   finitĩmas   civitates;  
only   at home,   but   also   with   the bordering   states;

atque causâ<sup>45</sup> hujus potentiæ, collocâsse  
 and by reason of this power, to have [he had] placed  
 matrem in Biturigibus, homîni illic  
 [married] (his) mother in the Bituriges, to a man there  
 nobilissimo et potentissimo; ipsum habere uxorem  
 most noble and most powerful; himself to have [he had] a wife  
 ex Helvetiis: collocâsse sororem ex  
 from the Helvetii: to have placed [he had given] a sister from [by]  
 matre, et suas propinquas nuptum in alias  
 the mother, and his kinswomen to be married into other  
 civitates. Favere<sup>45a</sup> et cupere Helvetiis  
 states. To favor and to desire [wish well] to the Helvetii  
 propter eam affinitatem, etiam odisse  
 on account of this alliance, also to hate  
 Cæsarem et Romanos suo nomine,  
 Cæsar and the Romans from his own name,  
 quod potentia ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)  
 because the power of him had been diminished  
 adventu eorum, et Divitiacus frater restitutus  
 by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored  
 in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris: si  
 into the ancient place of favor and of honor: if  
 quid accîdat Romanis, venire<sup>46</sup> in  
 any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into  
 summam spem regni obtinendi per  
 the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through  
 Helvetios; imperio Romani populi, non<sup>47</sup>  
 the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not  
 modo desperare de regno, sed etiam de eâ  
 only to despair of the kingdom, [of reigning] but also of that  
 gratiâ quam habeat." (pres. subj.) Cæsar etiam  
 favor [influence] which he has." Cæsar also  
 reperiebat in quærendo, quod adversum prælium  
 was finding by inquiring, that [how] the adverse battle  
 equestre (adj.) factum-esset (plup. subj.) paucis  
 of cavalry had been made [occured] a few  
 diebus antè, initium ejus fugæ  
 days before, (that) the beginning of this flight

factum-esse à Dumnorīge atque equitibus  
to have [had] been made by Dumnorix and by the horsemen

ejus, (nam Dumnōrix præerat equitatūi (dat.),  
of him, (for Dumnorix was over [commanded] the cavalry,

quem Ædūi miserant auxiliō Cæsāri;) que fugā  
which the Ædui had sent for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight

eorum reliquum equitatum perterritum-esse.  
of them the remaining cavalry to have [had] been dismayed.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum<sup>48</sup> certissimæ  
Which things being known, since most certain  
res accedērent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;  
facts were approaching [confirming] (to) these suspicions;

quòd traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetios per  
because [that] he [Dumnorix] had led over the Helvetii through

fines Sequanorum; quòd curasset (pl. perf.  
the borders of the Sequani; because [that] he had taken care

subj.) obsides dandos inter eos: quòd  
hostages to be [should] given between them: because [that]

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnia ãa non mōdò  
he had done all those (things) not only

sūo injussu et civitatis, sed etiam  
without his order and (that) of the state, but also

ipsis inscientibus; quòd accusaretur (imp.  
themselves not knowing; because [that] he was accused

subj.) à magistratu Æduorum; arbitrabatur<sup>49</sup>  
by a magistrate of the Ædui; he [Cæsar] was deeming

satis caussæ esse quare, aut ipse animadverteret  
enough (of) cause to be [was] wherefore, either himself should attend

in eum, aut juberet civitatem animadvertere.  
upon [to] him, or should order the state to attend (to him).

Unum repugnabat omnibus his, quòd cognovērat  
One (thing) was opposing (to) all these, that he had known

summum studium fratris Divitiaci in  
the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto [towards]

Romanum populum, summam voluntatem in  
the Roman people, (his) highest good will unto [toward]

se, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam.  
himself, (his) preeminent faith, justice, temperance.

Nam verebatur, ne offendēret animum Divitiāci  
 For he was fearing, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus

supplicio ejus. Itaque prius quam  
 by the punishment of him. Therefore sooner than [before that]

conaretur quidquam, jūbet Divitiācum  
 he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus

vocari ad se; et quotidianis  
 to be called to himself; and the daily [usual]

interpretibus remotis, colloquitur cum eo.  
 interpreters having been removed, he converses with him,

per Caŕum Valerium Procillum, principem  
 through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief

provinciæ Galliæ, suū familiarem, cui  
 of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to [in]whom

habebat summam fidem omnium rerum;  
 he was having the highest faith [confidence] of all things

sīmul commonefacit, quæ dicta-sint  
 at the same time he reminds, (Divitiacus) what (things) were said

de Dumnorige in concilio Gallorum, ipso  
 of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself

præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixerit (perf.  
 (being)present; and shows what every one has said

subj.) separatim de eo apud se. Petit  
 separately of him to himself [Cæsar]. He asks

atque hortatur ut, sine offensione animi ejus,  
 and exhorts that, without offence of mind of him,

vel ipse statuât de eo,  
 either he himself [Cæsar] may determine of him [pass judgment on him],

caussâ cognitâ; vel jubeat  
 (his) cause being known [the case being tried]; or may order

civitatem statuere.

the state to determine.

20. Divitiācus complexus Cæsarem cum multis  
 Divitiacus having embraced Cæsar with many

lacrymis cœpit obsecrare, “nestatuēret  
 tears began to beseech, “that he should not determine

quid gravius in fratrem; se scire<sup>50</sup>  
 any thing more severe against (his) brother; himself to know

illa esse vera nec quenquam capere  
 [that he knows] those (things) to be true nor anyone to take  
 plus doloris ex eo, quam se; propterea quod  
 more (of) grief from this, than himself; because (that)  
 (quum ipse posset (imp. subj.) plurimum gratia  
 (when himself was able (to do) most in influence  
 domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum  
 at home and in the remaining Gaul, he [Dumnorix] the least  
 propter adolescentiam) crevisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 on account of (his) youth had increased (in power)  
 per se; quibus opibus ac nervis<sup>51</sup>  
 through himself [Divitiacus]; which means and nerves [strength]  
 uteretur (imp. subj.) non solum ad gratiam  
 he was using not only to (Divitiacus) influence  
 minuendam, sed penè ad suam perniciem;  
 to be diminished, but almost to his [Divitiacus] destruction;  
 sese tamen commoveri et fraterno amore  
 (that) himself however to be [was] moved both by fraternal love  
 et existimatione vulgi: quod si  
 and by the esteem of the common people: because if  
 quid gravius accidisset ei  
 any (thing) more heavy [serious] should happen to him  
 à Cæsare, cum ipse teneret (imp. subj.)  
 from Cæsar, when he himself was holding  
 eum locum amicitiae apud eum, neminem  
 this place of friendship with him [Cæsar], no one  
 existimaturum non factum sua voluntate;  
 about to think [would think] (the thing) not done with his will;  
 futurum ex qua re, uti<sup>52</sup> animi  
 about to [it would] be from which thing, that the minds  
 totius Galliae averterentur à se."  
 of the whole of Gaul would be turned away from himself."  
 Quum flens peteret (imp. subj.) hæc  
 When weeping he was seeking these (things)  
 à Cæsare pluribus verbis, Cæsarprehendit  
 from Cæsar with many words, Cæsar takes  
 dextram ejus; consolatus, rogat (ut)  
 the right hand of him; having consoled, he asks (that)



faciat finem orandi: ostendit gratiam  
 he make an end of entreating: he shows (that) the favor

eius esse tanti apud se, uti  
 of him to be [is] of so much (account) with himself, that

condonet et injuriam rei publicæ et  
 he forgives both the injury of the republic and

suum dolorem, voluntati ac precibus  
 his own grief, for the good will and for the prayer.

eius. Vocat Dumnorigem ad se; adhibet  
 of him. He calls Dumnorix to himself; he summons

fratrem; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres. subj.)  
 the brother; he shows what he blames

in eo; proponit quæ ipse intelligat,  
 in him; he sets forth what (he) himself understands,

(pres. subj.), quæ civitas queratur (pres. subj.);  
 what the state complains of;

mõnet, ut<sup>53</sup> vitet omnes suspiciones in  
 he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into [for]

reliquum tempus. Dicit<sup>54</sup> se condonare  
 the remaining time. He says himself to forgive

præterita fratri Divitiæco; ponit  
 past (things) for (his) brother Divitiacus; he places

custodes Dumnorigi, ut possit scire  
 keepers [spies] to [over] Dumnorix, that he may be able to know

quæ agat (pres. subj.) cum quibus  
 what (things) he does with whom

loquatur (pres. subj.)  
 he speaks.

21. Eodem die factus certior ab  
 On the same day being made more sure [being informed] by

exploratoribus, hostes consedissee sub  
 scouts (that), the enemy to have [had] encamped under [at the

montem, octo millia passuum ab  
 foot of] the mountain, eight thousand (of) paces from

castris (pl.) ipsius; misit qui cognoscèrent,  
 the camp of himself; he sent (persons) who might learn,

qualis esset natura montis, et  
 what might be [was] the nature of the mountain, and

qualis ascensus in circuitu. Renuuntiatum-est  
 what the ascent in a circuit. It was reported

esse<sup>55</sup> facilem. De tertîâ vigiliâ jûbet  
 to be easy. About [at] the third watch he orders

Titum Labienuml legatum pro prætore  
 Titus Labienus lieutenant for prætor [with prætorian  
 powers] with two legions, and the same guides, who

cognovĕrant îter, ascendĕre summum jûgum  
 had learned the route, to ascend the highest peak

montis; ostendit quid sit sũi consilii.  
 of the mountain; he shows what may be (of) his counsel.

[design] . Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ  
 He himself about the fourth watch

eodem itinĕre, quo hostes iĕrant,  
 by the same route, by which the enemy had gone,

contendit ad ĕos, que mittit antĕ omnem equitatum.  
 hastens to them, and sends before all the cavalry.

Publius Considius, qui habebatur peritissimus  
 Publius Considius, who was deemed most skilled

militaris rĕi (sing.), et fuĕrat in exercitu Lucii  
 of [in]military affairs, and had been in the army of Lucius

Syllæ, et postĕa in Marci Crassi,  
 Sylla, and afterwards in (that) of Marcus Crassus,

præmittitur cum exploratoribus.  
 is sent forward with the scouts.

22. Primâ<sup>56</sup> luce, quum summus mons  
 At the first light [early dawn], when the highest mountain

teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse  
 was held by Titus Labienus, he himself

abesset (imp. subj.) non longius mille et  
 was distant not farther (than) a thousand and

quingentis passibus ab castris (pl.) hostium;  
 five hundred paces from the camp of the enemy

nĕque, ut compĕrit postĕa ex captivis,  
 nor, as he found afterwards from the captives,

aut adventus ipsius, aut Labieni  
 either the arrival of himself, or (that) of Labienus

cognitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); Cosindius, ěquo  
had been known; Considius, (his) horse

admisso, accurrit ad ěum; dicit.  
at full speed, rushes to him [Cæsar]; he says,

montem quem voluĕrit (perf. subj.) occupari  
the mountain which he wished to be occupied

à Labieno, teneri ab hostibus: se  
by Labienus, to be [is] held by the enemy: (that) he himself

cognovisse id à Gallĕis armis atque insignibus.  
to have known[knew] this from the Gallic arms and ensigns.

Cæsar subducit suas copias in proximum collem,  
Cæsar leads away his forces to the nearest hill,

instruit aciem. Labienus, ut præceptum-ĕrat  
he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed

ĕi à Cæsäre, ne-committĕret prælium,  
to him by Cæsar, that he should not join battle,

nisi copię ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
unless the forces of himself had been seen

pröpe castra (pl.) hostium, ut impĕtus fieret  
near the camp of the enemy, that the attack might be made

in hostes undique uno tempöre,  
against the enemy on every side at one time,

monte occupato, expectabat nostros, que  
the mountain having been occupied, was awaiting our (men), and

abstinebat prælio. Denique, multo die Cæsar  
was holding from battle. Finally, far in the day Cæsar

cognovit per exploratores, et montem teneri  
learned by scouts (that), both the mountain to be [was] held

à suis, et hostes movisse castra  
by his own (men), and (that) the enemy to have [had] moved camp,

(pl.), et Considium perterritum timore renuntiâsse  
and Considius dismayed by fear to have [had]

pro viso, quod non vidisset (pl. perf.  
announced for [as] seen, (that) which he had not seen.

subj.). Eo die, intervallo quo consuĕrat,  
On that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,

sequitur hostes, et ponit castra (pl.) tria  
he follows the enemy, and places (his) camp three

millia passuum ab castris (pl.) eorum.  
 thousand (of) paces from the camp of them [their camp].

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod biduum  
 The day after this day, because a period of two days

omnino supererat, quum oporteret (imp. subj.)  
 altogether was remaining, when it was obligatory

metiri frumentum exercitu (exercitui); et  
 to measure [deal] out corn to the army; and

quod aberat a Bibracte, longe  
 because he was distant from Bibracte, by far

maximo ac copiosissimo oppido Aduorum,  
 the greatest and most wealthy town of the Aedui,

non amplius octodecim millibus passuum;  
 not more (than) eighteen thousand (of) paces;

existimavit prospiciendum frumentariae  
 he believed it must be looked out [he must provide] for the grain

rei; et avertit iter ab Helvetiis  
 supply; and he turns away the route from the Helvetii

ac contendit ire Bibracte. Ea<sup>57</sup> res  
 and hastens to go (to) Bibracte. This thing

nuntiatur hostibus per fugitivos Lucii Aemilii,  
 is announced to the enemy by fugitives of Lucius Aemilius,

decurionis equitum Gallorum. Helvetii,  
 captain of the horsemen of the Gauls. The Helvetii,

seu quod existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani  
 either because they were judging (that) the Romans

discedere a se perterritos timore, eo magis  
 (to) withdraw from them dismayed with fear, by this the more

quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis,  
 because the day before the higher places having been occupied,

commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non praelium, sive  
 they had joined not battle, or

quod<sup>58</sup> confiderent (imp. subj.) posse inter-  
 because they were trusting (our men) to be able [could] (to) be inter-

cludi frumentaria re; consilio commutato  
 reaped from the corn supply; (their) plan having been altered

atque itinere converso, ceperunt inssequi ac  
 and the route having been changed, they began to pursue and

laccessere nostros à novissimo agmine.  
to harass our (men) from the last marching-line [in the rear].

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit  
After (that) Cæsar perceived this; he leads up  
suas copias in proximum collem que misit equitatum,  
his forces onto the nearest hill and sent cavalry,  
qui sustineret impetum hostium. Ipse  
which should meet the attack of the enemy. He himself  
interim instruxit triplicem aciem quatuor veteranarum  
meanwhile drew up a triple line of four veteran  
legionum in medio colle; ita uti collocaret  
legions on the center (of the) hill; so that he might place  
supra se, in summo jugo, duas legiones quas  
above himself, on the highest peak, the two legions which  
conscripterat proxime in citeriore Gallia, et omnia  
he had levied very lately in hither Gaul, and all  
auxilia, et compleret totum montem  
the aids [auxiliaries], and might fill the whole mount  
hominibus. Inter ea jussit sarcinas  
with men. In the mean time he ordered (that) the baggage  
conferri in unum locum et eum  
(to) be brought together into one place and (that) this  
muniri ab iis, qui constituerant in superiore  
(to) be fortified by those, who took stand in the higher  
acie. Helvetii, secuti cum omnibus suis  
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their  
carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum  
wagons, brought together the baggage into one  
locum; ipsi confertissimam aciem, nostro equitatu  
place; (they) themselves in a very dense line, our cavalry  
rejecto, phalange facta, successerunt  
having been repulsed, a phalanx having been made, advanced  
sub nostram primam aciem.  
under [to] our first line.

25. Cæsar, suo primo, deinde equis  
Cæsar, his own (horse) first, then the horses  
omnium remotis è conspectu, ut periculo  
of all having been removed from sight, that the danger



æquato, tollēret spem fūgæ,  
having been made equal, he might take away the hope of flight,

cohortatus sños, commisit prælium.  
having encouraged his (men), joined battle.

Milites, pilis missis è superiore lōco,  
The soldiers, javelins having been sent [cast] from the higher place,

facilè perfregerunt phalangem hostium: ãa  
easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy: this

disjectâ, fecerunt impētum in eos districtis  
having been dispersed, they made an attack upon them with drawn

gladiis. Erat<sup>59</sup> magno impedimento Gallis ad  
swords. It was (for) a great impediment to the Gauls for

pugnam, quòd pluribus scutis eorum transfixis  
the fight, that many shields of them having been pierced

et colligatis uno ictu pilorum, cùm  
and bound together by one stroke of the javelins, when

ferrum inflexisset (pl. perf. subj.) se, poterant  
the iron had bent itself, (in) they were able

nēque evellere, nēque, sinistrâ impeditâ,  
neither to tear (it) out, nor, the left (hand) having been entangled,

pugnare satis commòdè, ut multi, brachio  
to fight sufficiently easily, so that many, the arm

dū jactato, præoptarent (imp. subj.)  
a long time having been tossed about, were preferring

emittēre scutum mānu, et pugnare  
to discard the shield from the hand, and to fight

nudo corpore. Tandem defessi vulneribus cœperunt  
with naked body. At length wearied with wounds they began

et referre pēdem, et quòd mons  
both to bear back the foot [to retreat], and because a mountain

suberat circiter mille passuum recipere  
was near about a thousand (of) paces to betake

se ão. Monte capto,  
themselves [withdraw] thither. The mountain having been taken,

et nostris succedentibus, Boii et Tulingi,  
and our (men) advancing, the Boii and Tulingi,

qui claudebant agmen hostium circiter  
who were closing the marching line of the enemy (with) about

quindĕcim millĭbus homĭnum, et ĕrant præsidiŏ  
 fifteen thousand (of) men, and were (for) a guard  
 novissĭmis, agressi<sup>60</sup> nostros, ex  
 to the last [rear], having attacked our (men), from [upon]  
 itinĕre aperto latĕre circumvenire ;  
 the march on the open flank, (began) to surround (them);  
 et Helvetĭi qui recepĕrant se in  
 and the Helvetii who had betaken themselves to  
 montem, conspicati id, cœperunt rursus  
 the mountain, having beheld this, began again  
 instare et redintegrare prœlium. Romani  
 to advance and to renew the battle. The Romans  
 intulerunt signa conversa bipartitŏ ;  
 bore on[charged] the standards (having been) turned in two directions;  
 prima ac secunda acĭes, ut resistĕret  
 the first and second line, that it [they] might resist  
 victis et submotis ; tertĭa ut excipĕret  
 (to) the conquered and routed; the third that it might receive  
 venientes.

(those) coming.

26. Ita<sup>61</sup> pugnatum-est ancipiti prœlio dŭ  
 Thus it was fought with doubtful battle a long time  
 atque acriter. Quum possent (imp. subj.) non  
 and sharply. When they were able not  
 sustinere impĕtum nostrorum diutiùs, altĕri receperunt  
 to sustain the attack of our (men) longer, others [some] betook  
 se in montem, ut cœperant ; altĕri  
 themselves unto the mountain, as they had begun; others  
 contulerunt se ad impedimenta et suos  
 collected themselves to [at] the baggage and their  
 carros. Nam hoc toto prœlio, quum  
 wagons. For in this whole battle, when [although]  
 pugnatum-sit (perf. subj.) ab septimâ horâ  
 it was fought from the seventh hour [one o'clock]  
 ad vespĕram, nemo<sup>62</sup> potuit videre hostem aversum.  
 to evening, no one was able to see the enemy turned away,  
 Pugnatum-est etiã ad multam noctem ad  
 It was fought also to [until] much [late] night at

impedimenta: propterēa quòd objecērant carros pro  
 the baggage: because (that) they had opposed wagons for

vallo, et coniciebant tela è superiore lōco in  
 a rampart, and were hurling weapons from a higher place upon

nostros venientes, et nonnulli subiciebant matāras  
 our (men) advancing, and some were thrusting spears

ac tragūlas inter carros que redas, que  
 and javelins between the wagons and carts, and

vulnerabant nostros. Quum<sup>63</sup> pugnatum-esset  
 were wounding our (men). When it had been fought

(pl. perf. subj.) dū, nostri potiti-sunt  
 a long time, our (men) won [captured]

impedimentis que castris. Ibi filia Orgetorigis,  
 the baggage and camp. There a daughter of Orgetorigis,

atque unus è filiis captus-est. Superfuerunt  
 and one from [of] (his) sons was [were] taken. There survived

ex ěo praelio circēter centum et triginta millia  
 from this battle about a hundred and thirty thousand

hommum, que ierunt continenter ěa totā nocte:  
 (of) men, and they went[traveled] incessantly this whole night:

itinēre intermisso nullam partem noctis,  
 the march being interrupted no part of the night,

quarto die pervenerunt in fines Lingōnum:  
 on the fourth day they arrived to[at] the borders of the Lingones:

quum nostri morati tridūm  
 since our (men) having delayed the space of three days

et propter vulnera militum et  
 both on account of the wounds of the soldiers and

propter sepulturam occisorum, potuissent  
 on account of the burial of the slain, had been able

(pl. perf. subj.) non sēqui ěos. Cæsar misit  
 not to follow [could not follow] them. Cæsar sent

litēras que nuntios ad Lingōnes, ne juvent  
 letters and messengers to the Lingones, that they should not assist

ěos frumento neve aliā re: qui si  
 them with corn nor with (any) other thing: who if

juvissent,<sup>64</sup> se habiturum illos  
 they (should have) assisted, he himself about to [would] hold them

eodem lōco, quo Helvetios. Ipse,  
 in the same place [light], in which [as] the Helvetii. (He) himself,

tridūo intermisso, cœpit sēqui  
 the period of three days having intervened, began to follow

ēos cum omnibus copiis.  
 them with all (his) forces.

27. Helvetii, adducti inopiâ omnium rerum,  
 The Helvetii, induced by want of all things,

miserunt<sup>65</sup> legatos qui cum convenissent  
 sent ambassadors to him who when they had met

(pl. perf. subj.) eum in itinere, que  
 him on the march, and

projecissent (pl. perf. subj.) se ad pedes, que  
 had thrown themselves at (his) feet, and

locuti suppliciter, flentes petissent (pl.  
 having spoken suppliantly, weeping sought

perf. subj.) pacem, atque jussisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 peace, and (when) he had ordered

ēos expectare suum adventum in eo loco, quo  
 them to await his arrival in that place, in which

tum essent (imp. subj.), paruerunt. Postquam Cæsar  
 then they were, they obeyed. After (that) Cæsar

pervenit eo, poposcit obsides, arma, servos, qui  
 came there, he demanded hostages, arms, the slaves, who

perfugissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad eos. Dum ea  
 had fled to them. While these

conquiruntur et conferuntur,  
 (things) are sought for and are brought together,

nocte intermissâ, circiter sex millia  
 a night having intervened, about six thousand

hominum ejus pagi, qui appellatur  
 (of) men of this canton, which is called

Verbigenus, sive perterriti timore, ne, armis  
 Verbigenus, either alarmed by fear, lest, (their) arms

traditis, afficerentur supplicio;  
 having been delivered, they should be affected [visited] with punishment;

sive inducti spe salutis, quod in tantâ  
 or induced by hope of safety, because in so great a



multitudīne deditieiorum,<sup>66</sup> existimarent (imp. subj.)  
 multitude of (those) surrendered, they were thinking

sūam fūgam posse aut occultari aut ignorari  
 their flight to be able either to be concealed or to be disregarded

omnino; primâ vigiliâ noctis, egressi ex  
 altogether; in the first watch of the night, having gone out from

castris (pl.) Helvetiorum, contenderunt ad Rhenum  
 the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine

que fines Germanorum.  
 and borders of the Germans.

28. Quod<sup>67</sup> ūbi Cæsar resevit, imperavit his,  
 Which when Cæsar discovered, he ordered (to) these,

per fines quorum iērant, ūti  
 through the borders of whom they had gone, that

conquirērent et reducērent, si<sup>68</sup>  
 they should search out and should lead back, if

vellent (imp. subj.) esse purgati sibi. Habuit<sup>69</sup>  
 they were wishing to be blameless to himself. He held

reductos in numēro hostium: accepit omnes  
 (those) led back in the number of enemies: he received all

reliquos in deditionem, obsidibus, armis, perfūgis  
 the remaining into surrender, hostages, arms, deserters

traditis. Jussit Helvetios, Tulingos,  
 having been delivered up. He ordered the Helvetii, Tulingi,

Latobrigos, reverti in suos fines, unde  
 Latobrigi, to return into their territories, whence

profecti-erant; et quōd, omnibus frugibus amissis,  
 they had set out; and because, all the crops having been lost,

nihil erat dōmi, quo tolerarent famem,  
 nothing was at home, by which they might bear hunger,

imperavit Allobrogibus, ut facerent copiam  
 he ordered (to) the Allobroges, that they should make plenty

frumenti eis; jussit ipsos restituere  
 [a supply] of corn for them; he ordered themselves to replace

oppida que vicos, quos incēderant. Fecit  
 the towns and villages, which they had burned. He did

id maxime ēa ratione, quōd<sup>70</sup> noluit  
 this chiefly with this reason, because he was unwilling



ĕum lōcum, unde Helvetii discessĕrant, vacare;  
 this place, whence the Helvetii had departed, to be vacant;  
 ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani,  
 lest on account of the excellence of the lands, the Germans,  
 qui incōlunt trans Rhenum, transirent ě  
 who dwell beyond the Rhine, should cross from  
 suis finibus in fines Helvetiorum, et essent  
 their borders into the borders of the Helvetii, and should be  
 finitimi provinciæ Galliæ que Allobrogibus.  
 neighbors to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges.

Concessit Ædūis petentibus, ut collocarent  
 He granted to the Ædui asking, that they should place [settle]  
 Boios in suis finibus, quōd cognōtierant  
 the Boii in their borders, because they were known  
 egregiā virtute: quibus illi dederunt agros, que  
 of excellent valor: to whom they gave lands, and  
 quos<sup>71</sup> receperunt postĕa in pārem conditionem  
 whom they received afterwards into equal condition  
 juris que libertatis atque ipsi ĕrant.  
 of right and of liberty as they themselves were.

29. In castris (pl.) Helvetiorum tabulæ confectæ  
 In the camp of the Helvetii tablets prepared

Græcis litĕris repertæ-sunt, et perlatae ad Cæsārem;  
 with Greek letters were found, and brought to Cæsar;

in quibus tabulis ratiō confecta-ĕrat  
 in which tablets a computation had been made

nominatim, qui numĕrus eorum exisset (pl.  
 name by name, [individually] what number of them had gone forth

perf. subj.) dōmo, qui possent (imp. subj.) ferre arma,  
 from home, who were able to bear arms,

et ĩtem separatim puĕri, sĕnes que muliĕres.  
 and likewise separately the boys, old men and women.

Summa omniumq uarum rerum ĕrat, ducenta  
 The sum of all which things [items] was, two hundred

sexaginta et tria millia capĭtum Helvetiorum;  
 sixty and three thousand (of) heads [souls] of the Helvetii;

triginta et sex millia Tulingorum; quatuordĕcim  
 thirty and six thousand of the Tulingi; fourteen

Latobrigorum; Rauracorum viginti et tria; Boiorum  
of the Latobrigi; of the Rauraci twenty and three; of the Boii  
triginta et duo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)  
thirty and two. Of those, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et duo millia. Summa  
to bear arms to [about] ninety and two thousand. The sum

omnium fuerat ad trecenta sexaginta et  
[total] of all was at [about] three hundred sixty and

octo millia. Censu habito, ut Cæsar  
eight thousand. A census having been held, as Cæsar

imperaverat, numerus eorum, qui redierunt domum,  
had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

reperit centum et decem millia.  
was found (to be) a hundred and ten thousand.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati<sup>72</sup>  
The war of the Helvetii having been finished, ambassadors

fere totius Galliae, principes civitatum, convenerunt  
almost of the whole of Gaul, chiefs of the states, came together

ad Cæsarem gratulatum: "sese, intelligere,  
to Cæsar (to) congratulate: "(they) themselves, (to) understand,

tametsi Romanus populus repetisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab iis bello pro veteribus injuriis  
penalties from them in war for the ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tamen eam rem accidisse non  
of the Helvetii; yet this thing to have [had] happened not

minus ex usu terræ Galliae,  
less from [for] the use [advantage] of the land of Gaul,

quàm Romani populi; propterea quod eo  
than of the Roman people; because (that) with this

consilio, florentissimis rebus, Helvetii reliquissent  
plan, in most flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) suas domos, ut inferrent  
their homes, that they might wage

bellum toti Galliae (dat.) que potirentur imperio (abl.);  
war on all Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligerent locum domicilio ex magna copia,  
and (might) choose a place for abode from a great supply,

quem judicâssent opportunissimum ac  
 which they (might have) judged most advantageous and  
 fructuosissimum ex omni Galliâ; que haberent  
 most fruitful from [of] all Gaul; and might have  
 reliquas civitates stipendiarias. Petierunt, ŭti  
 the remaining states as tributaries. They asked, that  
 liceret sibi indicere concilium  
 it might be allowed (to) themselves to proclaim a council  
 totius Galliæ in certam diem, que facere id  
 of all Gaul upon a certain day, and to do this  
 voluntate Cæsaris. Sese habere quasdan res,  
 with the will of Cæsar. They themselves (to) have certain things,  
 quas vellent (imp. subj.) petere ab eo è  
 which they were wishing to ask from him from [with]  
 communi consensu. Eâ re permissâ,  
 the common consent. This thing having been permitted,  
 constituerunt diem concilio, et sanxerunt  
 they appointed a day for the council, and ratified  
 jurejurando inter se, ne quis  
 by oath between themselves, (that) not any one  
 enuntiaret nisi quibus mandatum-esset (pl.  
 should divulge (it) unless to whom it had been enjoined  
 perf. subj.) communi consilio.  
 by common design.

31 Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes  
 This council having dismissed, the same chiefs  
 civitatum, qui fuerant antè, reverterunt ad  
 of the states, who had been before, returned to  
 Cæsarem; que petierunt, ŭti liceret  
 Cæsar; and asked, that it might be allowed  
 sibi agere secretò cum eo de  
 (to) themselves to act [treat] secretly with him about  
 suâ salute que omnium. Eâ re  
 their safety and (that) of all. This thing  
 impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese  
 having been obtained, all weeping cast themselves  
 ad pedes Cæsari; “se non minùs  
 at the feet to [of] Cæsar; “they themselves not less

contendēre et laborare id, ne ēa  
to strive and to labor for this, lest these (things)

quæ dixissent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,  
which they had said should be divulged,

quàm ūtī impetrarent ēa, quæ  
than that they might obtain these (things), which

vellent (imp. subj.); propterēa quōd si enun-  
they were wishing; because (that) if it

tiatum-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se  
was divulged, they were seeing (that) (they) themselves

venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiācus  
about to [would] come to the highest torture." Divitiacus

Ædūus<sup>73</sup> locutus-est pro his: esse dūas  
the Æduan spoke for these; to be [there are] two

factiones totius Gallīæ; Ædūos tenere  
factions of all Gaul; the Ædui to hold

principatum alterius harum, Arvernos  
sovereignty of the one of these, the Arverni

alterius. Quum hi contendērent (imp. subj.)  
of the other. When these were contending

tantopere inter se de potentatu multos  
very greatly between themselves about dominion many

annos, factumesse, ūtī Germani  
years, to have been done [it resulted], that the Germans

accerserentur (imp. subj.) ab Avernis que Sequanis  
were sent for by the Arverni and Sequani

mercede. Primò circiter quindēcim  
with [for] hire [as mercenaries]. At first about fifteen

millia horum transisse Rhenum; posteaquam  
thousand of these (to have) crossed the Rhine; after (that)

fēri ac barbāri homīnes adamāssent  
the wild and barbarous men had fallen in love with

(pl. perf. subj.) agros, et cultum, et copias  
the lands, and cultivation, and resources

Gallorum, plures transductos: nunc esse  
of the Gauls, more (were) led over: now to be [they are]

in Gallīā ad numērum centum et viginti  
in Gaul to the number of a hundred and twenty

millium : *Ædūs*,<sup>74</sup> que clientes eorum,  
 thousand: the *Ædui*, and clients [dependants] of them,  
*sēmel* atque *itērum* contendisse armis cum  
 time and again (to) have contended in arms with  
 his; *pulsos* accepisse magnam  
 these: repulsed to (they) have received a great  
*calamitatem*; *amisisse* omnem nobilitatem,  
 calamity; to (they) have lost all (their) nobility,  
*omnem* senatum, *omnem* equitatum. *Fractos*  
 all the senate, all (their) cavalry. Broken  
*quibus* *præliis* que *calamitatibus*, qui  
 by which [these] battles and calamities, (they) who  
*antē* *potuissent* (pl. perf. subj.) *plurimum*  
 before had been able most [were most powerful]  
*in* *Galliā*, et *sūā* *virtute* et  
 in Gaul, both by their own valor and  
*hospitio* atque *amicitiā* *Romani* *populi*,  
 by the alliance and friendship of the Roman people,  
*coactos-esse* *dāre* *obsides* *Sequānis*,  
 (to) have been forced to give hostages to the Sequani,  
*nobilissimos* *civitatis*, et *obstringere* *civitatem*  
 the most noble (men) of the state, and to bind the state  
*jurejurando*, *sese* *nēque* *repetituros*  
 by oath (that they), themselves neither about to [would] ask back  
*obsides*, *nēque* *imploratos* *auxilium*  
 the hostages, nor about to [would] implore aid  
*à* *Romano* *populo*, *nēque*<sup>75</sup> *recusatos*, *quō*  
 from the Roman people, nor . about to [would] refuse, that  
*mīnūs-essent* *perpetuō* *sub* *ditione*  
 they might not be perpetually under the dominion  
*atque imperio* *illorum*. *Se* *esse* *unum*  
 and empire of them. He himself to be [was] the only one  
*ex* *omni* *civitate* *Æduorum*, *qui* *potuerit* (perf.  
 from [of] all the state of the *Ædui*, who has been able  
 subj.) *non* *adduci* *ut* *juraret*, *aut*  
 not to be induced that he should swear, or  
*dāret* *sūos* *liberos* *obsides*: *Ob* *eam* *rem*  
 should give his children (as) hostages: For this thing



se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse  
 he himself to have [had] fled from the state, and to have [had] come(to)

Roman ad Senatum postulatum auxilium, quòd  
 Rome to the Senate to request aid, because

solus teneretur (imp. subj.) nèque jurjurando,  
 (he) alone was held neither by oath,

nèque obsidibus. Sed accidisse pejus  
 nor by hostages. But to have [it had] happened worse

Sequānis victoribus, quàm Ædūis victis:  
 to the Sequani, the conquerors, than to the Ædui, the conquered;

propterēa quòd Ariovistus,<sup>76</sup> rex Germanorum,  
 because (that) Ariovistus, king of the Germans,

consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finibus eorum,  
 had settled in the borders of them,

que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem  
 and had occupied the third part

Sequāni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optimus  
 of the Sequanian land, which was the best

totius Gallīæ; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)  
 of all Gaul; and now was ordering

Sequānos decedere de altērâ tertīâ parte;  
 the Sequani to depart from the other third part;

propterēa quòd, paucis mensibus (abl.) antè,  
 because (that), a few months before,

viginti et quatuor millia hominum Harudum  
 twenty and four thousand (of) men of the Harudes

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad ěum, quibus locus  
 had come to him, for whom a place

et sedes pararentur: futurum esse  
 and habitations should be prepared: to be about to be [it would be]

paucis annis, ũti omnes pellerentur è  
 in a few years, that all would be driven from

finibus Gallīæ, atque omnes Germani  
 the regions of Gaul, and all the Germans

transirent Rhenum: ěnim nèque Gallicum  
 would cross the Rhine: for neither (is) the Gallic (land)

esse conferendum<sup>77</sup> cum agro Germanorum,  
 to be mentioned with the land of the Germans,

nēque hanc consuetudinē victūs comparandam  
nor is this custom of life to be compared

cum illâ. Autem Ariovistum, ut sēmel  
with that. But Ariovistus, when once

vicērit (perf. subj.) copias Gallorum prœliō,  
he conquered the forces of the Gauls in battle,

quod prœlium factum-sit (perf. subj;) ad  
which battle was made [fought] at

Magetobrigam, imperare superbè et crudeliter,  
Magetobriga, to command [commands] proudly and cruelly,

poscēre libēros cujusque nobilissimi  
to require [demands] the children of each (of the) most noble

obsides, et edere omnia exempla cruciatūs in  
(as) hostages, and to impose [imposes] all examples of torture upon

ēos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum<sup>78</sup>  
them, if any thing has been done not at the nod

aut ad voluntatem ejus: homīnem esse barbārum,  
or at the will of him: the man to be [is] barbarous,

iracundum, temerariūm: imperia<sup>79</sup> ejus non posse  
irascible, headstrong: the commands of him not to be able

sustineri diutiūs. Nisi quid auxili  
to be sustained longer. Unless some (thing) (of) aid

sit in Cæsare que Romano populo,  
may be [is] in Cæsar and the Roman people,

īdem esse faciendum omnibus Gallis, quod  
the same must (to) be done by all the Gauls, which

Helvetii fecerant, ut emigrant dōmo;  
the Helvetii had done, that they may emigrate from home;

pētant aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas  
(that) they may seek another abode, others seats remote

à Germanis, que experiantur fortunam, quæcunque  
from the Germans, and (that they) may try fortune, whatsoever

accīdat. Si hæc enunciata-sint  
may happen [befall them]. If these (things) were told

Ariovisto, non dubitare,<sup>80</sup> quin sumat  
to Ariovistus, not to doubt, but that he may take

gravissimum supplicium de omnibus obsidibus, qui  
the heaviest punishment upon all the hostages, who

sint (pres. subj.) apud eum. Cæsarem, vel suâ  
are with him. Cæsar, either by his

auctoritate atque exercitûs, vel recenti  
authority and (that) of (his) army, or by (his) recent

victoriâ, vel nomine Romani populi, posse  
victory, or by the name of the Roman people, to be [is] able

detertere, ne major multitudo Germanorum  
to prevent, lest a greater multitude of Germans

transducatur Rhenum, que posse defendere  
(may) be led over the Rhine, and (to) be able to defend

omnem Galliam ab injuriâ Ariovisti.  
all Gaul from the injury [wrongs] of Ariovistus.

32. Hâc oratione<sup>81</sup> habitâ à Divitiâco, omnes,  
This speech having been had[made] by Divitiacus, all,

qui adërant, cœperunt petere auxiliûm à Cæsare  
who were present, began to ask aid from Cæsar

magno fletu. Cæsar animadvertit Sequânos  
with great weeping. Cæsar observed (that) the Sequani

unos ex omnibus facere nihil earum rerum,  
alone from [of] all (to) do nothing of those things,

quas cæteri facerent (imp. subj.); sed tristes, capite  
which the rest were doing; but sad, (with) head

demisso, intueri terram. Miratus,  
(being) cast down, (to) look upon the earth. Having wondered,

quæ esset causa ejus rei, quæsivit ex  
what was the cause of this thing, he inquired from

ipsis. Sequâni respondere nihil, sed  
them. The Sequani answered nothing, but

permansere taciti in eâdem tristitiâ. Quum quæreret  
remained silent in the same sadness. When he was asking

(imp. subj.) sæpiùs ab iis, neque posset (imp.  
more often from them, nor was able

subj.) exprimere ullam vocem omnino;  
to extort any voice [word] at all;

idem Ædûs Divitiâcus respondit: "Fortunam  
the same Æduan Divitiacus answered: "The fortune

Sequanorum, esse hęc miseriozem que graviorem,  
of the Sequani, to be [is] in this more wretched and more heavy,

quàm reliquorum quòd soli auderent (imp.  
 than of the rest, because (they) alone were daring  
 subj.) nec quìdem quèri in occulto,  
 neither indeed to complain in private,  
 nec implorare auxiliùm; que horrent (imp. subj.)  
 nor to implore aid; and were dreading  
 crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, vèlut si adesset  
 the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present  
 (imp. subj.) coràm; propterèa quòd tàmèn  
 in person; because (that) notwithstanding  
 facultas fūgæ daretur  
 [indeed] an opportunity [a resource] of flight was given  
 (imp. subj.) reliquis; verò omnes cruciatus essent  
 to the rest; but all tortures were  
 (imp. subj.) perferendi Sequānis, qui  
 to [must] be endured to [by] the Sequani, who  
 recepissent (pl. perf. subj.) Ariovistum intra suos fines,  
 had received Ariovistus within their borders,  
 omnia oppida quorum essent (imp. subj.) in  
 all the towns of whom [whose towns] were in  
 potestate ejus.”  
 the power of him [his power].”

33. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar confirmavit  
 These things having been known, Cæsar confirmed [cheered]

animos Gallorum verbis, que pollicitus-est  
 the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

“eam rem futuram curæ sibi:  
 “(that) this thing about to [would] be (for) a care to himself:

se habere magnam spem, Ariovistum  
 (he) himself to have [has] great hope, (that) Ariovistus

adductum suo beneficio et auctoritate, facturum  
 induced by his kindness and authority, about to [would] make

finem injuriis.” Hæc oratione habitâ,  
 an end to [of his] wrongs.” This speech having been delivered,

dimisi conciliùm. Et secundum eam (pl.) multæ  
 he dismissed the council. And besides this many

res hortabantur eum, quare putaret eam  
 things were urging him, wherefore he should think (that) this

rem cogitandum et suscipiendum  
 thing to [must] be considered and to [must] be undertaken

sibi: imprimis, quòd videbat Ædūos,  
 to [by] himself: especially, because he was seeing (that) the Ædui,

sæpenumëro appellatos fratres que  
 oftentimes having [who had] been named brothers and

consanguinëos ab Senatu, teneri in servitude  
 kinsmen by the Senate, to be [were] held in slavery

atque in ditione Germanorum, que intelligebat  
 and in dominion of the Germans, and he was understanding

obsides eorum esse apud Ariovistum  
 hostages of them [their hostages] to be [were] with Ariovistus

ac Sequānos; quod, in tanto imperio Romani  
 and the Sequani; which, in so great empire of the Roman

popūli, arbitrabatur esse turpissimum sibi  
 people, he was considering to be [was] most disgraceful to himself

et reipublicæ. Autem Germanos<sup>82</sup> consuescere  
 and to the republic. But (that) the Germans to be [are] accustomed

paullatim transire Rhenum, et magnam  
 little by little to cross the Rhine, and a great

multitudinẽ eorum venire in Galliam, videbat  
 multitude of them to come into Gaul, he was seeing (was)

periculosum Romano populo: neque existimabat  
 dangerous to the Roman people: nor was he thinking

feros ac barbãros homines temperaturos  
 wild and barbarous men about to [would] restrain

sibi, quin, quum occupassent  
 (to) themselves, but that, when they had occupied

(pl. perf. subj.) omnem Galliam, ut Cimbri que  
 all Gaul, as the Cimbri and

Teutõni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent  
 Teutones had done before; they would go out

in Provinciã, atque inde contendèrent in  
 into the Province, and thence would hasten into

Italiam; præsertim quum Rhodanus dividëret (imp.  
 Italy; especially since the Rhone was dividing

subj.) Sequānos à nostrã provinciã. Quibus<sup>83</sup>  
 the Sequani from our province (To) which



rebus putabat occurrendum quàm-maturimè.  
things he was thinking to [must] be met as early as possible.

Autem Ariovistus ipse sumsērat<sup>84</sup> sibi tantos  
Moreover Ariovistus himself had taken to himself so great

spiritus, tantam arrogantiam, ut videretur (imp.  
spirits, [airs] so great arrogance, that he was seem'ng

subj.) non ferendus.  
not to be borne [endured].

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut mitteret  
Wherefore it pleased (to) him, that he should send

legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab  
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from

eo, "ut deligeret aliquem locum medium  
him, "that he should choose some place midway

utriusque colloquio; sese velle agere  
of each for a conference; (he) himself to will [wishes] to act [treat]

cum eo de re publicâ et summis rebus  
with him about a public matter and the highest affairs

utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ei legationi: "Si  
of each." Ariovistus answered to this embassy: "If

quid<sup>85</sup> esset (imp. subj.) opus ipsi à  
any (thing) was needful to himself from

Cæsare, sese fuisse venturum ad eum;  
Cæsar, (he) himself to have been about to [would] come to him;

si ille vellet (pres. subj.) quid à se,  
if he wishes any (thing) from himself,

oportere illum venire ad se; præterea, se  
to behoove [it behoves] him to come to himself: besides, he

nèque audere venire sine exercitu in eas  
neither to dare [dares] to come without an army into these

partes Galliæ, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);  
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar was possessing;

nèque<sup>86</sup> posse contrahere exercitum in unum  
nor to be [is he] able to gather an army into one

locum sine magno comœatu atque molimento:  
place without great provisions and trouble:

autem videri mirum sibi, quid negotii  
moreover to seem [it seems] wonderful to himself, what (of) business

esset aut Cæsāri aut omnino Romano  
might be either to Cæsar or at all to the Roman

popūlo, in sũā Gallĩā, quam vicisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered

bello.  
in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsārem,  
These answers having been brought back to Cæsar,

Cæsar itērum mittit legatos ad eum cum his  
Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these

mandatis: “Quoniam affectus tanto beneficio  
commands: “Since being affected with so great kindness

sũo que Romani popūli (quum  
his own [Cæsar’s] and (that) of the Roman people (since

appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in sũo consulatu rex  
he had been named in his own consulship king

atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc  
and friend by the Senate,) he was returning this

gratĩam sibi que Romano popūlo, ut<sup>87</sup>  
favor to himself and to the Roman people, that

gravaretur invitatus venire in  
he should be averse (though) invited to come into

colloquium, neque putaret dicendum  
a conference, nor should think (it) to [must] be spoken

sibi et cognoscendum de communi  
to [by] himself and [nor] (to) be investigated concerning a common

re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)  
matter; these to be, [are] what he was demanding

ab eo: primũ, ne-traduceret quam  
from him: first, (that) he should not lead over any

multitudĩnem homĩnum ampliũs trans Rhenum in  
multitude of men more across the Rhine into

Galliā: deinde redderet obsides quos  
Gaul: then (that) he should restore the hostages that

haberet (imp. subj.) ab Ædũis; que permittēret<sup>88</sup>  
he was having from the Ædui; and should permit

Sequānis, ut liceret voluntate  
(to) the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will

ejus reddere illis quos illi  
of him [his will] to restore to them [the Ædúi] (those) whom they

habèrent (imp. subj.); nève lacesset Æduos  
were having; nor should harass the Ædúi

injuriâ; nève inferret bellum his ve  
with violence nor should bring on war to these or

sociis eorum; si fecisset id ita,  
to the allies of them; if he should do this thus,

perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam futuram  
perpetual favor and friendship about to [would] be

sibi que Romano populo cum eo. Si  
to himself and to the Roman people with him. If

impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quoniam, Marco Messalâ,  
he was obtaining (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,

Marco Pisone consulibus, Senatus censuisset  
Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved

(pl. perf. subj.) uti quicumque obtineret Galliam  
that whosoever should hold Gaul

provinciam, defenderet Æduos que  
(as a) province, should defend the Ædúi and

cæteros amicos Romani populi, quod  
other friends of the Roman people, which [as]

posset facere commodo rei publicæ,  
he might be able to do to the advantage of the republic,

se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum.”  
(he) himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries of the Ædúi.”

36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: “esse  
Ariovistus answered to these (things): “to be [it was]

jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,

imperarent iis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),  
should rule those, whom they had conquered,

quemadmodum vellent: item Romanum  
in whatsoever manner they may wish; likewise the Roman

populum consuêsse imperare victis (dat.)  
people to have [had] been accustomed to rule the conquered

non ad præscriptum alterius, sed ad suum  
not according to the edict of another, but according to their own

arbitrĭum. Si<sup>89</sup> ipse præscribĕret (imp. subj.)  
will. If he (himself) was dictating

non Romano popŭlo, quemadmōdum uteretur  
not to the Roman people, how it should use

sŭo jure (abl.), non oportere se impediri  
its right, (it was) not (to be) proper (that) himself (to) be hindered

à Romano popŭlo in sŭo jure: Ædŭos  
by the Roman people in his right: the Ædui

factos-esse stipendarĭos sĭbi, quonĭam  
to have [had] been made tributary to himself, since

tentāssent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et  
they had tried the fortune of war, and

congressi-essent (pl. perf. subj.) armis ac  
had engaged in arms and (had been)

superati: Cæsārem facĕre magnam injuriām, qui  
overcome: Cæsar to do [did] great injury, who

sŭo adventu facĕret (imp. subj.) vectigalĭa deteriora  
by his arrival was making the taxes worse [less]

sĭbi: se<sup>90</sup> esse non redditurum  
for him: (he) himself to be [was] not about to restore

obsĭdes Ædŭis; nĕque illaturum bellum  
the hostages to the Ædui; nor about to [would] bring on war

injuriā ĭis, neque sociĭs eorum, si  
with damage to them, nor to the allies of them [their allies], if

manerent in ěo, quod conuerisset (pl.  
they should abide in that, which had been agreed upon,

perf. subj.), que pendĕrent stipendĭum quotannis:  
and should pay tribute yearly:

si non fecissent id, fraternum nomem  
if they would not do this, the fraternal name

Romani popŭli abfuturum longè ab  
of the Roman people about to [would] be absent far from

his; quòd Cæsar denuntiaret (imp. subj.) sĭbi,  
these; that Cæsar was declaring to him,

se non neglecturum injuriās  
(that) he himself not about to [would not] neglect the injuries

Æduorum, nemĭnem contendisse cum se  
of the Ædui, no one to have [had] contended with himself

sine sua pernicië congrederetur quum  
without his own destruction let him come on when

vellet; intellecturum, quid invicti  
he wishes; about to [he would] understand, what the invincible

Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui subissent  
Germans, most practiced in arms, who had gone under

(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordëcim  
not [no] roof within fourteen

annos, possent virtute."  
years, might be able (to effect) by valor."

37 Eodem tempore hæc mandata  
In [at] the same time these charges

referebantur Cæsari; et legati veniebant  
were reported to Cæsar; and [also] ambassadors were coming

ab Æduis et Treviris: Ædii, questum,  
from the Ædui and Treviri: the Ædui, (to) complain,

quod Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.  
that the Harudes, who lately had been brought over

perf. subj.) in Galliam, popularentur (imp. subj.)  
into Gaul, were laying waste

fines<sup>91</sup> eorum; sese potuisse redimere  
the borders of them; themselves to have [had] been able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne obsidibus quidem  
peace of Ariovistus, not hostages indeed [even]

datis. Autem Treviri, centum pagos  
having been given. But the Treviri, (reported) a hundred cantons

Suevorum consedissee ad ripam Rheni, qui  
of the Suevi to have [had] settled at the bank of the Rhine, who

conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum; fratres  
were endeavoring to cross the Rhine; (that) the brothers

Nasiam et Cimberium præesse iis (dat.) Quibus  
Nasua and Cimberius to be [are] over these. By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer existimavit  
things Cæsar being moved greatly thought

maturandum<sup>92</sup> sibi ne si nova manus  
to be [it must be] hastened to [by] himself, lest, if the new band

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf. subj.) sese cum  
of the Suevi should join itself with



veteribus copias Ariovisti, posset<sup>93</sup> minus  
the old forces of Ariovistus, it might be able less

facile resisti. Itaque, frumentaria re  
easily to be withstood. Therefore, the corn affair [grain]

comparata, quam-celerime potuit, contendit  
having been procured, as quickly as he could, he hastened

magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum.  
by great [forced] marches to Ariovistus.

38. Quum<sup>94</sup> jam processisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
When now he had proceeded

viam tridui, nuntiatum-est ei,  
a course of three days, it was reported to him,

Ariovistum<sup>95</sup> cum omnibus suis copiis contendere ad  
Ariovistus with all his forces to hasten to

occupandum Vesontionem, quod est maximum  
occupy Vesontio, which is the largest

oppidum Sequanorum, que processisse viam  
town of the Sequani, and to have [had] proceeded a course

tridui a suis finibus. Caesar existimabat  
of three days from his borders. Caesar was thinking

præcavendum sibi magnopere, ne id  
to [it must] be guarded to [by] himself very greatly, lest this

accideret: namque erat summa facultas  
should happen: for indeed there was the highest [largest] supply

in eo oppido omnium rerum, quæ erant usui ad  
in this town of all things, which were for use to

bellum,<sup>96</sup> que idem muniebatur sic natura  
war, and the same was fortified so by the nature

loci, ut daret (imp. subj.) magnam facultatem  
of the place, that it was giving great means

ad<sup>97</sup> ducendum bellum; propterea quod flumen  
to lead [protract] the war: because (that) the river

Dubis, ut circumductum circino, cingit  
Dubis [Doux], as (if) led [traced] around by a compass, girds

penè totum oppidum; reliquum spatium, quod  
almost the whole town; the remaining space, which

est non amplius sexcentorum pedum, quæ flumen  
is not more (than) (of) six hundred feet, where the river

intermittit,           mons           continet,           magnā  
 ceases,           a mountain           occupies,           with (of) great  
 altitudīne, ita<sup>98</sup> ut radices ejus montis contingant  
 height, so that the roots [foot] of this mountain reach  
 (pres. subj.) ripæ fluminis ex utrâque  
 [reaches] to the bank of the river from [on] each  
 parte. Murus circumdātus efficit hunc  
 part [side]. A wall thrown around makes this (mountain)  
 arcem et conjungit cum oppīdo. Huc<sup>99</sup>  
 a citadel and joins (it) with the town. Hither  
 Cæsar contendit magnis diurnis que nocturnis  
 Cæsar hastens by great day and night  
 itineribus, que oppīdo occupato, collōcat  
 marches, and the town having been occupied, he places  
 præsidium ibi.  
 a garrison there.

39. Dum moratur paucos dñes ad Vescontionem  
 While he delays a few days at Vescontio

causâ<sup>100</sup> frumentariæ rei que comheatûs, ex  
 by cause of corn affair [grain] and of provisions, from  
 percuntatione nostrorum que vocibus Gallorum  
 the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions of the Gauls  
 et mercatorum qui prædicabant Germanos  
 and of the merchants who were proclaiming the Germans  
 esse ingenti magnitudīne corpõrum,  
 to be [were] with [of] vast size of bodies,  
 incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis,  
 with (of) incredible valor and practice in arms,  
 sese<sup>101</sup> sæpenumõro congressos cum iis,  
 (they) themselves oftentimes having encountered with them,  
 potuisse ferre ne vultum quīdem atque  
 to have [had] been able to bear not the look indeed [even] and  
 aciem oculorum, tantus timor subitõ  
 edge [glance] of (their) eyes, so great fear suddenly  
 occupavit omnem exercitum, ut perturbaret (imp.  
 occupied all the army, that it was disturbing  
 subj.) non mediocriter mentes que animos omnium.  
 in no moderate degree the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primùm ortus-est à tribunis militum,  
This (fear) first arose [started] from the tribunes of soldiers.

ac præfectis, que reliquis, qui causâ  
and prefects, and remaining (persons), who by cause [reason]

amicitiæ secuti Cæsarem ex urbe,  
of friendship having followed Cæsar from the city,

miserebantur magnum pericûlum, quòd habebant  
were deploring the great danger, because they were having

non magnum usum in militari re (sing.):  
not [no] great experience in military affairs:

quorum aliûs,<sup>102</sup> aliâ causâ illatâ,  
of whom one, one cause being brought [alleged], (another,

quam diceret (imp. subj.) esse necessariam  
another) which he was saying to be [was] necessary

sibi ad proficiscendum, patebat, ut liceret  
to himself for setting out, was asking, that it might be

discedere voluntate ejus; nonnulli  
allowed (him) to depart by the will of him [by his will]; some

adducti pudore, ut<sup>103</sup> vitarent suspicionem  
prompted by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion

timoris remanebant. Hi poterant neque fingere  
of fear were remaining. These were able neither to form [keep]

vultum neque interdum tenere lacrymas;  
(their) countenance nor sometimes to hold (their) tears;

abditæ in tabernaculis, aut querebantur suum  
hidden in the tents, either they were bewailing their own

fatum, aut cum suis familiaribus miserebantur  
fate, or with their confidants were deploring (their)

commune pericûlum. Vulgò testamenta obsignabatur  
common danger. Everywhere wills were sealed

totis castris (pl.). Vocibus ac timore horum  
in the whole camp. By the words and fear of these

pàullatim etiã ïi, qui habebant magnum usum  
gradually also they, who were having great experience

in castris (pl.), militis que centuriones, que qui  
in camps, soldiers and centurions, and (those) who

præerant equitatûi (dat.), perturbabantur. Qui<sup>104</sup> ex  
commanded the cavalry. were disturbed. Whoever of

his volebant se existimari mīnùs timīdos,  
 these were wishing themselves to be thought less alarmed,  
 dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere  
 were saying they (did) not (to) dread the enemy, but (to) fear  
 angustias itinēris et magnitudīnem silvarum,  
 the (hard) straits of the way and the vastness of the woods,  
 quæ intercedērent (imp. subj.) inter eos atque  
 which were intervening between them and  
 Ariovistum, aut frumentariam rem, ut  
 Ariovistus, or the corn affair [supply], that  
 posset commōdè sātis supportari.  
 it might be able [could] (not) conveniently enough (to) be carried up.  
 Etiam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsāri, cūm  
 Also some were reporting to Cæsar, when  
 jussisset (pl. pref. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac  
 he had ordered the camp to be moved, and  
 signa ferri, milites<sup>105</sup> non fōre  
 the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be about to [would not] be  
 audientes dicto, nēque laturos  
 hearing [obedient] to the word, nor about to [would] bear  
 signa propter timorem.  
 the standards on account of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilio convocato, que  
 these (things), a council having been called together, and  
 centurionibus omnium ordinum adhibitis ad  
 the centurions of all ranks having been admitted to  
 id concilium, incusavit eos vehementer; primūm,  
 this council, he blamed them vehemently; first,  
 quōd<sup>106</sup> putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut  
 because they were thinking to [it must] be inquired [investigated] or  
 cogitandum sibi, aut in quam  
 to [must] be considered to (by) themselves, either into what  
 partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur (imp. subj.).  
 part, or with what plan they should be led.

Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissimè  
 Ariovistus, himself (being) consul, most eagerly

appetisse amicitiām Romani popŭli:  
to have [had] sought the friendship of the Roman people:

cur quisquam judicaret hunc discessurum  
why should any one judge this (man) about to [would] depart

tam temerè ab officio? Quidem<sup>107</sup> persuaderi  
so rashly from (his) duty? Indeed to be [it was] persuaded

sibi, suis postulatis cognitis, atque æquitate  
to himself, his demands having been known, and the justice

conditionum perspectâ, eum (acc.) nēque repudia-  
of the conditions being clearly seen, he neither about to

turum suam gratiam nēque Romani  
[would] reject his favor nor (that) of the Roman

popŭli: quod si, impulsus furore atque amentia,  
people: but if, impelled by rage and by madness,

intulisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?  
he would wage war, what, pray should they fear?

aut cur desperarent de sua virtute,  
or why should they despair concerning (their) own valor,

aut de diligentia ipsius? Periculum  
or concerning the diligence of himself [Cæsar]? Danger [trial]

ejus hostis factum memoriâ nostrorum  
of this enemy (was) made in the memory of our

patrum, quum, Cimbris et Teutonibus  
fathers, when, the Cimbri and Teutones

pulsis à Caio Mario, exercitus  
having been routed by Caius Marius, the army

videbatur<sup>108</sup> meritis non minorem laudem, quam  
was seeming to have deserved not less praise, than

imperator ipse: etiam factum nuper in  
the general himself: also (a trial was) made recently in

Italiâ, servili<sup>109</sup> tumultu, quos tamen aliquis  
Italy, in the slave uprising, whom however some

usus ac disciplina, quam acceperant  
experience and discipline, which they had received

(pl. perf. subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex<sup>110</sup> quo  
from us, assisted. From which

posse judicari, quantum boni constantia  
to be able [it can] (to) be judged, how much (of) good firmness



haberet (imp. subj.) was having [had]	in in	se; itself;	propteręa because	quòd (that)	
quos (those) whom	aliquandũ for some time	timuissent (pl. perf. subj.) they had feared			
sine without	causâ cause,	inermes, unarmed,	superâssent (pl. perf. sudj.), they had subdued,		
hos these	postęa afterwards	armatos armed	ac and	victores. conquered.	Denique, Lastly,
hos these	esse to be [are]	Germanos the Germans	cum with	quibus whom	Helvetii the Helvetii
sępenumęro oftentimes	congressi having engaged	non solum not only	in in	suis, their own,	
sed etiam but also	in finibus in the borders	illorum of them [their borders]	plerumque generally		
superârint (perf. subj.); have overcome;	qui who	tamen notwithstanding	potuerint have been able		
(perf. subj.) non not	esse to be	pares equal	nostro to our	exercitũ. army.	
Si If	adversum the adverse	pręlium battle	et and	fuga flight	Gallorum of the Gauls
commoveret might move [affect]	quos, any,	hos these	posse to be able [can]	reperire, (to) find,	
si if	quæręrent (imp. subj.), they should inquire,	Gallis (that) the Gauls	defatigatis being wearied		
diuturnitate by the long continuance	belli, of the war,	Ariovistum, Ariovistus,	quum when		
continuisset (pl. perf. subj.) he had kept	se himself	multos many	menses months		
castris (pl.) in camp	ac and	paludibus, marshes,	nęque nor	fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) had made	
potestatem power	sui, of himself [given an opportunity],	adortum having attacked			
subitò suddenly	jam (those) already	desperantes despairing	de of	pugnâ battle	et and
dispersos, scattered,	vicisse to have [had] conquered	męgis more	ratione by reason [trickery]		
ac and	consilio by counsel [wiles]	quàm than	virtute: by valor:	cui for which	rationi trickery

lōcus                    fuisset            contra    barbāros    atque  
a place [chance]    might have been    against    barbarous    and

imperitos    homīnes:    hāc    ne    ipsum    quīdem  
unskilled    men:    by this    not    (he) himself    even

sperare            nostros exercitus    posse            cāpi.  
to expect [expected]    our    armies    to be able [could] (to) be taken.

Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) sūm timorem in  
(They) who were assigning                    their    fear    upon

simulationem<sup>111</sup> frumentariæ rēi    que angustias  
the pretence                    of the corn    affair [supply]    and    the difficulties

itinērum,                    facere            arroganter,            quūm  
of the marches,                    (to) do (this)            officiously,            since

viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officio  
they were seeming                    either    to despair    of    the duty

imperatoris,            aut            præscribere.            Hæc<sup>112</sup>  
of the commander,            or            to prescribe.            These (things)

esse            curæ            sibi;            Sequānos,            Leucos,  
to be [are]    (for) a care    to himself;            the Sequani,            Leuci,

Lingōnes            subministrare    frumentum;    que    jam  
Lingones            to [will] supply    corn;            and    now

frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinere  
corn            to be [is] ripe    in the fields.    Of    the route

ipsos            judicatuos            brēvi    tempore.  
(they) themselves    about to [would] judge    in a short    time.

Quōd dicantur<sup>113</sup> (pres. subj.) non fore  
That    they are [it is] said    (they would) not    (to be about to) be

audientes            dicto, nēque    latuiri    signa,  
hearing [obedient]    to the word,    nor (about to) bear    the standards,

se commoveri nihil            ēa re; enim  
(he) himself    to be [was] moved    nothing [not at all]    by this thing;    for

scire,            quibuscumque    exercitus    fuērit (perf.  
to know [he knew],    to whomsoever    an army    has been

subj.) non            audiens            dicto,            aut,  
not            hearing [obedient]    to the word,            either,

re            gestā            mālè,            fortunam    defu-  
an affair    having been carried on    ill,            fortune    to have

isse;    aut    aliquo    facinore            comperto,  
[had] failed;    or    some    crime            being found out,

avaritiām convictam-esse: sūam<sup>114</sup> innocentiam  
 avarice to have [had] been proved: his (own) innocence [integrity]

perpetuā vitā, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum  
 in (his) whole life, (his) success in the war of the Helvetii

perspectam-esse. Itaque, se repræ-  
 to have been [were] clearly seen. Therefore, (he) himself about to

sentaturum quod fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 [would] do presently (that) which he had been

collaturus in longiorem diem; et  
 (otherwise) about to defer to a more distant day; and

proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā  
 on the nearest [next] night from [at] the fourth watch

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primū  
 about to [he would] move the camp, in order that as soon as

posset intelligere, utrū pūdor  
 he might be able to [he may] understand, whether shame

atque officium, an timor valeret plūs  
 and duty, or fear may prevail the more

apud eos. Quòd si nemo præterea sequatur  
 with them. But if no one besides follows,

(pres. subj.), tamen se iturum cum  
 nevertheless (he) himself about [would] go with

decimā legione solā, de quā non dubi-  
 the tenth legion alone, of which he was not doubt-

taret (imp. subj.) que iam futuram Prætoriam  
 ing and this about to [would] be a Prætorian

cohortem sibi." Cæsar et indulserat præcipuè  
 cohort for himself." Cæsar both had favored especially

huic legioni (dat.) et confidebat, maxime propter  
 this legion and was trusting, (it) very much on account of

virtutem.

(its) valor.

41. Hæc oratione habitâ, mentes  
 This speech having been delivered, the minds

omnium conversæ-sunt in mirum modum,  
 of all were changed into [in] a wonderful manner,

que summa alacritas et cupiditas belli  
 and the highest eagerness and desire of war

gerendi<sup>115</sup> innata-est: que decima  
to be carried on [of waging war] was born in [inspired]: and the tenth

legio princeps egit gratias ei per tribunos  
legion first rendered thanks to him through the tribunes

militum, quod fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optimum  
of soldiers, that he had made the best

judicium de se, que<sup>116</sup> confirmavit se esse  
judgment concerning itself, and declared itself to be

partissimam ad gerendum bellum. Inde  
most prepared for carrying on war. Then

reliquæ legiones egerunt per tribunos  
the remaining legions acted through the tribunes

militum et centuriones primorum ordinum, uti  
of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, that

satisfacerent Cæsari; "se nèque unquam  
they might satisfy (to) Cæsar; "(they) themselves neither ever

dubitasse, nèque timuisse. nèque existimavisse  
to be [had] doubted, nor to have [had] feared, nor (to) have thought

judicium de summâ (sing.) belli esse  
the judgment of the highest (concerns) of war to be [was]

suum sed imperatoris." Satisfactione<sup>117</sup>  
their own but (the part) of the commander." The satisfaction [apology]

eorum acceptâ, et itinere exquisito  
of them [their apology] being received, and the way being reconnoitred

per Divitiacum, quod habebat maximam  
by Divitiacus, because he was having the greatest

fidem ei ex aliis ut duceret  
faith to [in] him from [of] the others [Gauls] that he might lead

exercitum apertis locis, circuitu amplius  
the army in the open places, by a circuit of more

quadraginta millium, profectus-est de quartâ  
(than) forty miles, he set out from [at] the fourth

vigiliâ, uti dixerat. Septimo die, quum  
watch, as he had said. On the seventh day, when

non intermitteret (imp. subj.) iter, factus-est  
he was not ceasing the march, he was made

certior<sup>118</sup> ab exploratoribus, copias  
more certain [was informed] by scouts, (that) the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatŕor et  
 of Ariovistus to be [were] distant from our (forces) four and  
 viginti millibus (abl.) passŕum.  
 twenty thousand (of) paces.

42. Adventu Cæsaris cognĭto, Ariovistus  
 The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus  
 mittit legatos ad ěum; "id licere  
 sends ambassadors to him; "this to be [is] allowed  
 fieri per se, quod antĕa postulasset  
 to be done by himself, which before he had demanded  
 (pl. perf. subj.) de colloquio, quoniam  
 concerning a conference, since  
 accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propĭus; que<sup>119</sup> existimaret  
 he had approached nearer; and he was thinking  
 (imp. subj.) se posse facere id sine  
 (he) himself to be able [could] (to) do this without  
 pericŕlo." Cæsar non respŕit conditionem, que<sup>120</sup>  
 danger." Cæsar did not reject the condition, and  
 arbitrabatur ěum jam reverti ad sanitatem,  
 was thinking him [he] now to [would] return to soundness [reason],  
 quum polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultrò id, quod  
 since he was offering spontaneously that, which  
 antĕa denegasset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;  
 before he had denied to (him) asking;  
 que veniebat in magnam spem, pro suis  
 and he was coming [entering] into great hope, for his  
 tantis beneficiis que Romani popŕli  
 (so) great benefits and (those) of the Roman people  
 in ěum, suis postulatis cognĭtis, fore<sup>121</sup>  
 towards him (that), his demands having been known, to be about to be  
 ŕti desisteret pertinaciâ. Quintus  
 [it would be] that he would cease from (his) obstinacy. The fifth  
 dies ex ěo die dictus-est colloquio.  
 day from that day was said [appointed] for the conference.  
 Intĕrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)  
 Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent  
 saepe citro que ultrò inter ěos. Ariovistus  
 often hither and thither between them, Ariovistus



postulavit; Cæsar ne adducēret quem pedītem  
 requested; Cæsar should not lead up any foot soldiers

ad colloquūm, “se vereri  
 to the conference, “himself to dread [he feared]

ne circumveniretur ab ěo per  
 lest he should be circumvented by him through

insidias (pl.): uterque veniret cum  
 ambush: each should come with

equitatu, aliā<sup>122</sup> ratione se esse  
 cavalry, in other method [manner] (he)himself to be

non venturum.” Cæsar, quòd volebat  
 not about to [would not] come.” Cæsar, because he was willing

nēque colloquūm tolli, causâ  
 (that)neither the conference to [should] be taken away [be lost], cause

interposita; nēque audebat committere sūam  
 being interposed; nor was daring to commit his

salutem equitatu Gallorum, statuit esse  
 safety to the cavalry of the Gauls, determined to be

commodissimum, omnibus Gallis equitibus  
 [it was] most convenient [fitting], all the Gallic horsemen

detractis ěquis, imponere ěò  
 having been withdrawn from the horses, to place upon there [them]

legionarioŝ milites decimæ legionis, cui (dat.)  
 the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, in which

confidebat quàm-maximè; ut haberet  
 he was confiding as much as possible; that he might have

præsidiūm quàm-amicissimum, si quid ōpus  
 a guard as friendly as possible, if any need

esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fieret  
 should be of deed [action]. When which [this] was done,

(imp. subj.), quidam ex militibus decimæ  
 a certain one of the soldiers of the tenth

legionis dixit non irridicūlè, “Cæsārem facere  
 legion said not unwittily, “Cæsar to do [does]

plus quàm pollicitus-esset (pl. perf. subj.);  
 more than he had promised;

pollicitum habiturum decimam legionem  
 having promised about to [he would] have the tenth legion

in lōco prætorīæ cohortis; nunc rescribere<sup>123</sup>  
 in place of a pretorian cohort; now to enroll (it)  
 ad ěquum.”  
 [he enrolls it] to the horse.”

43. Erat magna planities et in ěâ tumulus  
 (There) was a great plain and on it a hillock

terrēnus sātis grandis. Hic lōcus abērat  
 of earth sufficiently large. This place was distant

spatio fērē æquo ab castris Ariovisti et  
 by a space nearly equal from the camps of Ariovistus and

Cæsar. Eð, ut dictum-ĕrat, venerunt ad  
 Cæsar. Thither, as had been said [appointed], they came to

colloquium. Cæsar constituit legionem, quam  
 the conferenee. Cæsar arranged the legion, which

devexerat ěquis, ducentis passibus (abl.)  
 he had brought down with horses, two hundred paces

ab ěo tumulo. Item equites  
 from this hillock. Likewise the horsemen

Ariovisti constiterunt pãri intervallo.  
 of Ariovistus took stand with [at] an equal interval.

Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex  
 Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from [on]

ěquis et ut adducērent denos præter  
 horses and that they should lead up ten each besides

se ad colloquium. Ubi<sup>124</sup> ventum-est ěð,  
 themselves to the conference. When it was come [they came] there,

Cæsar, initio orationis, commemoravit  
 Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted

sua que beneficia Senatûs in ěum,  
 his own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,

quòd appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à  
 that he had been called (pl. perf. subj.) king by

Senatu, quòd amicus, quòd  
 the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that

amplissima munera missa; quam rem,  
 most ample gifts (had been) sent; which thing,

docebat, et contigisse paucis,  
 he was showing, both to have [had] happened to few.

et consuevisse tribūi à  
 and to have [had] been accustomed to be granted by  
 Romanis pro maxīmis officiis hominum,  
 the Romans for the greatest services of men,  
 illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) nēque aditum,  
 him [that he], although he was having neither access,  
 nēque justam causam postulandi, beneficō  
 nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty  
 ac sūā liberalitate ac Senatūs,  
 and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,  
 consecutum ēa præmia. Docebat  
 having [he had] obtained these rewards [honors]. He was showing  
 etiā, quān vetēres, que quān justæ  
 also, how ancient, and how just  
 causæ necessitudinis intercedērent<sup>125</sup> (imp. subj.)  
 causes of alliance were existing  
 ipsis cum Ædūis; quæ consulta Senatūs,  
 to themselves with the Ædui; what decrees of the Senate,  
 quoties, que quān honorifica facta-essent (pl.  
 how often, and how honorable had been made  
 perf. subj.) in eos; ut omni tempore,  
 towards them [in their behalf]; that in all time,  
 Ædūi tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum  
 the Ædui had held the supremacy  
 totius Galliæ, etiā priusquā appetissent  
 of the whole of Gaul, even before that they had sought  
 (pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitiam. "Hanc esse  
 our friendship. "This to be [was]  
 consuetudinē Romani populi, ut vēlit  
 the custom of the Roman people, that it wished  
 socios atque amicos non mōdò deperdere  
 (its) allies and friends not only to lose  
 nihil sui, sed esse auctiores gratiā,  
 nothing of their own, but to be more increased in favor,  
 dignitate, honore: verò quis posset  
 in dignity, in honor: but who would be able  
 pati id eripi  
 [could] (to) suffer (that) this to be [should be] snatched

his (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 from them, which they had brought to

amicitiām Romani populi?'' Deinde  
 the friendship of the Roman people?'' Afterwards

postulavit eādem, quæ dedērat in mandatis  
 he demanded the same, which he had given in the charges

legatis ne inferret bellum aut  
 to the ambassadors that he should not bring on war either

Ædūis, aut sociis eorum; redderet  
 to the Ædui, or to the allies of them [their allies]; (that) he should

restore obsides; si posset (imp. subj.)  
 the hostages; if he was able

remittēre dōmum nullam partem Germanorum;  
 to send back home no part of the Germans;

at ne pateretur quos amplius transire  
 still that he should not suffer any more to cross

Rhenum.  
 the Rhine.

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata  
 Ariovistus answered a few (things) to the demands

Cæsāris: prædicavit multa de suis  
 of Cæsar: he declaimed many (things) of his own

virtutibus; sese transisse Rhenum  
 virtues: (that he) himself to have [had] crossed the Rhine

non sūā sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum  
 not on his own accord, but (having been) asked and sent for

à Gallis: reliquisse dōmum que propinquos  
 by the Gauls: to have [he had] left home and relations

non sine magnā spe que magnis præmiis:  
 not without great hope and great rewards:

habere sedes in Galliā concessas ab  
 to have [he has] settlements in Gaul granted by

ipsis, obsides ipsorum dātos voluntate,  
 themselves, hostages of them given by (their) free will,

capere stipendium jure belli, quod  
 to take [he takes] tribute by the right of war, which

victores consueverint (perf. subj.) imponere  
 conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis; se non<sup>126</sup> intulisse bellum  
to [on] the conquered; (he)himself not to have[has not]brought on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sibi; omnes civitates  
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself; all the states

Galliæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac  
of Gaul to have [had] come for opposing [to oppose] himself, and

habuisse castra contra se; omnes ěas copias  
to have had [had] camps against himself; all these forces

pulsas (esse) ac superatas esse abs se uno  
to have [had] been routed and overcome by himself in one

prælio. Si vĕlint (pres. subj.) experiri itĕrum,  
battle. If they wish to try again,

se paratum iterum decertare: sin malint  
he himself (is) prepared again to contend: but if they prefer

(pres. subj.) uti pace (abl.), esse iniquum  
to use peace, to be [it is] unjust

recusare de stipendiō, quod pependĕrint (perf.  
to object concerning the tribute, which they paid

subj.) sũa voluntate ad id tempus:  
by their own will [volition] to this time:

oportere amicitiam Romani popũli  
to be [it is] proper (that) the friendship of the Roman people

esse ornamento et præsidio sibi, non  
(to) be (for) an ornament and a guard to himself, not

detrimento; que se petisse id ěa  
(for) a detriment; and (lie) himself to have [had] sought it in this

spe. Si stipendium remittatur (pres. subj.) per  
hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum populum, et dediti subtrahantur  
the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. subj.), sese recusaturum non mĩnũs libenter  
(he) himself about to [would] refuse not less willingly

amicitiam Romani populi, quàm appetierit  
the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it).

(perf. subj.). Quòd traducat (pres. subj.) multitudinem  
That he leads [brings] over a multitude

Germanorum in Galliam, se<sup>127</sup> facere id  
of the Germans into Gaul, he himself to do [did] this



causâ muniendi, sibi non impugnandæ  
 for the sake of protecting, himself not of fighting against  
 Galliæ; esse testimonium ejus  
 Gaul; to be [it was] a testimony [proof] of this  
 rei quod venërit (perf. subj.) non<sup>128</sup> nisi  
 thing that he came not except (when)  
 rogatus, et quod non intulerit (perf. supj.)  
 asked, and that he has not waged  
 bellum, sed defendërit (perf. subj.): se  
 war, but has defended (himself): (he)himself  
 venisse in Galliam prius quam Romanum  
 to have [had] come into Gaul earlier than the Roman  
 populum. Nunquam<sup>129</sup> ante hoc tempus exercitum  
 people. Never before this time an army  
 Romani populi egressum finibus provinciæ  
 of the Roman people [has] gone out of the borders of the province  
 Galliæ: quid vellet (imp. subj.) sibi? cur  
 of Gaul: what did he wish for himself? why  
 veniret (imp. subj.) in suas possessiones? hanc  
 did he come into his possessions? this  
 Galliam esse suam provinciam, sicuti illam  
 Gaul to be [is] his province, even as that (is)  
 nostram: ut oporteret (imp. subj.) non  
 ours: as it was proper [it ought] not  
 concedi sibi, si faceret impetum in  
 to be permitted to himself, if he should make an attack upon  
 nostros fines; sic item, nos esse iniquos,  
 our borders; so also, us to be [we are] unjust,  
 quod interpellaremus (imp. subj.) se in suo  
 because we interfered with himself in his  
 jure: quod dicëret (imp. subj.) Æduos appellatos  
 right: that he was saying (that) the Ædui were called  
 amicos ex consulto Senatûs, se esse  
 friends from [by] a decree of the Senate, (he) himself to be [was]  
 non tam barbarum, necque tam imperitum  
 not so barbarous, nor so inexperienced  
 rerum, ut non, sciret (imp. subj.) Æduos  
 of [in] affairs, that he did not, know the Ædui

nēque                    tulisse                    auxiliūm                    Romanis  
neither                    (to) have brought                    aid                    to the Romans

proxīmo                    bello                    Allobrōgum,                    nēque  
in the nearest [latest]                    war                    of the Allobroges,                    nor (that they)

ipsos                    in                    his                    contentiōnibus,                    quas                    Ædūi  
themselves                    in                    these                    contests,                    which                    the Ædui

habuissent (pl. perf. subj.)                    cum                    se                    et                    cum  
had had                    with                    himself                    and with

Sequānis,                    usos-esse                    auxiliō (abl.)                    Romani  
the Sequani,                    to have [had] used                    the aid                    of the Roman

popūli:                    se                    debere<sup>130</sup>                    suspicari,                    amicitīā  
people: (he) himself                    to owe [ought]                    to suspect,                    friendship

simulatā,                    Cæsārem, quōd                    habēat (pres. subj.)  
being [was] pretended,                    Cæsar,                    because                    he has

exercitum in Gallīā, habere                    causā opprimendi  
an army                    in                    Gaul,                    to have[has it] for the sake                    of crushing

sui:                    qui                    nisi                    decedat (pres. subj. aut  
himself:                    who                    unless                    he depart                    or

deducat (pres. subj.) exercitum ex his regionibus,  
lead away                    (his) army                    from these                    regions,

sese habiturum illum non pro amico, sed  
he himself                    about to [would] hold                    him                    not                    for a friend, but

pro hoste: quod<sup>131</sup> si interfecerit (perf. subj.) eum,  
for an enemy:                    that                    if                    he killed                    him,

sese esse facturum gratum multis  
he himself                    to be                    about to [would] do                    a grateful (thing)                    to many

nobilibus que principibus Romani populi:  
nobles                    and                    chiefs                    of the Roman                    people:

se habere<sup>132</sup> id compertum ab ipsis  
he himself                    to have [has]                    this thing                    found out                    from themselves

per eorum nuntios; gratiam atque amicitiam  
by their                    messengers;                    the favor                    and                    friendship

omnium quorum posset (imp. subj.) redimere  
of all                    of whom                    he was able                    to purchase

eius morte: quod si discessisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
by his                    death:                    that                    if                    he should depart

ac tradidisset (pl. perf. subj.) liberam possessionem  
and                    should deliver                    free                    possession

Galliæ sibi, se remuneraturum  
of Gaul to himself, (he) himself about to [would] remunerate  
illum magno præmio, et confecturum,  
him with great reward, and about to [would] dispatch,  
quæcunque bella vellet (imp. subj.) geri  
whatever wars he was wishing to be carried on  
sine ullo labore et periculo ejus.  
without any labor and danger of him [on his part].

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsare in eam  
Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon this  
sententiã, quare posset (imp. subj.) non  
opinion, wherefore he was able [could] not  
desistere negotio. Neque suam neque  
(to) desist from the business[undertaking]. Neither his nor  
consuetudinem Romani populi pati, uti  
the custom of the Roman people to suffer [permits], that  
desereret socios<sup>133</sup> meritos optime;  
he should desert allies having[who have] deserved the best;  
neque se judicare Galliam esse  
nor (does) (he)himself (to) judge(that) Gaul to be[is]  
potius Ariovisti, quam Romani populi.  
rather (the possession) of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people.

Arvernos et Rutenos superatos-esse bello  
The Arverni and Ruteni to have [had] been overcome in war

à Quinto Fabio Maximo; quibus (dat.) Romanus  
by Quintus Fabius Maximus; whom the Roman

populus ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), neque  
people had pardoned, nor

redegisset (pl. perf. subj.) in provinciam neque  
had reduced (them) (in)to a province nor

imposuisset (pl. perf. subj.) stipendium: quod<sup>134</sup> si  
had imposed tribute: that if

oporteret (imp. subj.) quodque antiquissimum tempus  
it was proper (that) every most ancient time

spectari, imperium Romani populi in Galliã  
(to) be considered, the empire of the Roman people in Gaul

esse justissimum; si oporteret (imp. subj.)  
to be [was] most just; if it is proper (that)

judiciūm Senatūs observari, Galliam debere  
 the judgment of the Sena<sup>te</sup> (to) be kept, Gaul to owe [ought]  
 esse libēram, quam victam bello  
 to be free, which (though) conquered in war  
 voluisset (pl. perf. subj.) uti sūis  
 it [the senate] had willed to [should] use its own  
 legibus'' (abl.).  
 laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in colloquō,  
 While these (things) are transpiring in the conference,  
 nuntiatum-est Cæsari, equites Ariovisti  
 it was reported to Cæsar, (that) the horsemen of Ariovistus  
 accedēre<sup>135</sup> propiūs tumūlum, et adequitare ad  
 (to) approach nearer the hillock, and (to) ride up to  
 nostros, conijcere lapides que tela in  
 our (men), (to) throw stones and weapons against  
 nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que recepit  
 our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and betook  
 se ad sūos, que imperavit sūis (dat.)  
 himself to his own (men), and ordered his own (men)  
 ne rejicerent quod telum omnino  
 that they should not throw back any weapon at all  
 in hostes: nam etsi videbat  
 against the enemy: for although he was seeing (that)  
 prælium fore cum equitatu sine  
 a battle to be about to [would] be with the cavalry without  
 ullo periculo delectæ legionis; tamen putabat<sup>136</sup>  
 any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet he was thinking (it)  
 non, committendum ut, hostibus pulsus,  
 not, [must not] be permitted that, the enemy having been routed  
 posset dici, eos circumventos à  
 it might be able [it could] (to) be said, them [they were] circumvented by  
 se per fidem in colloquō. Posteaquam  
 himself through (broken) faith in the conference. After that  
 elatum-est in volgus militum, qua<sup>137</sup>  
 it was published among the mass of soldiers, what  
 arrogantia (abl.) Ariovistus usus in colloquio  
 arrogance Ariovistus having used in the conference

interdixisset (pl. perf. subj) Romanis (dat.) omni  
 he had forbidden the Romans from all

Galliâ; que equites ejus fecissent  
 Gaul; and that the horsemen of him [his horsemen] had made

(pl. perf. subj.) impētum in nostros;  
 an attack upon our men;

que ěa res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.) colloquĭum;  
 and this thing had broken up the conference;

multò major alacritas que majus studĭum  
 much greater activity and a greater desire

pugnandi injectum-est exercitūi.  
 of fighting was incited to [in] the army.

47. Bidŭo pòst Ariovistus mittit legatos  
 Two days afterwards Ariovistus sends ambassadors

ad Cæsarem, “se velle agĕre cum  
 to Cæsar, (to say), “he himself to wish [wishes] to treat with

ĕo de his rebus, quæ cœptæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 him about these things, which had been begun

ăgi inter ěos, nĕque perfectæ-essent  
 to be treated between them, nor had been completed:

(pl. perf. subj.): ŭtĭ aut constituĕret itĕrum  
 that either he would determine [fix] again

dĭem colloquĭo, aut si vellet (imp. subj.)  
 a day for a conference, or if he was wishing

mĭnùs id, mittĕret aliquem ex sŭis  
 less (for) this (that), he would send some one from his

legatis ad se. Causa<sup>138</sup> colloquendi visa-est  
 lieutenants to himself. A cause of conferring seemed

non Cæsari; et ěò măgis, quòd pridĕ,  
 not to Cæsar; and for this tĕe more, that the day before,

ejus diei, Germani potuĕrant non retineri  
 this day, the Germans had been able [could] not (to) be restrained,

quin conjicĕrent tela in nostros.  
 but that they should throw weapons against our (men).

Existimabat sese missurum  
 He was thinking (that he) himself about to [would] send

legatum ex sŭis cum magno pericŭlo ad  
 an ambassador from his own (men) with great danger to



ěum, et objecturum fēris hominībus.  
 him, and about to [would] expose (him) to savage men.

Visum-est commodissimum mittere ad ěum Caīum  
 It seemed most convenient to send to him Caius

Valerīum Procillum, filiū Caīi, Valerīi  
 Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius

Caburi, adolescentem summā virtute et  
 Caburus, a young man with [of] the highest virtue and

humanitate, (pāter cuius donatus-erat  
 politeness, (the father of whom had been presented

civitate à Caīo Valerīo Flacco et  
 with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus both

propter fidem et propter scientiam  
 on account of (his) fidelity and on account of (his) knowledge

Gallicæ linguæ, quā (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur  
 of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus was using

multā (adj.) jam longinquā consuetudīne, et  
 much [fluently] now by long custom, and

quòd causa<sup>139</sup> peccandi esset non  
 because a cause of transgressing [offense] was not

Germanis in ěo); et Marcum Mettium, qui  
 to the Germans in him); and Marcus Mettius, who

utebātur hospitio (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit  
 was enjoying the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged

his (dat.), ut quæ Ariovistus dicēret,  
 these, that what (things) Ariovistus might say,

cognoscērent et referrent ad se. Quos  
 they should learn and should bring back to himself. Whom

quum<sup>140</sup> Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in  
 when Ariovistus had beheld in

castris (pl.) āpud se, sūo exercītu  
 (his) camp with himself, his army (being)

præsentē, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)  
 present, he cried out: "Why did they come

ad se? an causā speculandi?" Prohibuit  
 to himself? (was it) for the sake of spying?" He stopped

conantes dicere, et coniecit in catenas.  
 (them) endeavoring to speak, and cast (them) into chains.

48.	Eodem	dñe	promovit	castra (pl.),
	On the same	day	he moved forward	(his) camp,
	et consedit	sub	monte	sex millibus (abl.)
	and pitched (it)	under	a mountain	six thousand
	passũm	à	castris (pl.)	Cæsãris.
	(of) paces	from	the camp	of Cæsar.
				Postridñe
				The day after
	ejus diei	traduxit	sũas copias	præter castra (pl.)
	this day	he led over	his forces	beyond the camp
	Cæsãris	et	fecit	castra (pl.)
	of Cæsar	and	made	a camp
				duobus
				(by) two
	millibus (abl.)	passũm	ultra	ẽum, ẽo
	thousand	(of) paces	beyond	him, with this
	consilio,	ũti	intercluderet	Cæsãrem frumento
	design,	that	he might shut off	Cæsar from corn
	que	commeatu,	qui	supportaretur <sup>141</sup>
	and	provisions,	which	was [were] brought
				ex
				from
	Sequãnis	et	Ædũis.	Ex ẽo dñe Cæsãr
	the Sequani	and	the Ædui.	From this day Cæsar
	produxit	sũas	copias	quinque continũos
	led forth	his	forces	five continual [successive]
	dñes	pro	castris (pl.),	et habũit
	days	before	the camp,	and had
				(his) battle line
	instructam,	ut	si Ariovistus	vellet contendere
	drawn up,	that	if Ariovistus	might wish to contend
	prælio,	potestas <sup>142</sup>	non	deesset ẽi.
	in battle,	the power [opportunity]	might not	be wanting to him.
	Ariovistus	omnibus	his diebus	continũit exercitũm
	Ariovistus	on all	these days	kept (his) army
	castris (pl.);	contendit	quotidñe	equestri prælio. <sup>143</sup>
	in camp;	he contended	daily	in a cavalry battle
	Hoc	ẽrat	gẽnus	pagnæ, quo Germani
	This	was	the kind	of fight, in which the Germans
	exercuerant	se.	Erant	sex millia
	had exercised	themselves.	(There) were	six thousand
	equitũm,	totĩdem	pedĩtes	numẽro velocissimi
	(of) horsemen,	as many	foot soldiers	in number most swift
	ac	fortissimi,	singũlos	quos singũli
	and	most brave,	each (of)	whom (the horsemen) each

delegĕrant ex omni copĭâ, causâ  
had chosen from all the force, for the sake of

sŭae salutis (gen.). Versabantur cum  
their own safety. They were engaged with

his in praeliis; equites recipiebant  
these in the battles; the horsemen were betaking

se ad hos: hi, si quid  
themselves to these: these, if any (thing)

erat durius, concurrebant: si qui, graviore  
was more difficult, were rushing up: if any, a heavier

[rather severe] volnĕre accepto, decidĕrant  
wound having been received, had fallen down

ĕquo, circumsisiebant: si erat<sup>144</sup>  
from (hiss) horse, they were rallying around: if it was

prodeundum longĭus aut recipiendum  
to be advanced farther or to be retreated

celerĭus quò, tanta erat celeritas  
more quickly any where, so great was the speed

horum exercitatione, ut, sublevati jūbis  
of these by exercise, that, supported by the manes

equorum, adæquarent cursum.  
of the horses, they would equal (their) course [speed].

49. Ubi Cæsar intellexit ĕum tenere  
When Cæsar learned (that) him [he] to hold

se castris (pl.), ne prohiberetur  
[was holding] himself in camp, (that) he might not be prohibited

diutiùs commeatu, delegit lōcum idoneum  
longer from provision, he chose a place suitable

castris (pl.), circĭter sex-centos passus ab  
for camp, about six hundred paces from

his ultra ĕum lōcum, in quo lōco  
them beyond this place, in which place

Germani consedĕrant, que triplĭci acĭe  
the Germans had encamped, and a triple battle line

instructâ, venit ad ĕum lōcum. Jussit  
having been drawn up, he came to this place. He ordered

primam et secundam acĭem esse in armis,  
the first and second line to be in arms,

tertiam	munire	castra (pl.).	Hic	lōcus,	ūtī
the third	to fortify	the camp.	This	place,	as
dictum-est,	abērat	ab	hoste	circiter	
has been said,	was distant	from	the enemy	about	
sex-centos	passus.	Eō	Ariovistus	misit	
six-hundred	paces.	Thither	Ariovistus	sent	
numērum	homīnum	circiter	sexdecim	millia	
a number	of men	about	sixteen	thousand	
expedita,	cum omni	equitatu;	quæ	copiæ	
light armed,	with all	the cavalry;	which	forces	
perterrerent	nostros, et	prohiberent	munitione.		
should alarm	our (men), and	should check (them)	from fortifying.		
Nihilō secūs,	Cæsar,	ut	constituērat	antē,	
Nevertheless,	Cæsar,	as	he had determined	before,	
jussit	dūas	aciēs	propulsare	hostem,	
ordered	the two	lines	to repel	the enemy,	
tertiam	perficere	opus.	Castris (pl.)	munitis,	
the third	to complete	the work.	The camp	having been fortified,	
reliquit	ibi dūas	legiones	et partem	auxil-	
he left	there two	legions	and part	of the aux-	
iorum;	reduxit	quatūor	reliquas	in	
iliaries;	he led back	the four	remaining (legions)	into	
majora	castra (pl.).				
the greater	camp.				
50.	Proximo	dīe,	Cæsar	sūo	instituto
	On the next	day,	Cæsar	by his	practice
eduxit	sūas	copias	ex utrisque	castris;	que
led forth	his	forces	from both	camps;	and
progressus	paullulum	à	majoribus,	instruxit	
having advanced	very little	from	the greater,	drew up	
aciem que	fecit	hostibus	potestatem		
(his) line and	made [gave]	(to) the enemy	an opportunity		
pugnandi.	Ubi	intellexit	eos	ne	
of fighting.	When	he understood (that)	them [they]	not	
tum	quidem	prodire,	circiter	meridie	
then	indeed (even)	to [would] come forth,	about	midday	
reduxit	exercitum	in castra (pl.).	Tum	demum	
he led back	the army	into camp.	Then	at last	

Ariovistus misit partem suarum copiarum, quæ  
Ariovistus sent part of his troops, which

oppugnaret<sup>145</sup> minora castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est  
might assault the lesser camp. It was fought

acriter utrimque usque ad vesp̄rum. Occasu  
sharply on both sides quite to [till] evening. With the setting

solis Ariovistus reduxit suas copias in  
of the sun Ariovistus led back his troops into

castra (pl.), multis vulneribus et illatis  
camp, many wounds both having been inflicted

et acceptis. Quum Cæsar quæreret (imp. subj.)  
and received. When Cæsar was inquiring

ex captivis, quamobrem Ariovistus decertaret  
from the captives, wherefore Ariovistus was contending

(imp. subj.) non praelio, reperiebat hanc  
not in battle, he was ascertaining this

causam, quod ea consuetudo esset (imp.  
was the cause, because this custom was common

subj.) apud Germanos, ut matresfamilias  
with the Germans, that the mothers of family [matrons]

eorum declararent sortibus et vaticinationibus,  
of them should declare by lots and by divination,

utrūm esset ex usu praelium committi  
whether it might be from [of] use that battle to [should] be joined

necne: eas dicere<sup>147</sup> ita. "Non esse fas  
or not: them [they] (to) say thus. "Not to be [it is not] right

Germanos superare, si contendissent praelio  
the Germans to [should] conquer, if they should contend in battle

ante novam lunam."  
before the new moon."

51. Postridie ejus diei, praesidio relicto  
The day after (of) this day, a guard having been left

utrisque castris, quod visum-est satis, constituit  
for both camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged

omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro  
all the auxiliaries in sight of the enemy before

minoribus castris (pl.), quod valebat<sup>148</sup>  
the lesser camp, because he did avail [was strong]



mīnūs    multitudīne    legionariorum    militum    pro  
 less    in the multitude    of legionary    soldiers    for  
 numēro    hostiūm;    ut    uteretur    alariis (abl.)  
 the number    of the enemy;    that    he might use    the auxiliaries  
 ad speciem.    Ipse, triplici acie    instructâ,  
 for a show.    (He) himself, a triple battle line    having been arrayed,  
 accessit    usque ad    castra (pl.)    hostiūm.    Tum  
 approached    quite to    the camp    of the enemy.    Then  
 demum    Germani    necessariō    eduxerunt    suas  
 at last    the Germans    necessarily    led out    their  
 copias    è    castris (pl.);    que    constituerunt  
 forces    from    the camp;    and    arranged (them)  
 generatim;    que    paribus    intervallis,    Harudes,  
 by nations;    and    at equal    intervals,    the Harudes,  
 Marcomannos,    Triboces,    Vangiōnes,    Nemetes,  
   Marcomanni,    Triboces,    Vangiones,    Nemetes,  
 Sedusios,    Suevos;    que    circumdederunt    omnem  
   Sedusii,    Suevi;    and    surrounded    all  
 suam aciem    rhedis    et    carris.    Eō  
 their line    with carriages    and    wagons.    There  
 imposuerunt mulieres, quæ,    manibus    passis,  
 they consigned the women, who, (their) hands (having been) spread,  
 flentes    implorabant    milites    proficiscentes  
 weeping    were imploring    the soldiers    setting out  
 ad prælium,    nē    tradērent    se    in  
 to battle,    that they should not deliver    themselves    into  
 servitutem    Romanis.  
 slavery    to the Romans.  
 52. Cæsar    præfecit<sup>149</sup>    legatos    singulos  
   Cæsar    appointed    lieutenants    one each  
 et quæstorem    singulis legionibus (pl.),    uti    quisque  
 and a quæstor    to each legion,    that    every one  
 haberet    eos    testes    suæ    virtutis.    Ipse  
 might have    them (as) witnesses    of his    valor.    (He) himself  
 à    dextro cornu,    quòd    animadvertērat  
 from [on] the right    horn [wing],    because    he had observed  
   eam partem    hostiūm    esse    minimè    firmam,  
 (that) this    part    of the enemy    to be [was] least    firm,

commisit prœlium. Nostri, signo dāto,  
 joined battle. Our (men), the signal (having been) given,  
 fecerunt impētum ita acriter in hostes: que  
 made an attack so sharply upon the enemy: and  
 hostes procurrerunt ita repentē que celeriter, ut  
 the enemy charged so suddenly and quickly, that  
 spatium conjiciendi pila in hostes non  
 space [time] of [for] throwing javelins against the enemy was not  
 daretur. Pilis rejectis,<sup>150</sup> pugnatum-est  
 given. The javelins (having been) thrown aside, it was fought  
 cominus gladiis. At Germani celeriter  
 hand to hand with swords. But the Germans quickly  
 ex sūā consuetudinē, phalange factā,  
 from [after] their custom, a phalanx having been formed,  
 exceperunt impētus gladiatorum. Complures nostri  
 received the attacks of the swords. Very many (of) our  
 milites (nom.) reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in phalanges  
 soldiers were found, who would leap up upon the phalanxes  
 et revellērent scuta manibus, et  
 and would tear away the shields with (their) hands, and  
 vulnerarent desuper. Quum acies hostium  
 would wound from above. When the line of the enemy  
 pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à sinistro cornu,  
 had been routed from [on] the left horn [wing],  
 atque conversa in fugam, premebant  
 and turned into flight, they were pressing  
 nostram aciem vehementer à dextro  
 our line urgently from (on) the right  
 cornu multitudinē suorum. Quum  
 horn [wing] by the multitude of their (men). When  
 Publius Crassus adolescens, qui præerat  
 Publius Crassus a young man, who commanded  
 equitatūi (dat.) animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id  
 the cavalry, had perceived this  
 quòd erat<sup>151</sup> expeditior quàm hi, qui  
 because he was more disengaged than these, who  
 versabantur inter aciem, misit tertiam  
 were employed among [within] the line, he sent the third

aciēm nostris laborantibus subsidio.  
line to our (men) toiling [straggling] for [as] a reinforcement.

53. Ita prœlium restitutum-est atque omnes  
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, nēque destiterunt  
the enemy turned (their) backs, nor ceased

fugere, prius quàm pervenerunt ad flumen  
to flee, before that they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circiter quinque millia passuum ex hoc  
Rhine, about five thousand (of) paces from this

loco. Ibi perpauca, aut confisi viribus  
place. There very few, either having trusted their strength,

(dat. pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut, lintribus  
strove to swim over; or, boats

inventis, reppererunt salutem sibi.  
having been discovered, found safety for themselves.

In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, nactus  
In [among] these was Ariovistus, who, having found

naviculam deligatam ad ripam, profugit eâ:  
a small skiff fastened at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equites consecuti interfecerunt omnes  
our horsemen having overtaken slew all

reliquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt duæ,  
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva<sup>152</sup> natione, quam  
one a Suevoian (woman) by nation [nationality], whom

adduxerat secum domo; altera  
he had brought up with himself from home; the other

Norica, soror regis Vocconis,  
a Norican (woman), sister of king Voconius,

quam duxerat Gallia, missam à  
whom he had led [married] in Gaul, sent by

fratre: utraque perit in eâ  
(her) brother: each perished in this

figâ: duæ filiae harum, altera  
fight: (there were) two daughters of these, the one

occisa-est, altera capta. Caius Valerius  
was slain, the other taken [captured]. Caius Valerius

Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in  
Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)

fūgâ vinctus trinis catenis à custodibus,  
flight bound with triple chains by (his) keepers,

incīdit in Cæsārem ipsum persequentem  
fell upon [fell in with] Cæsar himself pursuing

equitatum hostium. Quæ res quidem  
the cavalry of the enemy. Which thing [circumstance] indeed

attūlit non minorem voluptatem Cæsāri, quàm  
brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than

victoriā ipsa; quòd videbat honestissimum  
the victory itself; because he was seeing a most honorable

homīnem provinciæ Galliæ, sūm familiarem  
man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance

et hospitem, ereptum è manibus hostium,  
and host, rescued from the hands of the enemy,

restitutum sibi: nèque fortuna diminuērat  
restored to himself: nor [and] fortune had [not] diminished

quidquam de tantâ voluptate et gratulatione  
any thing from so great pleasure and congratulation

calamitate ejus. Is dicebāt  
by a disaster of [to] him. He was saying

consultum (-esse) sortibus ter, se  
to have [it had] been consulted by lots thrice, himself

præsente, de se, utrū necaretur  
(being) present, about himself, whether he should be put to death

stātim igni, an reservaretur in aliud  
immediately with fire, or should be reserved unto [for] another

tempus: se esse incolūmen beneficio  
time: (that he) himself to be [was] safe by the favor

sortium. Item Marcus Mettius repertus-est  
of the lots. Likewise Marcus Mettius was found

et reductus ad eum.  
and led back to him.

54. Hoc prœlio nuntiato trans Rhenum,  
This battle having been reported beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui venērunt ad ripas Rheni,  
the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine

cæperunt reverti dõmum: quos Ubii, qui  
 began to return home: whom the Ubii, who  
 incõlunt<sup>153</sup> proxímè Rhenum, insecuti  
 dwell nearest the Rhine, having followed up  
 perterrĩtos, occiderunt magnum numërum ex his.  
 dismayed, slew a great number from [of] these.  
 Cæsar, duobus maxĩmas bellis confectis  
 Cæsar, two very great wars having been finished  
 unâ æstate, deduxit paullo maturĩus, quàm  
 in one summer, conducted a little earlier, than  
 tempus anni postulabat, exercĩtum in  
 the time of the year was demanding [requiring] the army into  
 hiberna in Sequãnos: præposũit  
 winter quarters into [among] the Sequani: he appointed  
 Labienum hibernis: ipse profectus-est  
 Labienus for the winter quarters: (he) himself departed  
 in citeriorem Gallĩam ad agendos conventus.<sup>154</sup>  
 into hither Gaul for holding assemb'ies.



## SECOND BOOK

The second book contains an account of Cæsar's expeditions against the Belgæ, the Nervii, the Aduatuci, and the Amoricci, in the six hundred and ninety seventh year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 57. Learning that the Belgæ had entered with the other tribes into a confederacy against the Roman people, Cæsar immediately moves with his army against them. First the Remi are conquered, from whom valuable information is gained relating to the movements of the Belgæ. Crossing the Aisne, Cæsar relieves Bibrax then under attack by the Belgæ. It is not long before the Belgæ and the Suessiones are forced to surrender. The war then turns against the Nervii, who in spite of their extraordinary courage, are at last subdued. The Aduatuci then through sheer treachery seek to overthrow Cæsar's troops. But they like the other tribes are quickly brought under Roman rule. Cæsar returns to Italy and a Thanksgiving is voted by the senate.

1. Quum Cæsar esset in citeriore Gallia  
 When Cæsar was in hither Gaul,  
 ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri  
 just as above we have shown, frequent  
 rumores afferebantur ad eum, que  
 rumors were brought to him, and  
 item<sup>1</sup> fiebat certior literis (pl.) Labieni,  
 likewise he was made more sure [informed] by letters of Labienus,  
 omnes Belgas, quam dixeramus esse tertiam  
 (that) all the Belgæ, which we have said to be [are] the third  
 partem Gallia, conjurare contra Romanum populum,  
 part of Gaul, (to) conspire against the Roman people,  
 que dare obsides inter se. Has esse  
 and (to) give hostages between themselves. These to be [are]  
 causas conjurandi: primum, quod vererentur  
 the causes of conspiring: first, because they were fearing  
 (imp. subj.) ne, omni Gallia pacata, noster  
 lest all Gaul having been subdued, our

exercitus adduceretur ad eos; deinde, quod  
 army should be led up to them; then, because  
 sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim  
 they were solicited by some Gauls, partly  
 qui, ut nolent (imp. subj.) Germanos  
 (those) who, as they were unwilling that the Germans  
 versari diutius in Gallia, ita  
 to be [should] be employed longer in Gaul, so  
 ferebant molestè exercitum Romani  
 were bearing (it) uneasily (that) the army of the Roman  
 populi hiemare atque inveterascere in  
 people to [should] winter and to grow old [continue] in  
 Gallia; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate  
 Gaul; partly (those) who, by fickleness and lightness  
 animi, studebant novis imperiis; etiam  
 of mind, were eager for new governments; also  
 ab nonnullis, quod in Gallia regna  
 by some, because in Gaul the kingdoms [the thrones]  
 vulgò occupabantur à potentioribus atque  
 commonly were occupied by the more powerful and  
 iis, qui habebant facultates ad conducendos  
 by those, who were having means for hiring  
 homines,<sup>2</sup> qui poterant minus facile consequi  
 men, who were able less easily to attain  
 eam rem nostro imperio.  
 this thing (under) our government.

2. Cæsar commotus his nuntiis que  
 Cæsar moved by these messages and  
 literis conscripsit duas novas legiones in citeriore  
 letters levied two new legions in hither  
 Gallia, et æstate inita, misit Quintum  
 Gaul, and summer having begun, he sent Quintus  
 Pedium legatum qui deduceret in  
 Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into  
 interiorem Galliam. Ipse, quum<sup>3</sup> primum incip-  
 inner Gaul. (He) himself, when first there was  
 eret (imp. subj.) esse, copia pabuli venit ad  
 beginning to be, plenty of forage came to

exercitum.            Dat            negotium            Senonibus  
the army.            He gives            the business [task]            to the Senones

que            reliquis            Gallis,            qui            erant            finitimi  
and            to the remaining            Gauls,            who            were            neighbors

Belgis,            ūti            cognoscant<sup>4</sup>            ěa,            quæ  
to the Belgæ,            that            they learn [ascertain]            these (things),            which

gerantur (pres. subj.)            ěpud            ěos,            et            faciant  
are carried on [transpiring]            with            them,            and            may make

se            certiozem            de            his            rebus.            Omnes  
himself            more certain [inform him]            about            these            things.            All

hi            constanter            nunciaverunt,            mĕnus  
these            continually            reported,            (that)            bands

                                 cogi,            exercitum            conduci  
to be [were being] brought together,            an army            to be [was being]

                                 in            unum            lĕcum.            Tum            verĕ  
assembled            to            one            place.            Then            indeed

existimavit            non dubitandum,<sup>5</sup>            quin  
he thought (it) [he must]            not            to be hesitated [hesitate],            but that

proficisceretur            ad            ěos.            Re            frumentariĕ  
he should set out            to            them.            The            grain supply

                                 provisĕ,            mĕvet            castra (pl.)            que  
having been provided,            he moves (his)            camp            and

circiter            quindĕcim            diebus            pervĕnit            ad  
in about            fifteen            days            arrives            to [at]

                                 fines            Belgarum.  
the borders            of the Belgæ.

3. Quum            venisset (pl. perf. subj.)            ěĕ            de  
When            he had come            there            from

improviso            que celerius            opinione  
unforseen [unexpectedly]            and            more quickly (than) the opinion [belief]

omnium,            Remi,            qui            sunt            proximi            ex  
of all,            the Remi,            who            are            nearest            from [of]

Belgis            Galliæ,            miserunt            ad            ěum            legatos,  
the Belgæ            to Gaul,            sent            to            him            ambassadors,

Iccium            et            Andocombogium            primos            sũæ  
Iccius            and            Andocombogius            first (men)            of their

civitatis,            qui            dicĕrent,            “permittĕre<sup>6</sup>            se  
state,            who            should say,            “to [that they] entrust            themselves

que omnia sua in fidem atque potestatem  
and all their (effects) into [to] the faith and power

Romani populi, neque se  
of the Roman people, (that) neither (they) themselves

consensisse cum reliquis Belgæ, neque  
(to) have combined with the remaining Belgæ, nor

conjurâsse contra Romanum populum, que  
(to) have conspired against the Roman people, and (that)

esse paratos et dare obsides, et  
to be [they are] prepared both to give hostages, and

facere imperata, et recipere oppidis  
to do (the things) commanded, and to receive (them) in the towns

et juvare frumento que cæteris rebus;  
and to aid with corn and in other things [matters];

omnes reliquos Belgas esse in armis:  
(that) all the remaining Belgæ to be [are] in arms:

que Germanos, qui incolunt cis Rhenum  
and the Germans, who dwell on this side the Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que  
(to) have united themselves with these [Belgæ]; and

tantum esse furorem omnium eorum, ut<sup>7</sup>  
so great to be [is] the fury of all of them, that

potuerint (perf. subj.) deterrere ne Suessiones  
they have been able to restrain not the Suessiones

quidem, suos fratres que consanguineos, qui  
even, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem  
use the same right, the same

legibus, habent (pres. subj.) unum imperium, que  
laws, have one government, and

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin  
one magistracy with themselves, but that

consentirent cum his.  
they should conspire with these.

4. Quum quæreret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ  
When he was inquiring from these, what

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis,  
states and how great were in arms,

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello,  
 and what they were able in war,  
 reperiebat sic; plerosque Belgas  
 he was ascertaining thus; (that) the most of the Belgæ  
 ortos-esse Germanis que antiquitùs  
 (to) have sprung from the Germans and of old  
 traductos Rhenum, consedissee ibi  
 (were) led over the Rhine, to [that they] have settled there  
 propter fertilitatem agri; que expulisse  
 on account of the fertility of the land; and (to) have driven out  
 Gallos, qui incolerent (imp. subj.) ęa lōca; que  
 the Gauls, who were inhabiting these places; and  
 esse solos,<sup>8</sup> qui, memoriã nostrorum patrum,  
 to be [are] alone, (those) who, in the memory of our fathers,  
 omni Galliã vexatã, prohibuērint (perf. subj.)  
 all Gaul having been harassed, prohibited  
 Teutōnes que Cimbros ingrēdi intra suos  
 the Teutones and Cimbri to enter within their  
 fines. Ex quã re fieri ũti  
 borders. From which thing to be done [it resulted] that  
 sumērent (imp. subj.) magnam auctoritatem que  
 they were taking [assuming] great authority and  
 magnos spirĭtus in militari re sibi,  
 great spirits [airs] in military matters to themselves,  
 memoriã earum rerum. Remi dicebant  
 by the memory of these things. The Remi were saying  
 se habere omnia explorata de  
 (that) they themselves (to) have all (things) investigated about  
 numēro eorum, propteręa quòd conjuncti  
 the number of them [their number], because (that) joined together  
 propinquitatibus (pl.) atque affinitatibus,  
 by kindship and by marriage alliances,  
 cognovērint (perf. subj.) quantam multitudinem  
 they knew how great a multitude  
 quisque pollicĭtus-sit (perf. subj.) in communi  
 each promised in the common  
 concilio Belgarum ad id bellum. Bellovãcos<sup>9</sup>  
 council of the Belgæ to [for] this war. The Bellovaci



valere plurimum inter eos, et virtute, et  
(to) prevail most among them, both in valor, and

auctoritate, et numero hominum; hos posse  
in authority, and in the number of men; these to be [are] able

conferre centum millia armata;  
to convene [muster] a hundred thousand armed (men);

pollicitos sexaginta millia electa  
having [that they had] promised sixty thousand chosen

ex eo numero, que postulare  
from this number, and to demand [demanded]

imperium belli sibi. Sussionses esse  
the control of the war for themselves. The Sussionses to be [are]

suos finitimos; possidere latissimos que  
their neighbors; to (they) possess the most broad and

feracissimos agros; Divitiacum fuisse regem  
most productive lands; Divitiacus to have [has] been king

apud eos, potentissimum totius Gallie,  
with [over] them, the most powerful of entire Gaul,

etiam nostra memoria, qui cum obtinuerit  
even in our memory, who not only had held

(perf. subj.) imperium magnæ partis harum  
the empire of a great part of these

regionum, tum etiam Britannie; Galbam  
regions, but also even of Britain; Galba

nunc esse regem; summam  
now to be [is] (their) king; the sum [chief command]

totius belli deferri ad hunc  
of the whole war to be [was] conferred to (on) this (man)

voluntate omnium; habere duodecim oppida  
by the will of all; to have [they have] twelve towns

numero, polliceri quinquaginta millia  
in number, and (to) promise fifty thousand

armata: Nervios, totidem, qui habeantur  
armed (men): the Nervii, just as many, who are held [deemed]

(pres. subj.) maxime fieri inter ipsos que absint  
the most fierce among them and are distant

(pres. subj.) longissime; Atrebatum, quindecim  
farthest; the Atrebates, fifteen

millia; Ambianos, decem millia; Morinos,  
thousand; the Ambiani, ten thousand; the Morini,

viginti quinque millia: Menapios, novem millia;  
twenty five thousand: the Menapii, nine thousand;

Caletos decem millia; Vellocasses et  
the Caleti ten thousand; the Vellocasses and

Veromanduos totidem; Aduatucos, viginti novem  
Veromandui just as many; the Aduatuci, twenty nine

millia; arbitrari Condrusos, Eburones, Cærosos,  
thousand; to [they] believe the Condrusi, Eburones, Cærosi,

Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomine Germani,  
Pæmani, who are called by one name German,

ad quadraginta millia.  
(promise), to [about] forty thousand.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus<sup>10</sup> Remos, que  
Cæsar, having encouraged the Remi, and

prosecutus liberaliter oratione, jussit  
having followed up liberally [kindly] with a speech, ordered

omnem senatum convenire ad se, que  
all (their) senate to assemble to himself, and

liberos principum adduci obsides ad  
(that) the children of the chiefs (to) be brought (as) hostages to

se. Omnia quæ facta-sunt diligenter  
him(self). All which (things) were done exactly

ab his ad diem. Ipse cohortatus  
by these to the day. He himself having encouraged

magnopere Ædūum Divitiacum, docet  
very greatly [earnestly] the Æduan Divitiacus, shows

quantopere intersit (pres. subj.) rei publicæ (gen.)  
how greatly it concerns the republic

que communis salutis, manus hostium  
and the common safety, (that) the bands of the enemy

distineri, ne sit<sup>11</sup> configendum uno tempore  
(to) be separated, lest it must be fought at one time

cum tantâ multitudīne; id posse  
with so great a multitude; that it to be able [could]

fiēri, si Ædūi introduxerint (perf. subj.)  
to be done, if the Ædui should introduce

sũas copĩas in fines Bellovacorum et  
 their forces into the borders of the Bellovaci and

cœpërint (perf. subj.) populari agros eorum.  
 should begin to ravage the lands of them [their iands].

His mandatis, dimittit<sup>12</sup> ěum ab  
 These (things) having been enjoined, he dismisses him from

se. Postquam cognovit ab his exploratorĩbus,  
 himself. After that he knew from these scouts,

quos misërat, et ab Remis, omnes copĩas  
 whom he had sent, and from the Remi, (that) all the forces

Belgarum coactas in unum lōcum  
 of the Belgæ (having been) collected into one place

venire ad se, nĕque jam  
 to come [were coming] to him(self), nor now

abesse<sup>13</sup> longè; maturavit traducëre  
 to be [were] distant far; he hastened to take over

flumen Axōnam, quod est in extremis  
 the river Axona, which is in the extreme [remotest]

finibus Remorum, exercĩtum, atque ĩbi  
 borders of the Remi, the army, and there

posũit castra (pl.). Quæ res et  
 pitched (his) camp. Which thing [action] both

muniebat unum lätus castrorum (pl.) ripĩs  
 was fortifying one side of the camp by the banks

flumĩnis et reddebat ěa  
 of the river and was rendering these (things)

quæ ěrant pōst, tuta ab hostĩbus, et  
 which were behind, safe from the enemy, and

efficiebat ut commeatus possent  
 was effecting that provisions might be able [could]

portari ad ěum ab Remis, que  
 (to) be carried to him from the Remi, and

reliquis civitatĩbus sine pericũlo. Pons ěrat  
 the remaining states without danger. A bridge was

in ěo flumĩne; ĩbi ponit præsidiũ,  
 on this river; there he places a guard,

et reliquit Quintum Titurĩum Sabinum legatum  
 and left Quintus Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant

in altērâ parte flumīnis cum sex cohortibus ;  
 on the other part [side] of the river with six cohorts ;

jūbet munire castra (pl.) vallo in  
 he orders (him) to fortify the camp with a rampart into [in]

altitudīnem duodēcim pēdum que fossâ  
 height (of) twelve feet and with a trench

duodeviginti pēdum.  
 (of) eighteen feet (deep).

6. Oppīdum Remorum, nomīne Bibrax, abērat  
 A town of the Remi, by name Bibrax, was distant

octo millia passūm ab castris ipsis (pl.) ;  
 eight thousand (of) paces from the camp itself ;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impētū  
 the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinēre : sustentatum est ægrè  
 from [on] the march : it [the assault] was sustained hardly

ēo dīe. Eādē oppugnatio Gallorum atque  
 on this day. The same assault of the Gauls and

Belgarum est hæc : Hi, ūbi, multitudīne  
 of the Belgæ is this : These, when, a multitude

homīnum circumjectâ totis mœnibus (dat.),  
 of men having been thrown around the whole wall,

lapīdes cœpti-sunt jāci in murum  
 stones were begun to be thrown against the wall

undīque que murus nudatus-est defensoribus ;  
 on all sides and the wall was stripped from defenders

testudīne factâ, succedunt portis (dat.)  
 a testudo having been formed, approach the gates

que subrūunt murum. Quod tum fiebat  
 and undermine the wall. Which then was done

facilè. Nam cum tanta<sup>14</sup> multitudo conjiciebant  
 easily. For when so great a multitude were hurling

lapīdes ac tela, protestas consistendi in  
 stones and darts, a power [ability] of standing on

muro erat nulli. Quum nox fecisset  
 the wall was to none. When night had made

(pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Remus Iccius,  
 an end of assaulting, the Remian Iccius,

summâ nobilitate et gratiâ inter  
with [of the] highest nobility and favor among

sûos, qui tum præerat oppido, unus ex  
his own (people), who then commanded (to) the town, one from [of]

ïis, qui venërant ad Cæsarem legati  
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) ambassadors

de pace, mittit nuntios ad eum, nisi  
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless

subsidiûm submittatur (pres. subj.) sibi, se  
aid is sent to him (self), he himself

posse non sustinere diutius.  
to be able [could] not (to) hold out longer.

7. Eò de mediâ nocte, Cæsar usus  
Thither about mid night, Cæsar having used

iisdem ducibus, qui venërant nuntii ab  
the same guides, who had come (as) messengers from

Iccio, mittit Numidas et Cretas sagittarios  
Iccius, sends the Numidian and Cretan archers

et Baleares funditores subsidio oppidanis.  
and Balearic slingers for a reinforcement to the townsmen.

Adventu quorum, et studium propugnandi  
By the arrival of whom, both a zeal of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit  
with a hope of defence approached

Remis (dat.), et de eadem causâ spes  
the Remi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppidi discessit hostibus.  
of gaining the town departed from [left] the enemy.

Itaque morati paulisper apud oppidum  
Therefore having delayed a little while at the town

que depopulati agros Remorum, omnibus  
and having laid waste the lands of the Remi, all

vicis que ædificiis incensis, quò  
the villages and buildings having been burnt, where

potërant adire, contenderunt  
they were able to approach, they strove [hastened]

ad castra (pl.) Cæsaris cum omnibus copiis,  
to the camp of Cæsar with all (their) forces,



et posuerunt castra (pl.) à mīnùs duobus  
and pitched (their) camp from [at] less than two

millibus passūm, quæ castra (pl.) ut  
thousand (of) paces, which camp as

significabatur fumo atque ignibus, patebant  
was indicated by smoke and by fires, was extending

in latitudīnem amplius octo millibus  
into [in] breadth more (than) eight thousand

passūm.  
(of) paces.

8. Cæsar primò statuit supersedēre  
Cæsar at first determined to defer

prælio (abl.) et propter multitudīnem  
a battle both on account of the multitude

hostium et propter eximiam opinionem  
of the enemy and on account of the extraordinary reputation

virtutis; tamen periclitabatur quotidie  
of (their) valor; yet he was making trial daily

equestribus præliis, quid hostis posset  
in cavalry battles, what the enemy might be able

virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi  
in valor, and what our (men) might dare. When

intellexit nostros esse non inferiores,  
he understood (that) our (men) to be [were] not inferior,

lōco pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque  
the place before the camp (being) favorable and

idonēo<sup>15</sup> naturâ ad instruendam aciem; quòd  
suitable by nature for drawing up the line; because

is collis ubi castra (pl.) posita-erant, editus  
this hill where the camp had been placed, being raised

pauullūm ex planitie, patebat in  
a little from the plain, was extending into [in]

latitudīnem adversus tantum lōci, quantum  
breadth opposite so much of place [distance] as

acies instructa potērat occupare atque  
the line (of battle), arrayed, was able to occupy, and

habebat dejectus lateris ex utrâque  
was having descents of the side from [on] either

parte, et lenīter fastigiatus in fronte, paulatim  
 part [hand], and gently sloping in front, gradually  
 redibat ad planitiem: ab utroque latere  
 was returning to the plain: from each side  
 ejus collis obduxit transversam fossam circiter  
 of this hill he led over a transverse trench about  
 quadringentorum passūm, et ad extremas  
 (of) four hundred paces, and at the extreme [both ends of]  
 fossas constituit castella, que ibi collocavit  
 the trenches he planted redoubts, and there placed  
 tormenta; ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 engines; lest, when he had arrayed  
 aciem, hostes (quod poterant tantum  
 (his) battle line, the enemy (because they were able so much  
 multitudīne) possent circumvenire à  
 by (their) multitude) might be able [could] (to) surround from [on]  
 lateribus suos pugnantes. Hoc facto,  
 the flanks his (men) fighting. This having been done,  
 duabus legionibus, quas conscripsērat proximē,  
 two legions, which he had levied last,  
 relictis in castris (pl.), ut, si quid opus  
 having been left in camp, that, if any need  
 esset possent duci subsidio,<sup>16</sup> constituit  
 should be, they might be able to be led for reinforcement, he formed  
 reliquas sex legiones in acie pro castris (pl.).  
 the remaining six legions in battle line before the camp.  
 Item hostes instruxerant suas copias eductas  
 Likewise the enemy had drawn up their forces led forth  
 ex castris (pl.).  
 from the camp.

9. Pālus non magna erat inter nostrum atque  
 A marsh not great was between our (men) and  
 exercitum hostium; hostes expectabant, si  
 the army of the enemy; the enemy were awaiting, if  
 nostri transirent hanc; autem nostri erant  
 our (men) would cross over this; but our (men) were  
 parati in armis ut, si initium transeundi  
 prepared in arms that, if a beginning of crossing

fīeret ab illis,<sup>17</sup> aggrederentur impeditos.  
 should be made by those (forces) they might attack (them) entangled.

Intērim contendebatur<sup>18</sup> equestri prœlio  
 Meanwhile there was fighting in a cavalry battle

inter dūas acīes. Ubi neutri faciunt  
 between the two lines. When neither make

initium transeundi, prœlio nostrorum equitum  
 a beginning of crossing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit sūos in  
 (being) more successful, Cæsar led back his (men) into

castra (pl.). Hostes protinus contenderunt  
 the camp. The enemy forthwith strained [hastened]

ex ěo lōco ad flumen Axōnam, quod  
 from that place to the river Axona, which it

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi  
 has been shown to be [is] behind our camp; there

vadis repertis, conati-sunt traducere  
 fords being found, they endeavored to lead over

partem suarum copiarum, ěo consilio, ut,  
 part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,  
 if they should be able, they might storm the fortress,

cui Q. Titurius legatus præerat, que  
 over which Q. Titurius the lieutenant held command, and

interseindērent pontem: si mīnūs, popula-  
 might cut down the bridge: if less [not], they might

rentur agros Remorum, qui ěrat magno  
 ravage the lands of the Remi, which were for [of] great

usūi nobis ad gerendum bellum<sup>19</sup> que  
 use to us for carrying on the war and

prohibērent<sup>20</sup> nostrōs commeātū.  
 were cutting off our (men) from supplies.

10. Cæsar factus certior à Tituriō,  
 Cæsar being made more certain [informed] by Titurius,

traducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numīdas  
 leads over the bridge all the cavalry, and Numidians

lēvis<sup>21</sup> armaturæ, funditores que sagittariōs, atque  
 of light armor, the slingers and archers, and

contendit	ad	ĕos.	Pugnatum-est	acriter <sup>22</sup>	in
strains [hastens]	to	them.	It was fought	sharply	in
ĕo	lŏco:	noſtri	aggreſſi	hoſtes	
this	place:	our (men)	having attacked	the enemy	
impeditos	in	flumīne,	occiderunt	magnum	numĕrum
entangled	in	the river.	slew	a great	number
eorum:	repulerunt	multitudine	telorum		
of them;	they [our men] repulsed	with a multitude	of weapons		
reliquos	conantes	audaciſſimĕ	transire		
the remaining (men)	endeavoring	most boldly	to cross		
per	corpŏra	eorum:	interfecerunt	primos,	qui
among	the bodies	of those (slain);	they killed	the first,	who
transiĕrant,	circumventos	equitatu.	Hoſtes (pl.),		
had passed,	surrounded	by cavalry.	The enemy		
ŭbi intellexerunt	ſpem <sup>23</sup>	fefelliſſe	ſe		
when they understood	hope	to have [had] deceived	themselves [them]		
et de	expugnando	oppĭdo,	et de	tranſeundo	
both of	storming	the town,	and of	crossing	
flumīne,	nĕque	viderunt	noſtros	progrĕdi	
the river,	nor	saw	our (men)	advance	
in	iniquiorem	lŏcum	cauſâ		
into	a more unequal (disadvantageous)	place	for the sake		
pugnandi,	atque	frumentariâ	reſ	cœpit	
of fighting,	and	corn	thing [provisions]	began	
deficĕre	ĕos;	concilio	convocato,	conſtitu-	
to fail	them;	a council	having been convened,	they	
erunt	eſſe	optĭmum	quemque	reverti	ſuam
resolved	it was	best (for)	each	to return	(to) his
dŏmum:	et	convenire	undĭque	ad	defend-
home:	and	to assemble	from all sides	for	defend-
endos, <sup>24</sup>	ĕos	in	fines	quorum	Romani
ing,	those	into	the borders	of whom	the Romans
primŭm	introduciffent	exercĭtum;	ut	decertarent	
first	should lead on	the army;	that	they might contend	
potĭŭs	in	ſuis,	quâm	alienis	finibus,
rather	in	their own,	than	in foreign	borders,
uterentur	domesticis	copiis (abl.)	frumentarię	rĕi.	
might use	domestic	supplies	of corn	thing	



Quōque hęc ratio, cum reliquis  
 [provisions]. Also this reason, with remaining [other]  
 causis, deduxit eos ad eam sententiā,  
 causes, led them to this opinion [resolution],  
 quōd cognoverant Divitiacum atque Æduos  
 because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædui  
 appropinquare<sup>25</sup> finibus Bellocorum. Poterat  
 (to) approach (to) the borders of the Belloci. It was possible  
 non persuaderi his, ut morarentur  
 not to (be) persuaded [persuade] (to) these, that they should delay  
 diutius, neque ferrent auxilium suis.<sup>26</sup>  
 longer, nor should bring aid to their (countrymen).  
 11. Eā re constitutā, secundā vigiliā,  
 This thing being resolved, in the second watch,  
 egressi castris cum magno strepitu  
 having gone out from camp with great noise  
 ac tumultu, nullo certo ordine neque imperio,  
 and tumult, with no certain order nor command,  
 quum quisque peteret (imp. subj.) primum  
 since each was seeking the first  
 locum itineris sibi, et properaret (imp. subj.)  
 place of the road for himself, and was hastening  
 pervenire domum, fecerunt, ut profectio  
 to reach (to) home, they did [acted] so, that (their) departure  
 videretur (imp. subj.) consimilis fugæ. Hęc  
 was seeming very like (to) a flight. This  
 re statim cognita per speculatores,  
 thing immediately being known through scouts,  
 Cæsar veritus insidias, quōd per-  
 Cæsar having feared snares, because he had  
 spexerat<sup>27</sup> nondum de quā causā disced-  
 seen clearly not yet on [for] what cause they were  
 erent (imp. subj.) continuit exercitum, que  
 departing held the army, and  
 equitatum castris. Primā luce,<sup>28</sup> re  
 cavalry in camp. At the first light, the thing [fact]  
 confirmatā ab exploratoribus, præmisit  
 being confirmed by scouts, he sent before



omnem equitatum, qui moraretur  
 all the cavalry, which should delay [detain]

novissimum agmen. His præfecit Quintum  
 the last troop [rear]. Over them (he) appointed Quintus

Pedium, et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam  
 Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

legatos ei: jussit Titum Labienum  
 lieutenants to him [his lieutenants]: he ordered Titus Labienus

legatum subsequi cum tribus legionibus.  
 the lieutenant to follow close with three legions.

Hi adorti novissimos et prosecuti  
 These, having attacked the last [rear] and having pursued

multa millia passuum, conciderunt magnam  
 (them) many thousand (of) paces, cut up a great

multitudinem eorum fugentium. Quum hi ab  
 multitude of them fleeing When those from [on]

extremo agmine, ad quos ventum-erat,<sup>29</sup>  
 the last troop [rear], to whom it had been [they had] come,

consistèrent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)  
 were standing together and were sustaining

fortiter impetum nostrorum militum; priores,  
 bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former [the

quod viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à  
 van], because they seemed to be distant from

periculo, neque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ  
 danger, nor were held together by any

necessitate neque imperio, clamore exaudito,  
 necessity nor command, the din being heard,

ordinibus perturbatis, omnes ponerent  
 the ranks being disturbed [confused], all put

præsidium sibi in fugâ. Ita sine ullo  
 protection for themselves in flight. Thus without any

periculo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudinem  
 danger our (men) killed so great a multitude

eorum, quantum spatium<sup>30</sup> diei fuit; que  
 of them, as the space of the day was [permitted]; and

sub occasum solis destiterunt  
 under [just before] the going down of the sun they ceased

sequi, que receperunt se in castra, ūti  
to follow, and betook themselves into camp, as

imperatum-erat.

it had been commanded.

12. Postridie ejus diei, prius-quàm hostes (pl.)  
The day after this day, before (that) the enemy

recipērent se ex terrore ac fūgā,  
might recover themselves from terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercitum in fines Suessi-  
Cæsar led (his) army into the borders of the Suessi-

onum, qui erat proximi Remis; et  
ones, who were nearest to the Remi; and

magno itinēre confecto, contendit ad  
a great march having been completed, he hastened to

oppidum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare  
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm

id ex itinēre, quòd audiebat  
this from the way [on his march], because he was hearing

esse vacūm ab defensoribus, potuit<sup>31</sup>  
(it) to be [was] clear from [of] defenders, he was able

non expugnare propter latitudīnem fossæ,  
not to storm (it) on account of the breadth of the ditch,

que altitudīnem muri, paucis defendentibus.<sup>32</sup>  
and the height of the wall, few (men) defending (it).

Castris (pl.) munitis cœpit agere vinēas,  
The camp having been fortified he began to drive [push] the sheds,

que comparare quæ erant usūi  
and to prepare (the things) which were for use

ad oppugnandum.<sup>33</sup> Intērim omnis multitudo  
for storming. Meanwhile all the multitude

Suessionum convēnit ex fūgā in  
of the Suessiones comes together [gathers] from flight into

oppidum proximâ nocte. Vinēis actis  
the town on the nearest [next] night. The sheds having been pushed

celeriter ad oppidum, aggere jacto, que  
quickly to the town, a mound having been thrown up, and

turribus constitutis, Galli permoti  
towers (having been) erected, the Gauls much moved [alarmed]

magnitudīne opĕrum, quæ nēque vidĕrant  
by the vastness of the works, which neither they had seen

antē nēque audiĕrant, et celeritate  
before nor had heard (of), and by the quickness

Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsārem  
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar

de deditōne; et, Remis petentibus,  
about a surrender; and, the Remi seeking [petitioning].

ut conservarentur,<sup>34</sup> impĕtrant.  
that they may be preserved, they obtain (it).

13. Cæsar obsidibus acceptis primis  
Cæsar hostages having been received the first (men)

civitatis, atque duobus filiis regis Galbæ  
of the state, and two sons of king Galba

ipsius que omnibus armis traditis ex oppido,  
himself and all arms having been delivered from the town,

Cæsar accipit Suessiones in deditōnem,<sup>35</sup> que  
Cæsar received the Suessiones into a surrender; and

duxit exercitum in Bellovacos: qui quum  
led the army among the Bellovaci: and when

contulissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnia  
they had brought together themselves and all

sua in oppidum Bratuspantium, atque  
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and

Cæsar, cum exercitu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab  
Cæsar, with the army, was distant from

eo oppido circiter quinque millia passuum,  
this town about five thousand (of) paces,

omnes majores natu egressi ex  
all (the) greater by birth [the elders] having gone out from

oppido, cœperunt tendere manus ad  
the town, began to stretch (their) hands to

Cæsārem, significare voce, sese venire  
Cæsar, to signify by voice, (that they) themselves (to) come

in ejus fidem ac potestatem nēque  
into his faith [protection] and power nor

contendere contra Romanum populum armis:<sup>36</sup>  
(to) contend against the Roman people with arms:

ītem, quum accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppidum,  
also, when he had approached to the town,

que ponēret (imp. subj.) castra (pl.) ibi, puēri que  
and was placing [pitching] (his) camp there, the boys and

mulieres ex muro, manibus passis, sūo  
women from the wall, (with) hands stretched out, by their

more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.  
custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiācus fācit verba pro his (nam  
Divitiacus makes words [intercedes] for these (for  
post discessum Belgarum, copiis Æduorum  
after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces of the Ædui  
dimissis, revertērat ad eum):  
having been sent away, he had returned to him [Cæsar] );

Bellovācos omni tempore fuisse in fide  
the Bellovaci in[for]all time (to)have been in the faith [confidence]

atque amicitia Ædūæ civitatis; impulsos à  
and friendship of the Æduan state; impelled by

suis principibus, qui dicērent (imp. subj.) Ædūos  
their chiefs, who were saying the Ædui,

redactos in servitatem à Cæsare, perferre omnes  
reduced into servitude by Cæsar, (to)endure all

indignitates que contumelias, et defecisse ab  
indignities and outrages, (both) (to)have revolted from

Ædūis, et intulisse bellum Romano populo.<sup>37</sup>  
the Ædui, and have waged war upon the Roman people.

Qui fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principes hujus  
(Those) who had been chiefs [authors] of this

consilii, quod intelligērent (imp. subj.) quantam  
counsel, because they understood how great

calamitatem intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati (dat),  
a calamity they had brought on the state,

profugisse in Britanniam. Non solum Bellovācos  
to have [had] fled into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci

petere, sed etiam Ædūos, pro his,  
to seek [entreated] but also the Ædui, for these

ut utatur sua clementia ac mansuetudine (abl.)  
that he may use his clemency and mildness



in Æos: quod si fecerit, amplificaturum  
 towards them: which if he shall have done, about to [it would]  
 auctoritatem Æduorum apud omnes  
 enlarge the authority of the Ædui at [among] all  
 Belgas, auxiliis atque opibus quorum  
 the Belgæ, by the troops and resources of whom  
 consueverint (perf. subj.) sustentare,<sup>38</sup> si  
 they have been accustomed to endure, if  
 qua bella incidèrint.  
 any wars may have happened [occurred].

15. Cæsar, causâ honoris Divi-  
 Cæsar, for the sake of the honor of Divi-  
 tiaci atque Æduorum, dixit sese  
 tiacus and of the Ædui, said (that he) himself  
 recepturum Æos in fidem et  
 about to [would] receive them into faith [allegiance] and  
 conservaturum; et quòd civitas erat  
 about to [would] preserve (them); and because the state was  
 magna et præstabat inter Belgas auctoritate  
 great and it was excelling among the Belgæ in authority  
 ac multitudine hominum, proposcit sex-centos  
 and in multitude of men, he required six hundred  
 obsides: his traditis que omnibus armis  
 hostages: these having been delivered and all (their) arms  
 collatis ex oppido, pervenit ab eo  
 (having been) brought together out of the town, he passed from this  
 loco in fines Ambianorum, qui dederunt  
 place into the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered  
 se que omnia sua sine mōrâ.  
 themselves and all their (possessions) without delay.  
 Nervii attingebant fines eorum: de  
 The Nervii were touching upon the borders of them [their borders]: con-  
 naturâ que moribus quorum, quum Cæsar  
 cerning the nature and manners of whom, when Cæsar  
 quæreret (imp. subj.), reperiebat sic; nullum  
 was inquiring, he ascertained thus; no  
 aditum esse mercatoribus ad Æos; pãti  
 access to be [was] for merchants to them: to (they) suffer



nihil vini, que reliquarum rerum pertinentium  
nothing [no] (of) wine, and (of) remaining things tending

ad luxuriam, inferri: quod  
to luxury, to be brought in [imported]: because

existimarent (imp. subj.) animos eorum  
they thought (that) the minds of them [their minds]

relanguescere, que virtutem remitti  
(to) grow feeble, and (their) virtue [valor] to be [is] relaxed

his rebus: homines esse feros, que magnæ  
by these things: the men to be [are] fierce, and of great

virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquos  
valor: to (they) upbraid and (to) blame the remaining

Belgas, qui dedissent (pl. perf. subj.) se  
Belgæ, who had surrendered themselves

Romano populo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
to the Roman people, and had cast aside

patriam virtutem; confirmare,  
(their) native virtue [national honor]; to (they) affirm (that they),

se neque missuros legatos, neque  
themselves neither about to [would] send ambassadors, nor

accepturos ullam conditionem pacis.<sup>39</sup>  
about to [would] receive any condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) iter triduo  
When he had made a journey of three days

per fines eorum, inveniebat  
through the borders of them [their borders], he was learning

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab  
from the captives, (that) the river Sabis to be [was] distant from

suis castris non amplius decem millia  
his camp not more (than) ten thousand

passum: omnes Nervios consedissee  
(of) paces: (that) all the Nervii to have [had] halted

trans id flumen, que ibi unà cum  
beyond this river, and there together with

Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, suis finitimis,  
the Atrebates and Veromandui, their neighbors,

expectare adventum Romanorum; nam  
to [were] awaiting the arrival of the Romans; for

persuasērant utrisque his,<sup>40</sup> ut experirentur  
 they had persuaded both these, that they should try

eandem fortunam belli; etiā copias  
 the same fortune of war: also (that) the forces

Aduatucorum expectari ab his,  
 of the Aduatuci to be waited for [were expected] by these,

atque esse in itinēre:  
 and (that they) to be [were] on the way [march]:

conjecisse muliēres, que  
 to have [that they had] thrown [put] together the women, and

qui per ætatem vidērentur (imp. subj.)  
 (those) who through age were seeming

inutiles ad pugnam, in eum locum, quod  
 useless for a battle, into this place, in which

propter paludes aditus non esset exercitū.<sup>41</sup>  
 on account of the marshes access might not be for an army.

17. His rebus cognītis, Cæsar præmittit  
 These things having been known, Cæsar sends forward

exploratores, que centuriones, qui deligant  
 scouts, and centurions, who may choose

locum idoneum castris: que quum complures  
 a place suitable for camp: and since many

ex Belgis que reliquis Gallis  
 from the Belgæ and remaining Gauls

dedititīs, secuti Cæsarem, facerent  
 (who had) surrendered, having followed Cæsar, made

(imp. subj.) iter unā: quidam ex  
 (their) way together: certain ones from [among]

his, ut postea cognitum-est ex captivis,  
 these, as afterwards it was known from the captives,

consuetudine itinēris nostri exercitūs  
 the custom of the journey [march] of our army

eorum dierum perspectā, pervenerunt nocte  
 of those days being fully seen, repaired by night

ad Nervios atque demonstraverunt iis  
 to the Nervii and showed to them (that)

magnū numerū impedimentorum intercedere  
 a great number of baggage wagons (to) come between

[intervened] inter singūlas legiones; nēque  
 between the several legions; nor  
 esse quidquam negoti,<sup>42</sup> cū prima  
 to be [was] (there) any thing of business [any difficulty], when the first  
 legiō venisset in castris, que reliquæ  
 legion had come into camp, and the remaining  
 legiones abessent magnum spatium, adoriri  
 legions were distant a great space [way], to attack  
 hanc sub sarcinis: quâ pulsâ, que  
 this (one) under packs [baggage]: which being routed, and  
 impedimentis direptis, futurum,<sup>43</sup>  
 the baggage wagons having been plundered, about to [it would] be,  
 ut reliquæ non auderent consistere  
 that the remaining (legions) would not dare to stand  
 contrà. Etiam adjuvabat consilium eorum,  
 against [in opposition]. Also it was aiding the design of these,  
 qui deferebant rem, quòd Nervii  
 who were proffering the thing [plan], because the Nervii  
 antiquitùs, quum possent (imp. subj.) nihil  
 anciently, since they were able (to do) nothing  
 equitatu, (ēnim nēque ad hoc tempus  
 with cavalry, (for neither to this time  
 student ēi rei, sed, quidquid possunt,  
 are they zealous for this thing, but, (in) whatever they are able,  
 valent pedestribus copiis,) quò impedirent  
 they are strong in foot forces,) that they might hinder  
 facilius equitatum finitimorum, si venissent  
 more easily the cavalry of (their) neighbors, if they might come  
 ad eos causâ prædandi, teneris arboribus  
 to them for the sake of robbing, pliant trees  
 incisis atque inflexis, que crebris ramis  
 being cut and bent in, and thick boughs  
 enatis in latitudinem, et rūbis  
 having sprouted forth into breadth [sidewise], and brambles  
 que sentibus interjectis, effecerant,  
 and thorns having been cast between, they had brought to pass,  
 ut hæ sæpes præberent (imp. subj.) munimenta  
 that these hedges were affording fortifications

instar muri; quòd posset (imp. subj.) non mōdò  
like a wall; where it was possible not only

non intrari, sed ne perspīci<sup>44</sup> quīdem.  
not to be entered, but not to be seen through even.

Quum iter nostri agmīnis impediretur  
When the march of our army should be hindered

(imp. subj.) his rebus Nervī  
by these things [conditions] the Nervī

existimaverunt consilium non omittendum  
thought the advice (must) not (to) be omitted

sibi (dat.).

[neglected] by themselves.

18. Hæc erat natura loci, quem  
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegērant castris. Collis æqualiter  
(our) men had chosen for camp. A hill equally

declivis ab summo vergebat ad  
sloping from the highest (point) was receding to

flumen Sabim, quod nominavimus supra:  
the river Sabis [Sambre], which we have named [mentioned] above:

ab ão flumīne pãri acclivitate collis  
from this river with equal ascent a hill

nasebatur advērsus et contrarius huic, infimus  
was rising opposite and facing this, the lowest

circiter ducentos passus apertus,  
(portion) about two hundred paces (being) clear,

silvestris ab superiore parte; ut posset (imp.  
woody from [on] the higher part: so that it was possible

subj.) non perspīci facīlè introrsus.<sup>45</sup> Intra  
not to be seen through [to see] easily within. Inside

ẽas silvas hostes continebant . se in  
these woods the enemy were holding themselves in

oculto. In aperto loco, secundum flumen,  
secret [hiding]. In the open place, near [along] the river,

paucæ stationes equitum videbantur. Altitudo  
a few pickets of horsemen were seen. The depth

fluminis erat circiter trium pēdum.  
of the river was about (of) three feet.



19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur  
 Cæsar, the cavalry having been sent before, was following closely

omnibus copïis : sed ratio que ordo  
 with all (his) forces ; but the manner and order

agmînis habebat se aliter ac  
 of the marching line was keeping itself otherwise and [than]

Belgæ detulerant ad Nervios. Nam,  
 the Belgæ had carried [reported] to the Nervii. For,

quod hostis appropinquabat, Cæsar sũâ  
 because the enemy was approaching, Cæsar by his

consuetudine ducebat sex expeditas legiones :<sup>46</sup>  
 custom was leading six light armed legions :

post eas collocabat impedimenta  
 after [behind] these he was putting the baggage

totius exercitûs ; inde dũæ legiones,  
 of the whole army ; then (the) two legions,

quæ conscriptæ-erant proximè, claudebant  
 which had been enrolled last, were closing up

totum agmen, que erant præsidio  
 the whole line of march, and were (for) a safeguard

impedimentis. Nostri equites cum fundi-  
 to the baggage. Our horsemen with the

toribus que sagittariis transgressi flumen,  
 slingers and archers having passed the river,

commiserunt proelium cum equitatu hostium.  
 joined battle with the cavalry of the enemy.

Quum illi identidem recipèrent (imp. subj.)  
 When they now and then were betaking

se in silvas ad suos, ac rursus  
 themselves into the woods to their (men), and again

facèrent (imp. subj) impetum in nostros ex  
 were making an attack upon our (men) out of

silvâ ; neque nostri auderent (imp. subj.) insèqui  
 the wood ; nor our (men) were daring to pursue

cedentes longiùs, quam ad quem finem  
 (those) yielding farther, than to which end [the limit]

porrecta ac aperta loca pertinebant :<sup>47</sup>  
 the extended and open places were reaching :



intērim sex legiones, quæ venērant primæ,  
meanwhile the six legions, which had come first,

opēre dimenso, cæperunt munire castra.  
the work having been measured, began to fortify (the) camp.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercītus visa-  
When the first baggage wagons of our army were

sunt ab eis, qui latebant abditī in silvis,  
seen by these, who were lying concealed in the woods,

quod tempus convenērat inter eos  
which time had been agreed upon between them

committendi præliū: ut constituērant intra  
of [for] joining battle: as they had stationed within

silvas aciem que ordīnes, atque  
the woods the battle line and ranks, and

ipsi confirmavērant sese,<sup>48</sup> subitō  
they themselves had encouraged themselves, suddenly

provolaverunt omnibus copiis, que fecerunt  
they flew forth with all (their) forces [troops], and made

impētum in nostros equites. His pulsīs  
an attack upon our horsemen. These having been routed

facilē ac proturbatis, decurrerunt incredibili  
easily and disordered, they ran down, with incredible

celeritate ad flumen; ut pænē uno tempore  
speed to the river; so that almost at one time

hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad silvas,  
the enemy were seen both at the woods,

et in flumine, et jam in nostris  
and in the river, and now in our

manibus. Autem contenderunt eādem  
hands [close at hand]. But they hastened with the same

celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos  
speed on the opposite hill to our camp, and (to) these

qui erant occupati in opēre.  
who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnia erant agenda Cæsari (dat.) uno  
All (things) were to be acted [managed] by Cæsar at one

tempore: vexillum proponendum, quod erat  
time: the standard to [must] be set up, which was

insigne, quum oporteret concurrī (passive verb)  
the sign, when it was proper to make a rush

ad arma: signum dandum tūbā:  
to arms: the signal to [must] be given with the trumpet:

milītes revocandi ab opĕre: qui  
the soldiers to [must] be recalled from the work: (those) who

processĕrant paulò longiùs, causâ aggĕris  
had proceeded a little farther, for the sake of the rampart

petendi arcessendi,<sup>49</sup> acĭes  
[materials] to [must] be sought, to [must] be summoned, the line

instruenda: milītes cohortandi:  
(of battle) to [must] be arranged: the soldiers to [must] be exhorted:

signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum  
the signal to [must] be given. A great part of which things

brevitas tempōris, et successus et incursus  
the shortness of the time, and the approach and charge

hostiū impediēbat (sing.). Dŭæ res ĕrant subsidĭo  
of the enemy were hindering. Two things were (for) an aid

his difficultatibus, scientĭa atque usus  
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience

milītum, quòd, exercitati superioribus  
of the soldiers, because, having been exercised in former

præliis, potĕrant ipsi præscribere  
battles, they were able themselves to prescribe [assign]

sibi quid oporteret fieri, non mĭnùs  
to themselves what was proper to be done, not less

commōdè quàm doceri ab aliis:  
conveniently [fitly], than to be shown by others:

et quòd Cæsar vetuĕrat singūlos legatos  
and because Cæsar had forbidden the several lieutenants

discedĕre ab opĕre que singulis legionibus,  
to depart from the work and (their) several legions,

nĭsi castris (pl.) munitis. Hi, propter  
unless the camp having been [was] fortified. These, on account of

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostiū,  
the nearness and swiftness of the enemy,

spectabant nĭhil jam imperiū Cæsāris;  
were awaiting not at all now the command of Cæsar;

sed per se, administrabant quæ  
but by themselves, were managing what (things)

videbantur.

seemed (best).

21. Necessariis rebus imperatis, Cæsar  
The necessary things having been commanded, Cæsar  
decucurrit ad cohortandos<sup>50</sup> milites in partem,  
ran down for exhorting [to exhort] the soldiers into the part,  
quam fors obtulit; et devenit ad decimam  
which chance presented; and came down to the tenth  
legionem. Cohortatus-est milites non longiore  
legion. He exhorted the soldiers not with longer  
oratione, quàm uti retinerent memoriã  
speech, than that they should retain the memory  
sue pristinae virtutis, neu perturbarentur animo  
of their former valor, nor should be confused in mind  
que sustinerent fortiter impetum hostium;  
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemy;  
et, quod hostes aberant non longius,  
and, because the enemy were distant not farther,  
quàm quò telum posset adjici, dedit  
than where a weapon might be able [could] (to) be cast, he gave  
signum committendi<sup>51</sup> praelii atque profectus  
the signal of [for] joining battle and having set out  
item in alteram partem, causâ cohortandi,  
likewise into another part, for the sake of exhorting,  
occurrit pugnantibus. Tanta fuit exig-  
he meets (them) fighting. So great [such] was the brief-  
uitas temporis, que tam paratus animus hostium  
ness of the time, and so prepared the mind of the enemy  
ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuerit (perf. subj.);  
for battling, that time failed  
non modo ad accommodanda insignia,  
not only for fitting on the ensigns [badges],  
sed etiam ad induendas galæas, que detrahenda  
but even for putting on the helmets, and (for) drawing off  
tegmina scutis.<sup>52</sup> In quam partem  
the coverings from the shields. Into what [whatever] part

quisque devenit casu ab opère, que  
each came down by chance from the work, and

quæ signa conspexit prima, constitit  
what (whatever) standards he beheld first, he took stand

ad hæc, ne dimittēret tempus pugnandi  
at these, lest he might let pass [lose] the time of fighting

in quærendo sūos.  
in seeking his own (comrades).

22. Exercītu instructo, māgis ut natura  
The army having been drawn up, rather as the nature

lōci que dejectus collis, et necessitas  
of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

tempōris postulabat (sing.), quàm ut ratio  
of the time were requiring, than as [according to] the plan

atque ordo militaris rēi (sing.); quum aliæ  
and arrangement of military affairs; since some

legiones in aliâ parte resistērent (imp.  
legions in one part (others in another) were resisting

subj.) hostibus (dat.) diversis lōcis, que densissimis  
the enemy in different places, and very thick

sepibus interjectis, ut demonstravimus  
hedges having been interposed [intervening], as we have shown

antè, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.): nēque  
before, the view was impeded: neither

certa subsidia potērant collocari, nēque  
sure reserves were able [could] (to) be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset ōpus in quâque  
(to) [could it] be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nēque omnia imperia administrari  
part: nor all the orders to [could] be managed [given]

ab uno.<sup>53</sup> Itaque, in tantâ iniquitate  
by one. Therefore, in so great an irregularity

rerum, varii eventus fortunæ quoque sequebantur.  
of things, various events of fortune also were following.

23. Milites nonæ et decimæ legionis,  
The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions,

ut constitērant in sinistrâ parte acie,  
as they had stood in the left part of the battle line, (their)



pilis emissis, celeriter compulerunt ex  
 javelins having been thrown, quickly forced from  
 superiore loco in flumen Atrebatas, (nam  
 the higher place into the river the Atrebatas, (for  
 ěa pars obvenĕrat his) exanimatos cursu  
 this part had fallen to these) exhausted [spent] with running  
 ac lassitudine, que confectos vulneribus;  
 and fatigue, and worn out with wounds;  
 et insecuti gladiis conantes  
 and having pursued (them) with swords endeavoring  
 transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum  
 to cross over, they killed a great part of them  
 impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire  
 encumbered. They hesitated not to cross  
 flumen;<sup>54</sup> et progressi in iniquum locum,  
 the river; and having advanced into an unfavorable place,  
 conjecerunt in fugam hostes rursus resistentes,  
 cast into flight the enemy again resisting,  
 praelio redintegrato. Item in aliā parte, duæ  
 the battle having been renewed Also in another part, two  
 diversæ legiones, undecima et octava, Verom-  
 different legions, the eleventh and eighth, the Verom-  
 anduis profligatis, cum quibus congressi-erant,  
 andui having been routed, with whom they had joined,  
 praeliabantur ex superiore loco in ripis  
 were fighting from the higher place in [on] the banks  
 ipsis fluminis.<sup>55</sup> At totis castris (pl.)  
 themselves [the very banks] of the river. But the whole camp  
 fĕrĕ nudatis à fronte et à sinistra  
 nearly being exposed from [on] the front and from [on] the left  
 parte, cùm duodecima legio et septima  
 part [side], when the twelfth legion and the seventh  
 non magno intervallo ab ěâ, constitisset  
 not at a great distance from it, had taken stand  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu, omnes Nervii  
 upon the right wing, all the Nervii  
 confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato,  
 in closest marching line the leader (being) Boduognatus,



qui tenebat summam imperīi, contenderunt  
 who was holding the chief place of command, hastened

ad ěum lōcum: pars quorum (cœpit circumvenire  
 to this place: part of whom began to surround

legiones aperto latĕre pars petĕre  
 the legions (on) the open flank, part to seek [attack]

summum lōcum castrorum.  
 the highest place [portion] of the camp.

24. Eodem (tempĕre nostri equĭtes que  
 At the same time our cavalry and

pedĭtes lĕvis armaturæ, qui fuĕrant unā  
 infantry of light armor, who had been [were] together

cum his, quos dixĕram pulsos(-esse) primo  
 with these, whom I had said to have [had] been routed in the first

impĕtu hostĭum, cūm recipĕrent (imp. subj.)  
 attack of the enemy, when they were betaking

se in castra, occurrebant hostĭbus (dat.)  
 themselves into camp, were meeting the enemy

adversis ac rursus petebant fūgam in aliām  
 opposite and again were seeking flight into another

partem. Et calones, qui conspexĕrant à  
 part [direction]. And the camp followers, who had beheld from

Decumanā portā, ac summo jūgo collis  
 the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill

nostros victores transire flumen, egressi  
 our (men) conquerors (to) cross the river, having gone out

causā prædandi, quum respexissent (pl. perf.  
 for the sake of plundering, when they had looked back

subj.) et vidissent (pl. perf. subj.) hostes  
 and had seen the enemy (to be)

versari in nostris castris, præcipĭtes mandabant  
 engaged in our camp, headlong were consigning

sese fūgæ: sĭmul clamor que  
 themselves to flight: at the same time the shout and

fremĭtus eorum qui veniebant cum impedimentis  
 uproar of those who were coming with the baggage wagons

oriebatur, que alĭi perterrĭti ferebantur in aliām  
 was arising, and some dismayed were borne into one

partem.<sup>56</sup> Omnibus quibus rebus Treviri  
 part (others into another). By all which [these] things, the Trevirian  
 equites permoti, virtutis quorum est  
 cavalry having been alarmed, of the valor of whom there is  
 singularis opinio inter Gallos, qui  
 a singular [very high] opinion among the Gauls, who  
 missi causâ auxiliî à civitate,  
 (having been) sent for the sake of aid by the state,  
 venērunt ad Cæsarem, quum vidissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 had come to Cæsar, when they had seen (that)  
 nostra castra compleri multitudīne hostium,  
 our camp to be [was] filled with a multitude of the enemy  
 legiones præmi, et teneri  
 (that) the legions to be [were] pressed. and to be [were] held  
 pænè circumventas, calones, equites,  
 almost surrounded, (that) the camp followers, the cavalry,  
 Numidas funditores, diversos que dissipatos  
 the Numidian slingers. separated and scattered  
 fugere in omnes partes, nostris rebus  
 to flee [were fleeing] into all parts, our affairs  
 desperatis, contenderunt dõmum; renuntiaverunt  
 being despaired of, hastened home; they announced  
 civitati, Romanos pulsos que  
 to the state (that) the Romans (had been) routed and  
 superatos, hostes potitos eorum<sup>57</sup>  
 overcome, (that) the enemy to have [had] got possession of their  
 castris que impedimentis (abl.).  
 camp and baggage.

25. Cæsar profectus ab cohortatione  
 Cæsar having set out from the exhortation  
 decimæ legionis ad dextrum cornu, ubi vidit  
 of the tenth legion to the right wing, where he saw  
 suos urgeri, que signis  
 his (men) to be [were] pressed hard, and the standards  
 collatis in unum locum, milites  
 having been assembled into one place, the soldiers  
 duodecimæ legionis confertos esse  
 of the twelfth legion to have been [were] crowded together

impedimento sibi ipsis ad pugnam, omnibus  
for [as] an impediment to themselves for the battle, all

centurionibus quartæ cohortis occisis, que  
the centurions of the fourth cohort having been killed, and

signifero interfecto, signo  
the standard bearer (having been) slain, the standard

amisso, fere omnibus centurionibus  
(having been) lost, almost all the centurions

reliquarum cohortium, aut vulneratis aut  
of the remaining cohorts, either having been wounded or

occisis, in his primopilo Publio Sextio  
killed, in [among] these the first centurion Publius Sextius

Baculo, fortissimo viro, confecto multis  
Baculus, a very brave man, (having been) worn out with many

que gravibus vulneribus, ut jam non  
and heavy [severe] wounds, (so) that now he was not

posset (imp. subj.) sustinere se; reliquos  
able to support himself; the rest

esse tardiores, et nonnullos desertos à  
to be [were] more slow, and some (being) deserted by

novissimis excedere prælio, ac  
the rear to depart [were withdrawing] from the battle, and

vitare tela; hostes neque  
to avoid [were avoiding] the weapons; (that) the enemy neither

intermittere, subeuntes à fronte ex  
to intermit [ceased], advancing on the front from

inferiore loco, et instare ab  
the lower place [ground], and to press [pressed] on from [at]

utroque latere, et rem esse in  
each flank, and (that) the affair to be [was] in

angusto, neque esse ullum subsid-  
a narrow [critical state], nor to be [was there] any reinforce-

um, quod posset submitti;<sup>58</sup> scuto  
ment, which might be able [could] (to) be sent up; (with) a shield

detracto (abl. abs.) uni militi (dat.)  
(having been) snatched away from one soldier

ab novissimis (quod ipse venerat èd  
from [in] the latest [rear] (because) (he) himself had come there

sine scuto) processit in primam aciem;  
 without a shield) he advanced into the first battle line;  
 que centurionibus appellatis nominatim,  
 and the centurions having been called by name,  
 cohortatus reliquos, jussit milites inferre  
 having encouraged the rest, he ordered the soldiers to bear on  
 signa, et laxare manipulos, quod  
 the standards, and to loosen [open] the companies, in order that  
 possent uti gladiis (abl.) facilius. Spe  
 they might be able to use the swords more easily. Hope  
 illatâ militibus ejus, adventu ac  
 having been brought in to the soldiers by his, arrival and  
 animo (sing.) redintegrato, quum quisque  
 (their) spirits having been renewed, since every one  
 pro se cuperet (imp. subj.) navare operam  
 for himself was desiring to ply [do well] (his) task  
 in conspectu Imperatoris, etiam in suis  
 in the sight of the General, even in his  
 extremis rebus, impetus hostium tardatus-est  
 most critical affairs, the violence of the enemy was retarded  
 paulum.<sup>59</sup>  
 a little.

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) septimam  
 When Cæsar had seen (that) the seventh  
 legionem, quæ constitêrat juxtâ, urgeri  
 legion, which had stood near, to be [was] pressed  
 item ab hoste, monuit tribunos militum,  
 likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of the soldiers,  
 ut legiones conjungerent sese paulatim, et  
 that the legions should join themselves gradually, and  
 inferrent signa conversa in hostes.<sup>60</sup>  
 should bear on the standards turned against the enemy.  
 Quo facto, quum alii ferrent (imp. subj.)  
 Which having been done when some were bringing  
 subsidium aliis neque timerent (imp.  
 aid to some (others to others) nor were fearing  
 subj.)<sup>61</sup> ne aversi circumvenirentur  
 lest having been turned about they might be surrounded

ab hoste, cæperunt resistere audaciùs ac  
by the enemy, they began to resist more boldly and

pugnare fortiùs. Intërim milïtes duarum  
to fight more bravely. Meanwhile the soldiers of the two

legionum, quæ fuërant in novissïmo agmine  
legions, which had been in the rear marching line

præsidïo impedimentis, præliõ nuntiato,  
for protection to the baggage, the battle having been reported,

cursu incitato, conspiciëbantur in  
(their) course having been increased, were beheld on

summo colle (abl.) ab hostibus: et  
the highest [the summit] (of the) hill by the enemy: and

Titus Labienus potitus castris (abl.) hostium,  
Titus Labienus having possessed the camp of the enemy,

et conspicatus ex superiore lōco, quæ res  
and having beheld from the higher place, what things

gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit  
were transpiring in our camp, sent

decimam legionem subsidïo nostris; qui  
the tenth legion for [as] aid to our (men); who

quom cognovissent (pl. perf. subj.) ex fūgâ  
when they had ascertained from the flight

equitum et calonum, in quo lōco  
of the cavalry and of the camp followers in what place [condition]

res esset (imp. subj.), que quanto  
the affair [action] was, and in how great

pericūlo et castra et legiones et  
danger both camp, and the legions and

Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nihil  
the Commander were involved, made [left] nothing

reliqui (gen.) sibi ad celeritatem.<sup>62</sup>  
left [wanting] to themselves for speed.

27. Tanta commutatio rerum facta-est  
So great a change of things [conditions] was made

adventu horum, ut nostri etiã qui  
by the arrival of these, that our (men) even those who

procubuissent (pl. perf. subj.) confecti vulneribus,  
had lain down spent with wounds,



innixi            scutis (dat.), redintegrarent (imp. subj.)  
having leaned on the shields,            were renewing

prœlium.            Tum            calones            conspicati  
the battle.            Then            the camp followers            having beheld

hostes            perterritos,            etiã            inermes            occurrerent  
the enemy            dismayed,            even            unarmed            were assailing

(imp. subj.)            armatis :            equites            verò,  
the armed (enemy):            the cavalry            indeed,

ut            delerent            turpitudinem            fugæ            virtute,  
that            they might blot out            the disgrace            of flight            by valor,

pugnabant in omnibus locis, quò præ-  
were fighting in all places, in order that they might

ferrent se            legionariis militibus  
show better themselves than [might surpass] the legionary soldiers.

(dat.). At            hostes,            etiã            in            extremâ  
But            the enemy,            even            in            the extreme [last]

spe salutis, præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut,  
hope of safety, displayed so great valor, that,

quum primi eorum cecidissent proximi  
when the first of them had fallen the nearest [next]

insisterent            jacentibus,            atque            pugnarent  
would stand upon (those) lying prostrate,            and            would fight

ex eorum corporibus: his            dejectis,  
from their bodies: these having been thrown down,

et cadaveribus coacervatis<sup>63</sup> qui  
and the dead bodies having been heaped up (those) who

superessent, conjicerent tela in nostros ut  
survived, would hurl weapons upon our (men) as

ex tumulo, que remitterent intercepta  
from a mound, and would return the intercepted

pila: ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non  
javelins: so that it ought to be judged (that) not

nequidquam homines tantæ virtutis<sup>64</sup> ausos-esse  
in vain men of so great valor (to have) [had] dared

transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas  
to cross a very broad river, to ascend very high

ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quæ  
banks, to mount a most unfavorable place: which (things)

magnitudo      anīmi      redegērat      faciīlia      ex  
 a greatness      of soul      had rendered      easy      from

difficilimis.

the most difficult (conditions).

28. Hoc proeliō factō,      et gente  
 This battle having been done [fought], and the nation  
 ac nomīne Nerviorum redactō prōpè ad  
 and name of the Nervii having been reduced nearly to

interneccionem :      majores      natu,  
 extermination :      (those) greater      by birth [the elders],

quod dixeramus      collectos<sup>65</sup>      unā  
 whom we had said      to have [had been] collected      together

cum puēris que mulieribus in      æstuariā  
 with the boys and women into [among] the inlets

ac paludes, hac pugnā nuntiātā, quum  
 and marshes, this battle having been reported, when

arbitrarentur (imp. subj.) nihil impeditum  
 they were considering (that) nothing was difficult

victoribus, nihil tutum victis ;  
 for the conquerors, nothing safe for the conquered ;

consensu omnium, qui supererant, miserunt  
 by consent of all, (those) who survived, sent

legatos ad Cæsārem que dediderunt  
 ambassadors to Cæsar and surrendered

se ēi : et in commemorandā,  
 themselves to him : and in to be recounted

calamitate civitatis dixerunt :  
 [recounting], the calamity of the state they said (that they):

sese esse redactos ex sexcentis  
 themselves to be [were] reduced from six-hundred

ad tres senatores ; ex sexaginta millia  
 to three senators ; from sixty thousand

homīnum, ad vix quingentos, qui possent  
 (of) men, to scarcely five-hundred, who were able

ferre arma ; quos Cæsar conservavit diligent-  
 to bear arms ; whom Casar preserved most care-

issimè, que jussit uti suis  
 fully, and commanded (them) to use their own

finibus atque oppidis, ut videretur usus<sup>66</sup>  
 territories and towns, that he might seem to have used

misericiãdã (abl.) in miseros ac supplices;  
 compassion toward the wretched and suppliant;

et imperavit finitimis (dat.) ut prohiberent  
 and ordered the neighbors that they should check

se que suos ab injuriã et  
 themselves and their own (people) from injury and

maleficiõ.

trouble (to them).

29. Aduatuci, de quibus scripsimus suprà,  
 The Aduatuci, of whom we have written above,

quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnibus copiis  
 when they came with all (their) forces

auxilio Nervis, hæc pugna nuntiatã,  
 for aid to the Nervii, this battle having been reported,

reverterunt domum ex itinere; cunctis  
 returned home from the march; all

oppidis que castellis desertis, contulerunt  
 the towns and fortresses having been deserted, they brought together

omnia sua in unum oppidum egregiè  
 all their (effects) into one town excellently

munitum naturã: quum quod habere  
 fortified by nature: since which [this] had

(imp. subj.) altissimas rupes que despectus  
 very high rocks and outlooks

ex omnibus partibus in circuitu,<sup>67</sup>  
 from [on] all parts [sides] in compass [round about],

aditus leniter acclivis relinquebatur, ex  
 an approach gently sloping was left, from [on]

unã parte, non amplius ducentis pedum  
 one side, not more (than) two hundred (of) feet

in latitudinem: quem locum munièrant  
 in breadth: which place they had fortified

altissimo duplici muro: tum collocãrant  
 with a very high double wall: besides they had placed

saxa magni pondëris, et præacutas trabes  
 stones of great weight, and sharpened beams

in muro, Ipsi ěrant prognati ex Cimbris  
 on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri

que Teutōnis: qui, quum facĕrent (imp. subj.)  
 and Teutones: who, when they were making

ĭter in nostram Provinciā atque Italiā,  
 (their) march into our Province and Italy,

his impedimentis (pl.), quæ potĕrant non  
 this baggage, which they were able not

agĕre ac portare secum, depositis  
 to bring and to carry with them, having been deposited

citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unā  
 on this side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millia hominum ex suis custodiam  
 six thousand (of) men from [of] their own as a guard

ac præsidium. Hi, post obitum  
 and protection. These [the latter], after the destruction

eorum, exagitati multos annos à  
 of those, having been harassed many years by

finitimis, quum aliàs inferrent (imp. subj.)  
 (their) neighbors, when sometimes they were waging

bellum, aliàs defendĕrent (imp. subj.) illatum,  
 war, at other times were repelling (it) (when) waged,

pace<sup>68</sup> factā consensu omnium, delegerunt  
 a peace having been made by consent of all, chose

hunc locum domicilĭo.  
 this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercitūs,  
 And at the first approach of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex oppĭdo,  
 they were making frequent sallies from the town,

que contendebant parvūlis praeliis cum  
 and were contending in trifling battles with

nostris. Postĕa circummuniti vallo  
 our (men). Afterwards having been fortified around with a rampart

duodĕcim pĕdum, quindĕcim millium in  
 of twelve feet, fifteen thousand (feet) in

circuitu, que crebris castellis, continebant  
 compass, and with frequent fortresses, they were holding

sese oppido. Ubi, vinçis actis,  
 themselves in the town. When, the sheds having been driven on,  
 aggere exstructo, viderunt turrim constitui  
 a mound having been constructed, they saw a tower (to be) erected  
 procul, primùm irridere ex  
 at a distance, (they began) first to mock from  
 muro atque increpitare vocibus: quò  
 the wall and to call out with voices [cries]: wherefore  
 tanta machinatio institueretur ab tanto  
 so great a machine was constructed from [at] so great  
 spatio! quibusnam manibus, aut quibus<sup>i</sup>  
 a space [distance]! with what hands, or with what  
 viribus, confiderent sese collocare  
 forces, did they trust (that they) themselves to [would] place  
 turrim tanti oneris in muros, præsertim  
 a tower of so great burden against the walls, especially  
 homines tantulæ staturæ, (nom nostra brevitas  
 men of so little statue, (for our shortness  
 est contemptui plerisque Gallis hominibus,  
 is (for) a contempt to most Gallic men,  
 præ magnitudinæ suorum  
 before [in comparison with] the hugeness of their own  
 corporum).  
 bodies).

31. Verò ubi viderunt moveri, et  
 But when they saw (it) (to be) moved, and  
 appropinquare mœnibus,<sup>69</sup> commoti novâ  
 (to) approach (to) the walls, being alarmed by the new  
 et inusitatâ specie, miserunt legatos ad  
 and unusual sight, they sent ambassadors to  
 Cæsarem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc  
 Cæsar about peace: who spoke to [after] this  
 mōdum: Se existimare Romanos  
 manner: (They) themselves (to) think the Romans  
 gerere bellum non sine ōpe deorum.  
 (to) carry on war not without the assistance of the gods,  
 qui possent promoverè machinationes tantæ  
 who are able to move forward machines of so great



altitudinis . tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex  
height with so great speed, and to fight from [at]

propinquitate : dixerunt permittere  
nearness [close quarters]: they said (they) (to) give up

se que omniâ sũa eorum  
themselves and all their (effects) to their

potestati petere ac deprecari unum,<sup>70</sup> si  
power to (they) seek and (to) beg one (thing), if

pro sũa clementiâ ac mansuetudine, quam  
for [according to] his clemency and mildness, which

ipsi audissent (pl. perf. subj.) ab aliis, statuisset  
they had heard from others, he should decree that

fortè Aduatucos conservandos-esse,  
perchance the Aduatuci should be preserved,

ne despoliaret se armis (abl.): omnes  
that he would not deprive themselves of arms: all

finitimos fere esse inimicos sibi, ac  
the neighbors nearly to be [are] hostile to themselves, and

invidere suæ virtuti (dat.), à quibus possent  
(to) envy their valor, from whom they could

non defendere se, armis traditis;  
not (to) defend themselves, (their) arms having been surrendered;

præstare sibi pati quamvis  
to be [it is] better for themselves to endure any

fortunam à Romano populo, si deducerentur  
fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led

in eum casum, quam interfici per cruciatum  
into this calamity, than to be slain with torture

ab his inter quos consuissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
by those among whom they had been accustomed

dominari.  
to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc : Se  
Cæsar answered to these (words) : He himself

conservaturum civitatem magis sũa  
about to [would] preserve the state rather by his

consuetudine quàm eorum merito, si  
custom than by their merit [deserts], if

dedidissent se, prius-quàm aries  
they should surrender themselves, before (that) the battering ram

attigisset murum: sed esse nullam  
should touch the wall: but to be [there was] no

conditionem deditiois, nisi armis tradit-  
condition of surrender, unless the arms having been

tis: se facturum<sup>71</sup> id, quod  
[were] delivered up: (he) himself about to [would] do that, which

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Nervios; que  
he had done to the Nervii; and

imperaturum finitimis (dat.), ne-inferrent  
about to [would] order the neighbors, that they should not inflict

quam injuriam deditiis (dat.) Romani  
any injury upon the surrendered (subjects) of the Roman

populi. Re nuntiata ad suos, illi  
people. The matter having been reported to their own (people), they

dixerunt se facere, quæ imperarentur.  
said (that they) themselves to [would] do, what was ordered.

Magnâ multitudīne armorum jactâ de  
A great multitude of arms having been thrown from

muro in fossam, quæ erat ante oppidum,  
the wall into the ditch, which was before the town,

sic ut acervi armorum adæquarent (imp. subj.)  
so that the heaps of arms were equalling

propè summam altitudīnem muri que  
nearly the highest [greatest] height of the wall and

aggēris: et tamen circiter tertîa parte  
of the mound: and yet about a third part

celatâ, (ut perspectum-est postea,)  
having been concealed, (as was ascertained afterwards,)

atque retentâ in oppido, portis  
and having been retained in the town, the gates

patefactis, usi-sunt pace (abl.)  
having been thrown open, they used [obtained] peace

eo die.  
on that day.

33. Sub vesp̄erum Cæsar jussit portas  
Towards evening Cæsar ordered the gates

claudi, que milites exire ex oppido,  
to be shut, and the soldiers to go out from the town,

ne oppidani accipèrent quam injuriam à  
lest the townsmen might receive any injury from

militibus noctu. Illi, consilio inīto  
the soldiers by night. They, a plan having been formed

antè, ut intellectum-est, quòd, deditione  
before, as it was understood, because, the surrender

factâ, credidērant nostros non  
having been made, they had believed our (men) not

inducturos præsidiâ, aut denique  
about to [would not] introduce garrisons, or, finally,

servaturos indiligentiùs : partim cum his  
[would] watch somewhat carelessly : partly with these

armis, quæ retinuērant et celavērant,  
arms, which they had retained and had concealed,

partim scutis factis ex cortice, aut intextis  
partly with shields made from barks, or woven

viminibus, quæ induxērant pellibus subito  
twigs, which they had overlaid with hides suddenly

(ut exiguitas temporis postulabat), fecerunt  
(as the briefness of the time was demanding), (they) made

eruptionem repente ex oppido omnibus  
a sally unexpectedly from the town with all

copiis, tertîâ vigiliâ, quâ ascensus ad  
the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to

nostros munitiones videbatur minimè arduus.  
our fortifications was seeming least difficult.

Significatione factâ celeriter ignibus, ut Cæsar  
A signal having been made quickly by fires, as Cæsar

imperavērat antè, concursum-est èd ex  
had ordered before, it was [they] run together there from

proximis castellis; que pugnatum (-est) ab  
the nearest fortresses; and it was fought by

hostibus<sup>72</sup> ita acriter, ut debuit pugnari  
the enemy so vigorously, as it ought to be fought

à fortibus viris in extremâ spe salutis,  
by brave men in the last hope of safety,

iniquo lōco, contra ěos, qui jacĕrent  
in an unfavorable place, against those, who were casting

(imp. subj.) tela ex vallo que turrĭbus, quum  
weapons from a rampart and towers, when

omnis spes salutis consistĕret (imp. subj.) in  
all hope of safety was resting in

virtute unâ. Ad quartŭor millibus homĭnum  
valor alone. About four thousand (of) men

occisis, reliqui rejecti-sunt in oppĭdum.  
having been killed the rest were thrown back into the town.

Postridĕ ejus diei (gen.), portis refractis,  
The day after this day, the gates having been broken down,

quum nemo jam defendĕret (imp. subj.), atque  
when no one now was defending, and

nostris militĭbus intromissis, Cæsar vendĭdit  
our soldiers having been sent within, Cæsar sold

universam sectionem ejus oppĭdi. Numĕrus  
the entire section [booty] of this town. The number

quinquaginta trĭum millĭum capĭtum relatus-est  
of fifty three thousand (of) heads [souls] was reported

ad eum ab his qui emĕrant.  
to him by those who had bought (them).

34. Eodem tempĕre factus-est certĭor  
At the same time he was made more sure [was

informed] à Publio Crasso, quem misĕrat cum  
by Publius Crassus, whom he had sent with

unâ legione ad Venĕtos, Unellos, Osismĭos,  
one legion to the Veneti, Unelli, Osismii,

Curiosolitas, Esvĭos, Aulercos, Redŏnes, quæ  
Curiosolitæ, Esvii, Aulerci, Redones, which

sunt maritĭmæ civitates, que attingunt Oceānum,  
are maritime states, and touch on the ocean,

omnes ěas civitates redactas-esse in  
(that) all those states to have [had] been reduced into

ditionem que potestatem Romani popŭli.  
the authority and power of the Roman people.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallĭâ  
These things having been accomplished, all Gaul

pacatâ tantâ opinio hujus belli  
 having been subdued, so great an opinion of this war  
 perlata-est ad barbăros, ut legati  
 was carried to the barbarians, that ambassadors  
 mitterentur (imp. subj.) ad Cæsărem ab nationibus,  
 were sent to Cæsar by the nations,  
 quæ incolērent (imp. subj.) trans Rhenum, quæ  
 which were dwelling across the Rhine, who  
 pollicerentur (imp. subj.) se daturas  
 were promising (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 obsides, facturas imperata: quas  
 hostages, about to [and would] do (the things) commanded: which  
 legationes Cæsar jussit reverti ad se,  
 embassies Cæsar commanded to return to himself,  
 prozīmâ æstate inītâ, quōd  
 (when) the next summer having begun [began], because  
 properabat in Italiām, que Illyricum. Ipse  
 he was hastening into Italy, and Illyricum. He himself  
 profectus-est in Italiām, legionibus deductis  
 set out into Italy, the legions having been conducted  
 in hiberna in Carnutes, Andes,  
 into winter quarters into [among] the Carnutes, Andes,  
 Turōnes, quæ civitates ěrant propinquæ his  
 Turones, which states were neighboring to these  
 lōcis, ũbi gessĕrat bellum. Ex litĕris  
 places, where he had carried on war. From the letters  
 Cæsăris, supplicatio quindĕcim dĕs  
 of Cæsar, a general thanksgiving (for) fifteen days  
 decreta-est ob ěas res: quod  
 was decreed on account of these things: which  
 accidĕrat nulli ante id tempus.  
 had happened to no one before this time.



## THIRD BOOK

This book describes the principal events of five wars which were carried on against the various nations of Gaul in the six hundred and ninety-eighth year after the founding of Rome, B. C. 56: the first, against the Nantuates, the Veragri and the Seduni, is successfully conducted by the lieutenant, Galba; the second, against the Veneti, though fought at a disadvantage by the Roman forces because of the position of the Venetic towns, finally ends through the strategy of Cæsar, himself, in a naval engagement; the third results in a victory by Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant, over the Venelli, the Auberci, the Ebuovices, and the Lexovii; the fourth is conducted by Crassus against the Sotiates and other Aquitanian tribes, the greatest part of Aquitania being subdued; and the fifth, Cæsar's campaign against the Morini and the Menapii closes with the army entering into winter quarters after brilliantly repelling the offensive attack of the enemy.

1. Quum Cæsar proficisceretur (imp. subj.) in  
 When Cæsar was setting out into  
 Italiã, misit Sergium Galbam cum duodecimã  
 Italy, he sent Sergius Galba with the twelfth  
 legione et parte equitatûs in Nantuates,  
 legion, and part of the cavalry into the Nantuates,  
 Veragros, que Sedunos; qui pertinent à  
 Veragri, and Seduni; who reach [extend] from  
 finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno  
 the borders of the Allobroges, and the lake Lemannus  
 et flumîne Rhodãno, ad summas  
 and the river Rhone, to the highest [summit of the]  
 Alpes. Causa mittendi fuit, quòd  
 Alps. The cause of sending (him) was, because  
 volebat iter patefieri per Alpes,  
 he was desiring (that) the passage (to) be opened through the Alps,  
 quo mercatores consueverant ire cum  
 by which merchants had been accustomed to go with

magno pericūlo que magnis portorīs. Permisit  
 great danger, and great tolls. He permitted  
 huic (dat.), si arbitraretur esse opus,  
 him if he should think (it) to be [was] necessary,  
 ūti collocaret legionem in ĩs lōcis,  
 that he might place a legion in these places,  
 causâ hĭemandi. Galba, aliquot secundis  
 for the sake of wintering. Galba, some successful  
 prœliis factis, que compluribus eorum  
 battles having been made [completed], and several of their  
 castellis expugnatis, legatis missis  
 strongholds having been stormed, ambassadors having been sent  
 undīque ad ěum, que obsidibus dātis,  
 from every side to him, and hostages having been given,  
 et pace factâ, constituit collocare dŭas  
 and peace having been made, resolved to place two  
 cohortes in Nantuatibus; ipse hiemare cum  
 cohorts in [among] the Nantuates; himself to winter with  
 reliquis cohortibus ejus legionis, in vico  
 the remaining cohorts of this legion, in a village  
 Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui<sup>1</sup>  
 of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: which  
 vicus positus in valle, planitię non magnâ  
 village being placed [situated] in a valley, a plain not large  
 adjectâ, continetur undīque altissimis  
 being adjacent, is bounded on every side by very high  
 montibus. Quum hic divideretur (imp. subj.) in  
 mountains. Since this was divided into  
 duas partes fluminę, concessit alteram partem  
 two parts by the river, he granted the one part  
 ejus vici Gallis; attribuit alteram  
 of this village to the Gauls; he assigned the other  
 relictam vacuam ab illis cohortibus ad  
 left vacant by them to the cohorts for win-  
 hiemandum: munivit ěum lōcum vallo  
 tering [to winter]: he fortified this place with a rampart  
 que fossâ.  
 and (with) a trench.

2. Quum complures dies hibernorum  
 When several days of the winter quarters  
 transissent (pl. perf. subj.) que jussisset (pl. perf.  
 had passed and he had ordered  
 subj.) frumentum comportari eò, factus-est  
 corn to be brought there, he was made  
 certior subitò per exploratores,  
 more sure [was informed] suddenly by scouts, (that)  
 omnes discessisse noctu ex eâ  
 all to have [had] departed by night from this  
 parte vici, quam concesserat Gallis; que  
 part of the village, which he had granted to the Gauls; and  
 montes, qui impenderent (imp. subj.),  
 (that) the mountains, which were overhanging  
 teneri à maximâ multitudīne Sedunorum  
 to be [were] held by a very great multitude of the Seduni  
 et Veragrorum. Id accidērat de aliquot  
 and of (the) Veragri. This had happened from several  
 causis, ut Galli capērat (imp. subj.) subitò  
 causes, that the Gauls were taking suddenly  
 consilium renovandi belli que opprimendæ  
 the purpose of renewing the war and of overwhelming  
 legionis. Primùm, quòd despiciebant legionem,  
 the legion. First, because they were despising the legion,  
 propter paucitatem, nèque eam  
 on account of the fewness (of soldiers), nor (was) this  
 plenissimam, duabus cohortibus detractis  
 very full, two cohorts having been drawn out (of it)  
 et compluribus singillatim absentibus, qui  
 and very many individually (being) absent, who  
 missi-erant causâ petendi com meatûs; tum  
 had been sent for the purpose of seeking provisions; then  
 etiam, quòd propter iniquitatem loci  
 also, because, on account of the unfavorableness of the place,  
 existimabant ne quidem primum impetum  
 they were thinking (that) not even the first attack [shock]  
 posse sustineri, quum  
 to be able [could] (to) be withstood (by the Romans), when

ipsi decurrērent ex montibus in  
(they) themselves should run down from the mountains into

vallem, et conjicērent tela. Accedebat,  
the valley, and should hurl (their) weapons. It was added,

quòd dolebant suos liberos abs-  
because [that] they were mourning for their children (having

tractos ab se nomine obsidum; et  
been) taken from themselves in the name of hostages; and

habebant<sup>2</sup> persuasum sibi  
they were having (it) persuaded to themselves [were persuaded]

Romanos conari occupare culmina  
(that) the Romans to endeavor [endeavored] to occupy the tops

Alpium non solùm causâ itinērum, sed  
of the Alps not only for the sake of the passes, but

etiā perpetuæ possessionis, et adjungere ēa  
also of perpetual possession, and to unite these

lōca finitimæ provinciæ.  
places to the neighboring province.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, quum<sup>3</sup> nēque  
These messages having been received, since neither

opus hibernorum, que munitiones  
the work of the winter quarters, and the fortifications

essent (imp. subj.) plenè perfectæ, nēque  
were fully finished, nor

esset (imp. subj.) provisum satis de frumento,  
was (there) provided enough from [of] corn,

que reliquo commeatu, quòd, deditione  
and the other provisions, because, a surrender

factâ, que obsidibus acceptis, Galba  
having been made, and hostages having been received, Galba

existimavērat nihil timendum de bello:  
had thought nothing to [must] be feared about war:

concilio convocato celeriter, cœpit exquirere  
a council having been called together quickly, he began to seek

sententias. In quo concilio, quum  
the opinions. In which council, since

tantum repentini periculi accidisset (pl. perf.)  
so much (of) sudden danger had happened

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam fêrè omnia  
 contrary to opinion [expectation], and now nearly all

superiora loca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa  
 the higher places were seen (to be) filled

multitudīne armatorum, nēque  
 with a multitude of armed (men), neither (could it) [any one]

veniri, subsidio<sup>4</sup> nēque commeatus posset  
 (to be) come, to (their) aid nor were provisions able

supportari, itineribus interclusis: jam  
 to be brought up, the ways having been shut up [closed]: now

salute præpè desperatâ, nonnullæ sententiæ  
 safety nearly having been despaired of some opinions

hujusmodi dicebantur; ut, impedimentis (pl.)  
 of this kind were said [delivered]; that, the baggage

relictis, eruptione factâ, contendērent  
 having been left a sally having been made, they should hasten

ad salutem, iisdem itineribus, quibus  
 to safety, by the same ways, by which

pervenissent (pl. perf. subj.) eò. Tâmen placuit  
 they had arrived there. However it pleased

majori parti (dat.), hoc consilio reservato  
 (to) the greater part, this counsel having been reserved

ad extremum, experiri eventum rei  
 to the last, to try the issue of the thing [matter]

intērim, et defendēre castra.  
 meanwhile, and to defend the camp.

4. Brēvi spatio interjecto, vix ut  
 A short space [period] having intervened, scarcely that

tempus daretur collocandis<sup>5</sup> atque administrandis  
 time might be given for arranging and for managing

his rebus, quas constituissent (pl. perf.  
 these things, which they had resolved,

subj.), hostes decurrere<sup>6</sup> ex omnibus  
 the enemy (to) run down from all

partibus, signo dâto, conicere  
 sides, a signal having been given, (and) (to) hurl

lapides que gæsa in vallum. Nostri<sup>7</sup>  
 stones and heavy darts upon the rampart. Our (men)



primò repugnare fortiter intēgris  
 at first (to) repulse (them) bravely (when) with whole [fresh]

viribus nēque mittēre ullum telum  
 power [strength] nor (to) send [cast] any weapon

frustrà ex superiore lōco: ut quæque pars  
 in vain from the higher place: as each part

castrorum nudata defensoribus videbatur  
 of the camps stripped from [of] defenders was seeming

prēmi, occurrēre ěd, et ferre auxiliūm:  
 to be pressed. to (they) run there and (to) bring aid:

sed superari hoc, quòd  
 but to be (they are) surpassed [overcome] in this (manner), because

hostes defessi diuturnitate pugnæ excedebant  
 the enemy wearied by the length of the fight were retiring

præliò, alii succedebant intēgris viribus:  
 from battle, others were succeeding with whole [fresh] powers

[strength]: nihil quarum rerum potērat  
 nothing of which [these] things was able [could]

fiēri à nostris propter paucitatem; ac  
 (to) be done by our (men) on account of (their) fewness; and

non mōdò facultās dabatur defesso  
 not only (no) opportunity was given to a wearied (man)

excedendi ex pugnâ, sed ne sauciò quīdem  
 of retiring from the fight, but not to a wounded even

relinquendi ejus lōci (gen.), ũbi constitērat, âc  
 of leaving his place, where he had stood, and

recipiendi sũi (gen.).  
 of recovering himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur<sup>8</sup> jam continenter ampliùs  
 When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)

sex horis, ac non solùm vires (pl.) sed etiã  
 six hours, and not only strength but also

tela deficērent (imp. subj.) nostris (dat.), atque  
 the weapons were failing our (men), and

hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acriùs, que  
 the enemy were pressing on more vigorously, and

nostris<sup>9</sup> languidioribus, cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 our (men) having become more faint, they began

scindere vallum et complere fossas, que  
to tear down the rampart and to fill up the ditelhes, and  
res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad  
the affair [action] was now led [brought] to

extremum casum; Publius Sextius Beculus,  
the last chance; Publius Sextius Bæculus,

centurio primipili quem<sup>10</sup> diximus  
a centurion of the first rank whom [who] we have said

confectum (-esse) compluribus vulneribus  
to have [had] been overcome with many wounds

Nervico prælio, et item Caius Volusenus,  
in the Nervian battle, and also Caius Volusenus,

tribunus militum, vir et magni consilii  
a tribune of the soldiers, a man both of great counsel [prudence]

et virtutis, accurrunt ad Galbam, atque docent  
and valor, run up to Galba, and show

esse<sup>11</sup> unam spem salutis, si eruptione  
(that) to be [there is] one hope of safety, if a sally

factâ, experirentur extremum auxilium.  
having been made, they should try the last aid [resort].

Itaque centurionibus convocatis, facit  
Therefore the centurions having been called together, he makes

milites certiores intermittèrent  
the soldiers more sure [informs them] (that) they should intermit [moder-

prælium paullisper, ac exciperent tantummodo  
ate] the battle a little while, and should deliver only

tela missa, que reficerunt se ex  
the weapons sent [thrown], and should refresh themselves from

labore; post, signo dato, erum-  
labor; afterwards, the signal having been given, they should

perent è castris, atque ponerent omnem  
burst forth from the camp, and should put all

spem salutis in virtute.  
hope of safety in (their) valor.

6. Faciunt, quod jussi-sunt; ac eruptione  
They do, what they were ordered; and a sally

factâ subito omnibus portis, relinquunt  
having been made suddenly from all the gates, they leave

facultatem . hostibus nēque cognoscendi quid  
 opportunity to the enemy neither of knowing what  
 fieret, nēque colligendi<sup>12</sup> sūi. Ita,  
 should be done, nor of collecting themselves. Thus,  
 fortunâ commutatâ, interficiunt eos<sup>13</sup>  
 fortune having been changed, they slay these  
 circumvetos undīque, qui venērant in spem  
 surrounded on every side, who had come into the hope  
 potiundorum castrorum; et ex ampliūs  
 of possessing the camps; and from more (than)  
 triginta millibus homīnum, (quem numērum  
 thirty thousand (of) men, (which number  
 barbarorum constabat venisse ad castra)  
 of the barbarians it was manifest to have [had] come to the camp)  
 plus tertīâ parte interfectâ, conjiçiunt  
 more (than) the third part having been killed, they throw  
 in fūgam reliquos perterritos; ac patiuntur  
 into flight the rest affrighted; and suffer (them)  
 consistere ne quīdem<sup>14</sup> in superioribus lōcis.  
 to take stand not even in the higher places.  
 Sic omnibus copiis hostium fuis,  
 Thus all the forces of the enemy having been routed,  
 que armis exutis, recipiunt se  
 and (their) arms having been stripped off, they betake themselves  
 in castra (pl.) que suas munitiones. Quo praelio  
 into the camp and their fortifications. Which battle  
 facto, quod Galba nolebat  
 having been done [completed], because Galba was unwilling  
 tentare fortunam sæpiūs, atque meminērat<sup>15</sup>  
 to try fortune too often, and (he had) remembered  
 sese venisse aliō  
 (that) he himself to have [had] come with another [a different]  
 consilio in hiberna, videbat  
 design into winter quarters, he was seeing (that he)  
 occurrisset aliis rebus (dat.); permotus maxīmè  
 to have [had] met with other things; being moved principally  
 inopiâ frumenti que commeatūs: postēro  
 by the want of corn and of provisions: on the following [next]

die, omnibus ædificiis ejus vici  
 day, all the buildings of this village  
 incensis, contendit reverti in provinciam :  
 having been burned, he hastened to return into the province ;  
 ac nullo hoste prohibente, aut demorante  
 and no enemy preventing, or delaying  
 iter, perduxit legionem incolūmem in  
 the march, he conducted the legion safe into  
 Nantuates, inde in Allobroges, que  
 the Nantuates, thence into the Allobroges, and  
 hiemavit ibi.  
 wintered there.

7. His rebus gestis, quum Cæsar  
 These things having been performed, when Cæsar  
 existimaret (imp subj.) Galliam pacatam de  
 was thinking that Gaul (was) subdued from  
 omnibus causis ; Belgis superatis,  
 all (these) reasons ; the Belgæ having been overcome,  
 Germanis expulsis, Sedunis victis  
 the Germans having been expelled, the Seduni having been conquered  
 in Alpibus, atque ita hieme<sup>16</sup>  
 in the Alps, and so the winter  
 in ita profectus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in  
 having begun he had set out into  
 Illyricum, quod volebat adire eas nationes  
 Illyricum, because he was wishing to visit these nations  
 quodque et cognoscere regiones ; subitum  
 also and to know [investigate] the countries ; a sudden  
 bellum coortum-est in Gallia. Hæc fuit causa  
 war arose in Gaul. This was the cause  
 ejus belli. Publius Crassus adolescens hiemabat  
 of this war. Publius Crassus a young man was wintering  
 cum septimâ legione in Andibus proximus  
 with the seventh legion among the Andes nearest  
 Oceānum mære.<sup>17</sup> Is dimisit complures præfectos  
 the Ocean (sea). He dispatched very many prefects  
 que tribunos militum in finitimas civitates,  
 and tribunes of soldiers into the neighboring states,

causâ frumenti, quòd inopiâ frumenti ěrat  
for the sake of corn, because a want of corn was

in his lōcis: in quo numěro Titus  
in these places: in which number Titus

Terrasidius missus ěrat in Eusubios; Marcus  
Terrasidius had been [was] sent into the Eusubii; Marcus

Trebŭs Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus  
Trabius Gallus into the Curiosolitæ; Quintus

Velanius cum Tito Silio in Venetos.  
Velanius with Titus Silius into the Veneti.

8. Auctoritas hujus civitatis est longè  
The authority of this state is by far

amplissĭma omnis maritimæ oræ earum  
the most extensive of all the maritime coast of these

regionum; quòd Veneti habent et plurimas  
countries: because the Veneti have both very many

naves, quibus consueverunt navigare in  
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into

Britanniām; et antecedunt cætĕros scientiâ  
Britain; and they excel the rest in the knowledge

atque usu nauticarum rerum; et in magno  
and use [practice] of naval matters; and in the great

impĕtu vasti atque operti mĕris, paucis  
violence of the vast and open sea, few

portibus interjectis, quos ipsi tĕnent,  
harbors intervening, which (they) themselves hold,

hĕbent fĕrè omnes vectigales, qui consue-  
they have nearly all (those) tributary, who have been

verunt uti eodem mĕri (abl.). Initium  
accustomed to use the same sea. A beginning

fit ab ĩs, retinendi Silii atque Velanii,  
was made by these, of retaining Silius and of Velanius,

quòd per ěos existimabant se  
because through them they were thinking (that they) themselves

recuperaturos suos obsides, quos dedissent  
about to [would] recover their hostages, whom they had given

(pl. perf. subj.) Crasso. Finitimi adducti  
to Crassus. (Their) neighbors induced



auctoritate horum (ut consilia Gallorum sunt  
 by the authority of these (as the councils of the Gauls are  
 subita et repentina) retinent Trebium que  
 sudden and immediate) detain Trebius and  
 Terrasidium de eadem causâ: et legatis  
 Terrasidius on the same cause: and ambassadors  
 missis celeriter, conjurant<sup>18</sup> inter se  
 having been sent quickly, they conspire among themselves  
 per suos principes; esse acturos  
 through their chiefs; (that they) to be about to [would] act  
 nihil nisi communi consilio, que laturus  
 in nothing unless by common counsel, and about to [would] bear  
 eundem exitum omnis fortunæ; que sollicitant  
 the same issue of every fortune; and they solicit  
 reliquas civitates, ut mallent permanere  
 the remaining states, that they should prefer to remain  
 in eâ libertate, quam acceperant à  
 in this liberty, which they have received from  
 majoribus, quàm perferre servitatem Romanorum.  
 (their) ancestors, than to endure the slavery of the Romans.  
 Omni maritimâ orâ perductâ celeriter  
 All the maritime coast having been brought over quickly  
 ad suam sententiam, mittunt communem  
 to their opinion, they send a common  
 legationem ad Publium Crassum, “Si velit  
 embassy to Publius Crassus, “If he wishes  
 recipere suos, remittat obsides  
 to receive his (ambassadors), let him send back (the) hostages  
 sibi.”  
 to themselves.”

9. De quibus rebus Cæsar factus  
 Concerning which things Cæsar having been made  
 certior à Crasso, jubet  
 more certain [having been informed] by Crassus, he orders  
 longas naves ædificari interim in  
 long ships [war ships] to be built meanwhile on  
 flumine Ligëri, quod influit Oceanium,  
 the river Liger [Loire], which flows into the Ocean,

remiges institūi ex Provinciâ, nautas  
 rowers to be provided from the Province, sailors  
 que gubernatores comparari, quòd ipse  
 and pilots to be procured, because he himself  
 abërat longius. His rebus administratis  
 was distant farther [too far]. These things having been managed,  
 ipse contendit celeriter ad exercitum, quàm-  
 he himself hastened quickly to the army, as soon  
 primùm potuit per tempus anni.  
 as he was able through [for] the time of the year.  
 Venëti que item reliquæ civitates, adventu  
 The Veneti and also the other states, the arrival  
 Cæsaris cognito, simul quòd  
 of Cæsar having been known, at the same time because  
 intelligebant quantum facinus admisissent  
 they were understanding how great a crime they had committed  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in se, legatos,<sup>19</sup> nomen  
 against themselves, the ambassadors, a name  
 quod semper fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) sanctum que  
 which always had been holy and  
 inviolatum apud omnes nationes, retentos  
 inviolate at [among] all nations, to have [had] been  
 ab se et coniectos in vincula;  
 detained by themselves and cast into chains;  
 instituent parare bellum pro  
 resolve to prepare a war for [in proportion to]  
 magnitudine periculi, et maxime providere  
 the greatness of the danger, and especially to provide  
 ea quæ pertinerent (imp. subj.)  
 these (things) which were pertaining  
 ad usum navium; hęc, majore  
 to the use of ships; from this [on this account], with greater  
 spe, quòd confidebant multum naturâ  
 hope, because they were relying much in [on] the nature  
 loci. Sciebant pedestria itinera  
 of the place. They were knowing (that) the foot ways  
 concisa-esse æstuariis; navigationem  
 to have [had] been cut up by æstuaries; navigation

impeditam<sup>20</sup> propter inscientiam locorum  
prevented on account of (our) ignorance of the places

que paucitatem portuum: confidebant nostros  
and the fewness of the harbors: they were trusting (that) our

exercitus neque posse morari diutius<sup>21</sup>  
armies neither to [would] be able to delay longer

apud se, propter inopiam frumenti.  
at [among] themselves, on account of the want of corn.

Ac jam, ut omnia accidèrent contra  
And now, though all (things) might happen against [contrary to]

opinionem, tamen se posse  
(their) opinion, yet (they) themselves to [would] be able (to do)

plurimum navibus: Romanos habere neque ullam  
very much by ships: the Romans to have [had] neither any

facultatem navium, neque novisse vada,  
power [supply] of ships, nor to have known [knew] the shallows,

portus, insulas eorum locorum, ubi essent (imp.  
harbors, islands of these places, where they were

subj.) gesturi bellum: ac perspiciebant  
about to carry on war: and they were perceiving

navigationem in concluso mari, atque in  
(that) navigation in an inclosed sea, and in

vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, esse longè  
a very immense and very open Ocean, to be [is] far

aliam. His consiliis initis,  
other [different], These counsels having been entered into,

mununt oppida, comportant frumenta (pl.)<sup>22</sup>  
they fortify the towns, they bring together corn

ex agris in oppida; cogunt naves  
from the fields into the towns; they collect (their) ships

quam plurimas possunt, in Venetiam, ubi  
as many as they can, into Venetia, where

constabat Casarem primum gesturum  
it was evident Cæsar first to be about to [would] carry on

bellum. Adsciscunt socios sibi ad id  
the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves for this

bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambialites,  
war the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannetes, Ambialites,

Morīnos, Diablintes, Menapīos; accersunt auxilia  
 Morini, Diablintes, Menapii: they send for auxiliaries  
 ex Britannīā, quæ est posita contra  
 from Britain, which is located over against  
 eas regiones.  
 these countries.

10. Hæ erant difficultates gerendi,<sup>23</sup> belli  
 These were the difficulties of carrying on, a war  
 quas ostendimus suprâ: sed tamen multa  
 which we have shown above: but yet many (things)  
 incitabant Cæsarem ad id bellum: injuriæ (pl.)  
 were urging Cæsar to this war: the injuries [wrong]  
 retentorum Romanorum equitum; rebellio  
 of detaining Roman knights; an uprising  
 facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidibus  
 having been made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages  
 dâtis: conjuratio tot civitatum:  
 having been given: the conspiracy of so many states:  
 in-primis, ne, hâc parte neglectâ,  
 in particular, lest, this part [region] having been neglected  
 reliquæ nationes arbitrarentur idem  
 the remaining nations might think the same (thing)  
 licere sibi. Itaque quum  
 to [would] be allowed to themselves. Therefore since  
 intelligeret (imp. subj.) fêrè omnes Gallos  
 he understood (that) nearly all the Gauls  
 studere novis rebus, et  
 to be [were] eager for new things [revolution], and  
 excitari mobiliter que celeriter ad  
 to be [were] aroused readily and quickly to  
 bellum; autem omnes homīnes naturâ  
 war; moreover (that) all men by nature  
 studere libertati, et odisse  
 to be [are] eager for liberty, and (to) have hated  
 conditionem servitutis; prius-quam plures civitates  
 the condition of slavery; before (that) more states  
 conspirarent, putavit exercitum partiendum,  
 should conspire, he thought the army to [must] be divided,

ac distribuendum latĭus sĭbi(dat.).  
and to [must] be distributed more widely by himself.

11. Itaque mittit Titum Labienum legatum  
Therefore he sent Titus Labienus (his) lieutenant

cum equitatu in Treviros, qui sunt proximi  
with the cavalry among the Treviri, who are nearest

flumĭni Rheno. Mandat huic (dat.), adeat  
to the river Rhine. He charges him, (that) he go to

Remos que reliquos Belgas, atque contineat  
the Remi and the remaining Belgæ, and keep (them)

in officio; que prohibeat Germanos, qui  
in duty; and prevent the Germans, who

dicebantur arcessiti<sup>24</sup> auxilio à Belgis, si  
were said (to have) been summoned for aid by the Belgæ, if

conentur per vim transire flumen  
they may attempt by force to cross the river

navibus. Jūbet Publĭum Crassum cum  
with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with

duodĕcim legionariis cohortibus, et magno numero  
twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number

equitatus proficisci in Aquitaniam, ne auxilia  
of cavalry to set out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries

mittantur ex his nationibus in Galliam, ac  
may be sent from these nations into Gaul, and

tantæ nationes conjungantur. Mittit Quintum  
so great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurĭum Sabinum legatum cum tribus legionibus  
Titurĭus Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiolitas, que Lexovios; qui  
among the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet eam manum distinendam.  
may take care (that) this band (of people) (to) be kept apart.

Præfecit Decĭum Brutum adolescentem classi,  
He appointed Decius Brutus a young man to the fleet,

que Gallicis navibus, quas jussĕrat  
and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonibus que Santonis, et  
to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni, and



reliquis          pacatis          regionibus ;          et          jubet  
the remaining      subdued          countries ;          and          he orders

proficisci          quam-primùm          posset,          in  
(him) to set out      as soon as          he may be able,          among

Venetos.          Ipse          contendit          eò          pedestribus  
the Veneti.          He himself          hastens          thither          with the foot

copiis.  
forces.

12.          Situs          oppidorum          erant          fere  
The situations      of (their) towns          were          nearly

ejusmodi,          ut          posita          in          extremis  
of this sort,          that          having been placed [located]          on          extreme

lingulis          que          promontoris,          haberent (imp.  
little tongues (of land)      and          promontories,          they were having

subj.)          neque          aditum          pedibus,          quum          aestus  
neither          access          by feet [foot],          when          the tide

incitavisset          se          ex          alto,          quod          accidit  
may have aroused      itself          from          the deep,          which          occurs

semper          bis          spatio          duodecim          horarum ;  
always          twice          in the space [period]      of twelve          hours :

neque          navibus,          quod          aestu          rursus          minuente  
nor          by ships,          because          the tide          again          diminishing

naves          afflicterentur          in          vadis.          Ita  
[ebbing]      the ships          may be dashed          on          the shoals.          Thus

utraque          re          oppugnatio          oppidorum  
by each          thing [condition]          a siege          of the towns

impediabatur.          Ac,          si          quando          fortè          sup-  
was hampered.          And,          if          at any time          by chance          having

erati          magnitudine          operis,          mari  
been overcome          by the greatness          of a work,          the sea

extruso          aggere          ac          molibus,          atque  
having been shut out      by a mound          and          by moles,          and

his          adaequatis          mœnibus          oppidi,  
these          having been made equal          to the walls          of the town,

cœperant<sup>25</sup>          desperare          suis          fortunis ;          magno  
they had begun          to despair of          their          fortunes ;          a great

numero          navium          appulso,          cujus          rei  
number          of ships          having been landed,      of which          thing [means]

habêbant summam facultatem, deport-  
 they were having the highest [greatest] power [supply], they were  
 abant omnia sua que recipiebant se  
 removing all their (effects) and were betaking themselves  
 in proxima oppida: ibi defendebant se  
 into the nearest towns: there they were defending themselves  
 rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci. Facie-  
 again by the same favorableness of place. They were  
 bant hæc èo faciliùs magnam partem  
 doing these (things) for this reason more easily a great part  
 æstatis, quòd nostræ naves detinebantur  
 of the summer, because our ships were detained  
 tempestatibus; que erat summa difficultas  
 by storms; and (there) was the highest [greatest] difficulty  
 navigandi vasto atque aperto mari, magnis  
 of sailing in an immense and open sea, with great  
 æstibus, raris ac pròpè nullis portibus.  
 tides, with few and nearly no harbors,  
 13. Namque ipsorum naves factæ-erant que  
 For indeed their ships had been made and  
 armatæ ad hunc mōdum: carinæ  
 armed [equipped] according to this manner: the keels (were)  
 aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navium;  
 considerably more flat than (those) of our ships;  
 quò<sup>26</sup> possent excipere  
 in order that they might be able [could] (to) receive [endure]  
 vada ac decessum æstus faciliùs:  
 the shoals and 'the departure [ebb] of the tide more easily:  
 proræ admōdum erectæ, atque item puppes,  
 the prows (were) very upright, and also the sterns  
 accommodatæ ad magnitudinem fluctuum que  
 suited to the greatness of the waves and  
 tempestatum. Totæ naves factæ ex  
 storms. The whole ships (were) made from  
 robore, ad perferendam<sup>27</sup> quamvis vim et  
 oak, for bearing [enduring] any force and  
 contumeliã; transtra ex trabibus  
 violence; the benches (were) made from [of] beams

pedalibus in latitudinē (acc), confixa ferrēis  
 a foot in width, fixed [fastened] together with iron

clavis, crassitudinē pollicis digiti :  
 nails, with [of] the thickness of the thumb (finger):

anchōræ revinctæ ferrēis catenis, pro  
 the anchors (were) fastened with iron chains, instead of

funibus. Pelles que alutæ (pl.) tenuiter  
 ropes. Hides and fine leathers (were) thinly

confectæ pro velis; sive propter inopiam  
 dressed for sails; whether on account of the want

lini, atque inscientiam usūs ejus; sive,  
 of flax, and ignorance of the use of it; or,

quod est māgis verisimile, quōd arbitrabantur  
 what is more likely, because they were thinking

tantas tempestates oceāni que tantos<sup>28</sup>  
 (that) so great storms of the ocean and so great

impētus ventorum posse non sustineri,  
 violence of winds to be able [could] not (to) be supported,

ac tanta onēra navium regi velis  
 and so great burdens of ships (to) be governed by sails

sātis commōdè. Congressus nostræ classi  
 sufficiently conveniently. The encounter to [of] our fleet

cum his navibus erat ejusmodi ut præstaret  
 with these ships was of this kind that it was excelling

(imp. subj.) celeritate unâ, et pulsu remorum;  
 in speed alone, and the beat [stroke] of oars;

reliqua essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et  
 the remaining (conditions) were more suitable and

accommodatiora illis pro naturâ  
 more accommodated to them for [in view of] the nature

loci, pro vi tempestatum: enim  
 of the place (and), (for) the violence of the storms: for

nostræ nēque potērant nocere his (dat.)  
 our (ships) neither were able to injure them

rostro, (tanta erat firmitudo in his)  
 with the beak [prow]. (so great was the strength in them)

nēque telum adiciebatur<sup>29</sup> facilè propter  
 nor a weapon was hurled easily on account of

altitudīnem; et de eādem causā continebantur  
 (their) height; and from the same cause they were held fast  
 scopūlis mīnūs commōdè. Accedebat  
 by grappling hooks less conveniently. It was added,  
 ut quum ventus cœpisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 that when the wind had begun  
 sævire et dedidissent (pl. perf. subj.) se  
 to rage and they had given [committed] themselves  
 vento, et ferrent tempestatem faciūis,  
 to the wind, both they would bear a storm more easily,  
 et consistērent tutiūs in vādīs, et  
 and would stop more safely in the shoals, and  
 derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nihil  
 having been left by the tide, they would fear nothing  
 saxa et cautes: casus omnium  
 [in no wise] the rocks and reefs: accidents of all  
 quarum rerum ěrant extimescendi nostris  
 which [these] things [kinds] were to be dreaded by our  
 navibus (dat.).  
 ships,

14. Compluribus oppīdis expugnatis, ūbi  
 Several towns having been stormed, when  
 Cæsar intellexit tantum laborem sumi  
 Cæsar understood so great labor to be [was] taken  
 frustra, nēque fūgam hostium reprīmi,  
 in vain, neither the flight of the enemy to be [was] checked,  
 oppīdis captis, nēque posse<sup>30</sup>  
 the towns having been taken, nor to be able [could he]  
 noceri his (dat.), statuit classem  
 to be injured [injure] them, he resolved (that) the fleet  
 expectandam. Ubi quæ convenit ac  
 to [must] be awaited. When which [this] assembled and  
 primūm visa-est ab hostibus, circīter ducenta<sup>31</sup>  
 first was seen by the enemy, about two hundred  
 viginti paratissimæ eorum, naves atque  
 twenty most prepared [equipped] of their, ships and  
 ornatissimæ omni genēre armorum,  
 most furnished with all [every] kind of arms,



profectæ è portu, constiterunt adversæ  
 having set out from port, stood opposite  
 nostris. Nēque satis constabat Bruto,  
 (to) our (ships). Neither was it sufficiently clear to Brutus,  
 qui præerat classi (dat.), nēque tribunis  
 who commanded the fleet, nor to the tribunes  
 militum que centurionibus, quibus singulæ  
 of the soldiers and to the centurions, to whom single  
 [particular] naves attributæ-erant, quid agerent,  
 ships had been assigned, what they should do,  
 aut quam rationem pugnae insistèrent: enim  
 or what plan of battle they should adopt: for  
 cognoverant<sup>32</sup> posse non noceri  
 they had known to be able [they could] not (to) be injured  
 rostro: autem turribus excitatis,  
 by the beak [prow]: but towers having been raised,  
 tamen altitudo puppium ex barbâris  
 yet the height of the sterns from [of] the barbarian  
 navibus superabat has; ut nēque tela  
 ships was overtopping these; (so) that neither weapons  
 possent adjici commode satis ex  
 might be able [could] (to) be thrown conveniently enough from  
 inferiore loco, et missa à Gallis  
 the lower place, and (those) sent by the Gauls  
 acciderent gravius. Una res præparata à  
 would fall more heavily. One thing prepared by  
 nostris erat magno usui; præcutæ falces,  
 our (men) was for [of] great use; sharp-pointed scythes,  
 insertæ que affixæ longuribus, formâ non  
 inserted in and fastened to long poles, with a shape not  
 absimili muralium falcium:<sup>33</sup> quum funes, qui  
 unlike (that) of wall scythes: when the ropes, which  
 destinabant antennas ad malos, comprehensi-erant  
 were bracing the yards to the masts, had been seized  
 que adducti his, navigio incitato  
 and drawn taut by these, the vessel having been urged forward  
 remis, prærumpebantur: quibus  
 with the oars, they were broken apart: which



abscissis, antennæ necessariò concidebant ;  
 having been cut away, the yards necessarily were falling ;

ut quum omnis spes consisteret (imp. subj.)  
 (so) that since all hope was resting

Gallîcis navibus in velis que armamentis,  
 for the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus<sup>34</sup> navium  
 these having been torn away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempore. Reliquum  
 was wrested away at one time. The remaining

certamen erat positum in virtute ; quâ  
 contest was placed in valor ; in which

nostri milites facîle superabant ; atque mägis  
 our soldiers easily were excelling ; and the more

erò, quòd res gerebatur in  
 for this reason, because the action was carried on in

conspecto Cæsaris atque omnis exercitûs, ut  
 sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum factum paulò fortius posset latere ;  
 no deed a little more brave was able to be hid ;

enim omnes coles ac superiora loca, unde  
 for all the hills and higher places, whence

erat propinquus despectus in märe, tenebantur  
 was a near view upon the sea, were held

ab exercitu.  
 by the army.

15. Antennis disjectis, ut diximus,  
 The yards having been thrown down, as we have said,

quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumstiterent (imp.  
 when two or three ships were surrounding

subj.) singulas naves, milites contendebant  
 (our) individual ships, the soldiers were striving

summâ vi transcendere in naves  
 with highest [utmost] force [exertion] to climb over into the ships

hostium. Quod<sup>35</sup> postquam barbäri  
 of the enemy. Which after (that) the barbarians

animadverterunt fieri, compluribus navibus  
 perceived to be [was] done, several ships

expugnatis, quum nullum auxilium  
 having been stormed [boarded], since no aid  
 reperiretur ěi rěi, contenderunt petere  
 was found for this thing [crisis], they hastened to seek  
 salutem fŭgā: ac jam navibus conversis in  
 safety by flight: and now the ships having been turned to  
 ěam partem, quò ventus ferebat, tanta  
 that part [direction], where the wind was bearing, so great  
 malaciā ac tranquillitas subitò exstitit, ut  
 a calm and stillness suddenly occurred, that  
 possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex  
 they were able not to move themselves from  
 lōco: quæ res<sup>36</sup> quĩdem fũit maxĩmè opportuna  
 the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable  
 ad conficiendum negotĩnm, nam nostri  
 for completing the business [engagement], for our (men)  
 consecrati singũlas expugnaverunt, ut  
 having pursued individual (ships) stormed [boarded] (them), so that  
 perpaucæ ex omni numĕro pervenĕrint ad  
 very few from [of] all the number arrived to  
 terram, interventu noctis, quum pug-  
 land, by the interposition of night, since it was  
 naretur<sup>37</sup> (imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque  
 [they] fought from the fourth hour until  
 ad occasum solis.  
 (to) the setting of the sun.

16. Quo praelio bellum Venetorum que  
 By which battle the war of the Veneti and  
 totius maritimæ oræ confectum-est. Nam  
 of the whole maritime coast was finished. For  
 quum omnis juvenus, etĩam omnes gravioris  
 not only all (their) youth, also all of more mature  
 ætatis, in quibus<sup>38</sup> fũit, alĩquid consilii aut  
 age, in whom (there) was, something [some] (of) counsel or  
 dignitatis convenĕrant ěò; tum coĕgĕrant  
 (of) dignity had assembled there; but also they had collected  
 in unum lōcum, quod navium fuĕrat  
 into one place, what [whatever] (of) ships had been

ubique : quibus amissis, reliqui habebant  
 everywhere : which having been lost, the rest were having  
 neque quod recipere se, neque  
 neither where they might betake themselves, nor  
 quemadmodum defendere oppida. Itaque  
 how they might defend (their) towns. Therefore  
 dederunt se que omnia sua  
 they surrendered themselves and all their (effects)  
 Cæsari : in quos Cæsar statuit vindicandum  
 to Cæsar : against whom Cæsar resolved to be avenged  
 gravius èd quod jus legat-  
 more severely for this reason in order that the right of ambas-  
 orum conservaretur diligentius à barbaris  
 sadors might be observed more carefully by the barbarians  
 in reliquum tempus. Itaque, omni  
 for the remaining [future] time. Therefore, all  
 senatu necato, vendidit reliquos sub  
 the senate having been put to death, he sold the rest under  
 coronâ.<sup>39</sup>  
 the crown [at auction].

17. Dum hæc geruntur in  
 While these (things) are carried on in [among]  
 Venetis, Quintus Titurius Sabinus pervenit in  
 the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus passed into  
 fines Venellorum, cum his copiis, quas  
 the borders of the Venelli, with these forces, which  
 acceperat à Cæsare. Viridovix præerat  
 he had received from Cæsar. Viridovix commanded  
 his (dat.), ac tenebat summam imperii  
 these, and was holding the height (of) [the chief] power  
 omnium earum civitatum, quæ defecerant; ex  
 of all of these states, which had revolted; from  
 quibus coegerat exercitum que magnas  
 which he had collected an army and great  
 copias. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,  
 resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,  
 Eburovices, que Lexovii, suo senatu inter-  
 Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate having been put

fecto, quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,  
to death, because they were unwilling to be advisers of war,

clausērunt portas, que conjunxerunt se  
shut (their) gates, and joined themselves

cum Viridovice: que præterea magna multitudo  
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude

perditorum hominū que latronum convenerat  
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled

undique ex Gallia, quos spes  
from every side from Gaul, whom the hope

prædandi que studium<sup>40</sup> bellandi revoc-  
of plundering and an inclination of warring were calling

abat ab agri culturâ et quotidiano labore.  
away from agriculture and daily labor.

Sabinus tenebat sese castris (pl.) loco  
Sabinus was holding himself in camp in a place

idonœo omnibus rebus: quum Viridovix  
suitable for all things: when Viridovix

considisset (pl. perf. subj.) contrâ eum spatio  
had pitched camp opposite him (to) a space

[distance] duum millium, que copiis  
of two miles, and (his) forces

productis quotidie faceret (imp. subj.)  
having been led forth daily he was making

potestatem pugnandi; ut Sabinus jam  
power [an opportunity] of fighting; so that Sabinus already

veniret (imp. subj.) in contempionem non solū  
was coming into contempt not only

hostibus, sed etiam carperetur (imp. subj.)  
to [as regards] the enemy, but also was censured

nonnihil vocibus nostrorum militum: que  
somewhat by the expressions of our soldiers: and

præbuit tantam opinionem timoris, ut  
he exhibited so great an opinion [a sentiment] of fear, that

hostes auderent jam accedere ad vallum  
the enemy would dare at length to approach to the rampart

castrorum (pl.). Faciebat id eâ causâ,  
of the camp. He was doing this from this cause [reason],

quòd existimabat<sup>41</sup> non dimicandum  
because he was thinking (it) not to [must not] be contended

legato (dat.) cum tantâ multitudīne hostium,  
by a lieutenant with so great a multitude of the enemy,

præsertim ěo absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.)  
especially he (being) absent, who was holding

summam imperīi, nisi æquo lōco,  
the height [chief] (of) command, unless on equal place [ground],

aut aliquâ opportunitate dātâ.  
or some opportunity having [had] been given.

18. Hęc opinione timoris confirmatâ,  
This opinion of fear having been strengthened,

delegit quendam Gallum idoneum et callidum  
he selected a certain Gaul a suitable and shrewd

homīnem, ex ĩis, quos habebat secum  
man, from those, whom he was having with him

causâ auxiliī (sing.). Persuadet huic (dat.)  
for the sake of reinforcements. He persuades him

magnis præmiis que pollicitationibus, ũti  
by great rewards and promises, that

transěat<sup>42</sup> ad hostes: edōcet quod  
he go over to the enemy: he shows (him) what

vĕlit fieri. Qui, ũbi venit ad ěos  
he wishes to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfūgâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:  
for [as] a deserter, exposed the fear of the Romans:

dōcet quibus angustĳis Cæsar ipse  
he shows (them) with what straits [difficulties] Cæsar himself

prematur (pres. subj.) à Venētis: nĕque<sup>43</sup> longĳus  
is pressed by the Veneti: nor farther

abesse, quin Sabinus educat  
to be [was it] distant (from fact), but that Sabinus may lead out

exercĳtum clām ex castris (pl.) proximâ  
(his) army secretly from the camp on the next

nocte, et proficiscatur ad Cæsarem, causâ  
night, and (may) set out to Cæsar, for the sake

ferendi auxiliī. Ubi quod auditum-est,  
of bearing aid, When which (this report) was heard,



omnes conclamant, occasionem gerendi ne-  
all cry out (that), an opportunity of performing the

gotī bēnē non amittendam-esse: oportere  
business [task] well not to [must not] be lost: to be fitting

iri ad castra (pl.). Multa  
[they ought] to be gone [to go] to the camp. Many

res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilium:  
things were encouraging the Gauls to this plan:

cunctatio Sabini superiorum dierum;  
the hesitation of Sabinus of [on] the former days;

confirmatio perfūgæ; inopiā<sup>44</sup> cibariorum (pl.),  
the assurance of the deserter; the want of food,

cui provisum-erat ab his parum  
for which it had been provided by them not very

diligenter; spes Venetici belli; et quod  
carefully; the hopes of the Venetian war; and because

homīnes fērē credunt libenter id quod  
men generally believe willingly that which

vōlunt. Adducti<sup>45</sup> iis rebus, dimittunt  
they desire. Induced by these things, they dismiss

Viridovicem que reliquos dūces ex  
Viridovix and the rest of the generals from

concilio non prius quā concessum-sit ab  
the council not sooner than it has been [was] granted by

his, ūti capiānt arma et contendant ad  
them, that they may take arms and may hasten to

castra (pl.). Quā re concessā, læti,  
the camp. Which thing having been granted, (they) joyful,

vēlut victoriā exploratā, sarmentis que  
as if the victory having been [were] assured, fagots and

virgultis collectis, quibus complēant  
bushes having been collected, with which they may fill up

fossas Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).  
the ditches of the Romans, they press on to the camp.

19. Locus castrorum (pl.) erat editus, et  
The situation of the camp was elevated, and

paullatim acclivis ab imo, circiter  
gradually sloping from the lowest [from below], about

mille passus : huc contenderunt magno  
 a thousand paces : hither they hastened with great  
 cursu,<sup>46</sup> ut quàm minimum spatii  
 running, that as least [little as possible] (of) space [time]  
 datur Romanis ad colligendos,  
 might be given to the Romans for collecting,  
 que armandos, se que exanimati  
 and arming themselves and breathless  
 pervenerunt. Sabinus, hortatus suos,  
 they arrived (there). Sabinus, having encouraged his (men),  
 dat signum cupientibus : hostibus  
 gives the signal to (them) being eager for (it) : the enemy  
 impeditis propter ěa onĕra, quæ  
 having been encumbered on account of these burdens, which  
 ferebant, jubet eruptionem fieri subitò  
 they were bearing, he orders a sally to be made suddenly  
 duabus portis. Factum-est<sup>47</sup> opportunitate  
 from the two gates. It was done by the convenience  
 loci, inscientia ac defatigatione hostium,  
 of the place, by the ignorance and exhaustion of the enemy.  
 virtute militum ac exercitatione superiorum  
 by the valor of the soldiers and the practice of former  
 pugnarum, ut ferrent (imp. subj.) ne quidem  
 battles, that they were bearing not even  
 primum impetum nostrorum ; ac stătim  
 the first charge of our (men) ; and immediately  
 vertĕrent (imp. subj.) terga : quos<sup>48</sup> impeditos  
 they were turning (their) backs : whom encumbered  
 nostri milites consecuti intĕgris viribus (pl.),  
 our soldiers having pursued with fresh strength,  
 occiderunt magnum numĕrum eorum : equites  
 slew a great number of them : the cavalry  
 consecutati reliquos reliquerunt paucos, qui  
 having pursued the rest left few, who  
 evasĕrant ex fugâ. Sic Cæsar factus-est  
 had escaped from flight. Thus Cæsar was made  
 certior uno tempore et de  
 more sure [was informed] in [at] one time both of

navali pugnâ, et de victoriâ Sabini :  
the naval battle, and of the victory of Sabinus :

que omnes civitates dediderunt se stâtim  
and all the states surrendered themselves immediately

Tituriô. Nam ut ânîmus Gallorum est  
to Titurius. For as the spirit of the Gauls is

alâcer ac promptus ad suscipienda<sup>49</sup> bella,  
alert and ready for undertaking wars,

sic eorum mens est mollis ac minîmè  
so their mind is soft [weak] and by no means

resistens ad perferendas calamitates.  
resistant for bearing misfortunes.

20. Fêrè eodem tempore, quum Publius  
Nearly at the same time, when Publius

Crassus pervenisset (pl. perf. subj.) in Aquitaniam,  
Crassus had arrived into [at] Aquitania,

quæ pars, ut dictum-est antè, est  
which part, as has been said before, is

æstimanda ex tertîâ parte Galliæ, et  
to [must] be regarded from [as] the third part of Gaul, both

latitudîne regionum et multitudîne  
by the breadth [extent] of countries and by the multitude

homînum ; quum intelligeret (imp. subj.) bellum  
of men ; when he was understanding (that) war

gerendum sibi (dat.) in eis locis,  
to [must] be carried on by himself in these places,

ubi paucis (abl.) annis antè Lucius  
where a few years before Lucius

Valerius Præconinus legatus interfectus-esset  
Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant had been killed,

(pl. perf. subj.), exercitu pulso ; atque  
(his) army having been routed ; and

unde Lucius Manilius Proconsul, impedi-  
whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul, (his)

mentis amissis, profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),  
baggage having been lost, had escaped,

intelligebat non mediocrem diligentiam  
he was understanding (that) not [no] moderate diligence

adhibendam sibi (dat.). Itaque, frumentariâ  
 to [must] be employed by himself. Therefore, corn  
 re provisâ, auxiliis que equitatu  
 affair [grain] having been provided, auxiliaries and cavalry  
 comparato, præterea multis fortibus viris  
 having been prepared, moreover many brave men  
 Tolosâ et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates  
 from Tolosa and Narbo (which are cities  
 provinciæ Galliæ, finitimæ his regionibus)  
 of the province of Gaul, neighboring to these countries)  
 evocatis nominatim, introduxit exercitum  
 having been called out by name, he led forth (his) army  
 in fines Sotiatium. Cujus adventu  
 into the territories of the Sotiates. Whose arrival  
 cognitô, Sotiates, magnis copiis coac-  
 having been known, the Sotiates, great forces having been  
 tis, que equitatu, quo valebant  
 collected, and cavalry, in which they were availing  
 plurimum, adorti nostrum agmen in itinere,  
 most, having attacked our army on the march.  
 primum commiserunt equestre prælium; deinde  
 first engaged (in) a cavalry fight; afterwards  
 suo equitatu pulso, atque nostris  
 their cavalry having been routed, and our (men)  
 insequentibus, ostenderunt subito pedestres  
 pursuing, they showed [revealed] suddenly the foot  
 copias, quas collocaverant in convalle in  
 forces, which they had placed in a valley basin in  
 insidiis. Hi adorti nostros disjectos,  
 ambushades. These having attacked our (men) scattered,  
 renovârunt prælium.  
 renewed the battle.  
 21. Pugnatum-est<sup>50</sup> diu atque acriter, quum  
 It was fought long and sharply, since  
 Sotiates, freti superioribus victoriis,  
 the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,  
 putarent (imp. subj.) salutem<sup>51</sup> totius Aquitanie  
 were thinking (that) the safety of the whole of Aquitania

positam in suâ virtute; autem nostri  
was placed in their own valor; but our (men)

cuperent (imp. subj.) perspicī, <sup>52</sup> quid pos-  
were desiring (that it) to [should] be seen, what they might be

sent efficere sine imperatore,  
able [could] (to) accomplish without the commander in chief,

et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo  
and without the remaining legions, a very young man

duce. Tamen hostes tandem confecti  
(being) general. However the enemy at length having been spent

vulneribus vertêrunt terga: magno numero  
with wounds turned (their) backs: a great number

quorum interfecto, Crassus cepit oppugnare  
of whom having been slain, Crassus began to storm

oppidum Sotiatium ex itinere; quibus  
the town of the Sotiates from [on] (his) march; who [they]

resistentibus <sup>53</sup> fortiter, egit vineas que  
opposing bravely, he pushed the sheds and

turres. Illi, aliâs eruptione tentatâ,  
towers. They at one time a sally having been tried,

aliâs cuniculis actis ad aggere  
at another time mines having been pushed to the rampart

que vineas; cujus rei Aquitani sunt longè  
and sheds; of which thing the Aquitani are by far

peritissimi, propterea-quod ærariæ que sectoræ  
most skillful, because (that) copper mines and quarries

sunt apud eos multis locis; ubi intellexerunt  
are among them in many places; when they understood

nihil posse profici his rebus,  
nothing to be able [could] (to) be accomplished by these things

diligentiâ nostrorum, mittunt legatos  
[tactics], from the activity of our (men), they send ambassadors

ad Crassum que petunt, ut recipiat se  
to Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves

in deditionem. Quâ re impetratâ,  
into a surrender. Which thing having been obtained,

jussi tradere arma, faciunt.  
having been ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it).



22. Atque animis omnium nostrorum intentis  
 And the minds of all our (men) being engaged  
 in eâ re, Adiatomus qui tenebat summam  
 on this thing, Adiatomas who was holding the height  
 imperii, ex aliâ parte oppidi, cum  
 (of) [the chief] command, from another part of the town, with  
 sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant  
 six hundred devoted (men), whom they call  
 Soldurios: quorum hæc est conditio ut  
 Soldurii: of whom this is the estate that  
 fruantur (pres. subj.) omnibus commodis (abl.) in  
 they enjoy all advantages in  
 vitâ unâ cum his, amicitiae quorum  
 life together with those, to the friendship of whom  
 dediderint se: si quid  
 they may have given up [devoted] themselves: if any (thing)  
 accidat his per vim, aut  
 may happen to these through violence, (that) either  
 ferant eundem casum unâ, aut consciscant<sup>54</sup>  
 they may bear the same calamity together, or inflict  
 mortem sibi (dat.) neque quisquam repertus-est  
 death upon themselves nor has any one been found  
 adhuc memoriâ hominum, qui recusaret  
 as yet in the memory of men, who would refuse  
 mori, eo interfecto, amicitiae cujus  
 to die, he having been killed, to the friendship of whom  
 devovisset se. Cum his Adiatomus  
 he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomas  
 conatus facere eruptionem, clamore  
 having endeavored to make a sally, a shout  
 sublato ab eâ parte munitionis,  
 having been raised from that part of the fortification,  
 quum milites concurrissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 when the soldiers had run together to  
 arma, que pugnatum-esset<sup>55</sup> (pl. perf. subj.) ibi  
 arms, and it had been [they had] fought there  
 vehementer, repulsus-est in oppidum; tamen  
 violently, he was forced back into the town; however

impetravit à Crasso, ŭti uteretur<sup>56</sup>  
 he obtained from Crassus, that he might use

eâdem conditione (abl.) deditiois.  
 the same condition [terms] of surrender.

23. Armis que obsidibus acceptis, Crassus  
 The arms and hostages having been received Crassus

profectus-est in fines Vocatium et  
 set out into the territories of the Vocates and

Tarusatium. Tum verò barbãri  
 of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)

commoti, quòd cognoverant oppidum munitum  
 alarmed, because they had learned (that) a town fortified

et naturã loci et mãnu  
 both by the nature of the place and by hand [by art]

expugnatum<sup>57</sup> paucis diebus, quibus ven-  
 having been stormed in the few days, in which it had been

tum fuërat èò; cœperunt dimittere legatos  
 [they had] come there; they began to send ambassadors

quoqueversus, conjurare, dare obsides inter  
 in every direction, to take oaths, to give hostages between

se, parare copias. Legati mittuntur  
 themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors are sent

etiã ad eas civitates, quæ sunt citerioris  
 also to these states, which are in nearer

Hispaniæ (gen.) finitimæ Aquitaniæ: inde  
 Spain neighboring to Aquitania: thence

auxilia que dũces arcessuntur; adventu  
 auxiliaries and generals are summoned; on the arrival

quorum conantur gerere bellum cum magnã  
 of whom they endeavor to wage war with great

auctoritate et cum magnã multitudĩne hominum.  
 authority and with a great multitude of men.

Verò ïi deliguntur dũces, qui fuërant  
 Moreover these are chosen (as) generals, who had been

unã cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos, que  
 together with Quintus Sertorius all the years, and

existimabantur habere summam scientiam militaris  
 were thought to have the highest knowledge of military

rēi                    Hi        consuetudinē        Romani        popūli  
 affair [taetics]    These        by the custom        of the Roman        people  
 institūunt        capere                    loca,                    munire  
       resolve        to take [choose]        places [ground],        to fortify  
 castra (pl.),        intercludere        nostros        comētibus.  
 the camp,            to shut off            our (men)        from provisions.  
 Quod        ūbi        Crassus        animadvertit,                    suas  
 Which        when        Crassus        perceived,                    (and that) his own  
 copias        non        facile        diduci                    propter  
 forces        not        easily        to be [were] divided        on account of  
       exiguitatem,        et        hostem        vagari  
 (their) scantiness [fewness], and (that) the enemy (to) wander about  
 et        obsidere        vias,        et        relinquere        satis  
 and (to) block up        the ways,        and (to) leave        enough  
 praeidii        castris (pl.);        ob        eam causam  
 of protection        to (their) camp;        on account of        this        cause (that)  
 frumentum        que        comēatum                    supportari  
       eorn                    and                    provision                    to be [were] brought up  
 sibi        minus        commode,                    numerum        hostium  
 to himself        less        conveniently, (that) the number        of the enemy  
       augeri in dies; existimavit<sup>58</sup> non        cunctan-  
 (to be) increased        daily; he considered (it) not to [he must not] be  
 dum,                    quin        decertaret        pugnâ. Hâc re  
 delayed [delay], but that he should contend in battle. This thing  
       delatâ        ad        concilium,        ūbi        intellexit  
 having been referred to        a council,        when he understood (that)  
 omnes<sup>59</sup>        sentire        idem,                    constituit        postērum  
 all (to) think        the same,                    he appointed        the following  
 diem        pugnæ.  
 day        for the battle.

24. Omnibus        copiis                    productis                    primâ  
       All (his) forces        having been drawn out        at the first  
 luce,                    duplici        acie        institutâ,                    que  
 light [early dawn],        a double        line        having been formed,        and  
       auxiliis                    coniectis                    in        mediâ        aciem,  
 the auxiliaries        having been thrown into        the middle        line,  
 exspectabat        quid        consilii (gen.)        hostes        caperent.  
 he was awaiting        what        plan                    the enemy        might take.

Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et  
 They, although on account of (their) multitude, and  
 vetērem gloriā belli que paucitatem nostrorum  
 ancient glory of war and the fewness of our (men)  
 existimabant se dimicaturos tutò;  
 were considering (that) themselves about to [would] contend safely;  
 tamen arbitrabantur esse tutiùs potiri  
 however they were judging (it) to be [was] safer to possess  
 victoriā sine vulnere, viis  
 a victory without a wound, the ways [roads] having  
 obsessis, commeatu intercluso: et si  
 been blocked up, provisions having been intercepted: and if  
 propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani  
 on account of the want of provisions the Romans  
 cœpissent (pl. perf. subj.) recipere sese,  
 should begin to take away themselves [to re-  
 cogitabant adoriri impeditos  
 treat], they were thinking to [they would] attack (them) enumbered  
 agmine et sub sarcinis (pl.), inferiores animo.  
 on the march and under baggage, (and) weaker in spirit.  
 Hoc consilio<sup>60</sup> probato ab ducibus,  
 This plan having been approved by (their) generals,  
 copiis Romanorum productis, tenebant  
 the forces of the Romans having been drawn out, they were keep-  
 ing themselves in camp. Hæc re perspectâ  
 Crassus, quum hostes effecissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 Crassus, since the enemy had rendered  
 suâ cunctatione atque opinione timoris,  
 by their delay and the belief of fear,  
 nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum,  
 our soldiers more eager to fight [for fighting],  
 atque voces omnium audirentur (imp. subj.),  
 and the expressions of all were heard, (that it)  
 oportere<sup>61</sup> non expectari diutiùs, quin  
 to be [was] fitting not to be waited [to wait] longer, but that  
 iretur ad castra (pl.); cohortatus  
 it should be gone [they should go] to the camp; having exhorted

sũos, omnĩbus cupientĩbus, contendit ad  
his (men), all desiring, he hastens to

castra (pl.) hostium.  
the camp of the enemy.

25. Ibi quum alĩ complerent (imp. subj.) fossas  
There when some were filling the ditches

alĩ depellērent (imp. subj.) defensores vallo  
others were dislodging the defenders from the rampart

que munitionĩbus, multis telis coniectis, que  
and fortifications, many weapons having been thrown, and

auxiliares, quĩbus (dat.) Crassus confidebat non  
the auxiliaries, [in] whom Crassus was confiding not

multũ ab pugnam, præberent (imp. subj.)  
much for the battle, were exhibiting

speciem atque opinionem pugnantium  
the appearance and impression of fighting (men)

subministrandis lapidĩbus que telis, et comportandis  
by supplying stones and weapons, and by collecting

cespitibus ad aggērem; quum ĩtem pugnaretur  
turfs for a mound; since likewise it was fought

(imp. subj.) constanter ac non timĩdē ab hostibus,  
steadily and not timidly by the enemy,

que tela missa ex superiore lōco,  
and the weapons sent [thrown] from the higher place,

accidērent (imp. subj.) non frustrā; equĩtes, castris  
were falling not in vain; horsemen, the camp

(pl.) hostium circumĩtis, renuntiaverunt Crasso  
of the enemy having encircled, announced to Crassus

castra (pl.) non esse munita eādem  
(that) the camp not to be [was not] fortified with the same

diligentiā ab Decumanā portā, que habere  
diligence from [at] the Decuman gate, and to have

facilem adĩtum.  
[had] an easy access.

26. Crassus cohortatus præfectos equĩtum  
Crassus having encouraged the perfects of the horsemen

ut excitarent suos magnis præmiis  
that they should stimulate their (men) by great rewards



que pollicitationibus, ostendit quid vēlit  
 and promises, shows (them) what he wishes  
 fieri. Illi, ut imperatum ērat, eis  
 to be done. They, as it had been commanded, these  
 cohortibus devectis, quæ relictæ  
 cohorts having been brought forth, which having been left  
 præsidio castris (pl.), erant intritæ ab  
 for a guard to the camp, were unworn [fresh] from  
 labore: et circumductis longiore itinere,  
 labor: and having been led round by a longer route,  
 ne possent conspici ex castris  
 lest they might be able [should] (to) be seen from the camp  
 hostium; oculis que mentibus omnium  
 of the enemy; the eyes and minds of all  
 intentis ad pugnam, pervenerunt celeriter  
 being engaged to [on] the fight, they arrived quickly  
 ad eas munitiones, quas diximus; atque  
 to [at] these fortifications, which we have mentioned; and  
 his prorutis, constiterunt in castris  
 these having been demolished, they stood in the camp  
 (pl.) hostium prius quam posset  
 of the enemy before that it might be able [could]  
 videri planè ab his aut cognosci, quid  
 (to) be seen plainly by these or (to) be known, what  
 rei gereretur. Tum verò clamore  
 (of) thing was transpiring. Then indeed a shout  
 audito ab eâ parte, nostri, viribus (pl.)  
 having been heard from this part, our (men), their strength  
 redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit  
 having been renewed, which generally has been accustomed  
 accidere in spe victoriæ, cœperunt impugnare  
 to occur in the hope of victory, began to assault  
 acrius. Hostes circumventi undique,  
 more vigorously. The enemy surrounded on every side,  
 omnibus rebus desperatis, contenderunt  
 all things having been despaired of, hastened  
 deicere se per munitones, et  
 to hurl themselves through the fortifications, and

petere to seek	salutem safety	fūgâ. by flight.	Quos Whom	equitatus the cavalry
consectatus having pursued	apertissimis in the most open	campis, plains,	recepit betook	
se itself	in into	castra (pl.) camp	multâ in much	nocte, <sup>62</sup> night [late at night],
vix scarcely	quartâ a fourth	parte part	relictâ having been left	ex from
numëro the number	quingenta of fifty	millium, thousand,	quæ which	
constabat it was evident	venisse to have [had] come	ex from	Aquitaniâ Aquitania	
que and	Cantâbris. the Cantabri.			

27. Hâc pugnâ auditâ, maxîma pars  
This battle having been heard of, the greatest part

Aquitaniæ dedidit sese Crasso, que misit  
of Aquitania surrendered itself to Crassus, and sent

obsides ultrò: in quo numëro fuerunt  
hostages voluntarily: in which number were

Tarbelli, Bigerriõnes, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates,  
the Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates,

Elusâtes, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusates, que  
Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusates, and

Cocosates. Paucæ ultimæ nationes, confisæ  
Cocosates. A few remotest nations, having relied

tempore anni, quòd hîems suberat,  
on the time of the year, because winter was near,

neglexerunt facere id.  
neglected to do this.

28. Fère eodem tempore, etsi æstas  
Nearly at the same time, although the summer

erat jam propè exacta, tãmen quòd, omni  
was already almost finished, still because, all

Galliâ pacatâ, Morîni que Menapîi  
Gaul having been subdued, the Morini and Menapii

supererant, qui essent (imp. subj.) in armis  
were remaining, who were in arms

nēque unquam misissent<sup>63</sup> (pl. perf. subj.) ad eum  
 nor had ever sent to him

legatos de pace, Cæsar arbitratus  
 ambassadors about peace, Cæsar having thought (that)

id bellum posse confici celeriter, duxit  
 this war to be able [could] (to) be finished quickly, led

exercitum eò: qui cœperunt agere bellum  
 the army thither: who began to conduct the war

ratione longè aliâ ac reliqui Galli:  
 in a manner far otherwise than the remaining Gauls:

nam, quòd intelligebant maximas  
 for, because they were understanding (that) the greatest

nationes, quæ contendissent (pl. perf. subj.) prælio  
 nations, which had contended in battle

pulsas-esse que superatas, que habebant  
 to have [had] been routed and overcome, and they were having

continentes silvas ac paludes, contulerunt eò  
 extended woods and marshes, they bore away thither

se que omnia sua. Ad initium  
 themselves and all their (effects). At the beginning

quarum<sup>64</sup> silvarum, quum Cæsar pervenisset (pl.  
 of which woods, when Cæsar had arrived,

perf. subj.), que instituisset (pl. perf. subj.) munire  
 and had resolved to fortify

castra (pl.), nēque intèrim hostis visus esset  
 the camp, nor meanwhile the enemy had been seen:

(pl. perf. subj.); nostris dispersis in  
 our (men) having been scattered in

opère, evolaverunt subito ex omnibus partibus  
 the work, they flew out suddenly from all parts

silvæ, et fecerunt impetum in nostros.  
 of the wood, and made an attack upon our (men).

Nostri celeriter ceperunt arma, que  
 Our (men) quickly took arms, and

repulerunt eos in silvas; et complur-  
 forced them into the woods; and very

ibus interfectis, secuti longius  
 many having been killed, having followed (them) rather far

impeditioribus in more entangled	lõcis, places,	deperdiderunt they lost	paucos a few
ex from [of]	sũis. their own (men).		
29. Cæsar Cæsar	institũit resolved	cædere to cut	silvas the woods
reliquis on the remaining	diebus; days;	et and	ne quis lest any
posset might be able [could]	fieri (to) be made	ab from	latere the flank
(dat.) inermibus unarmed	que and	imprudentibus, unaware,	collocabat he was placing
omnem all	ẽam this	materiam, material [timber],	quæ which
conversam turned	ad to	hostem, the enemy,	que and
vallo a rampart	ad to [on]	utrumque each	latus. flank.
confecto having been finished [cleared]		paucis in a few	diebus days
celeritate, speed,	quum when	pẽcus the cattle	atque and
imenta (pl.) gage	tenerentur (imp. subj.) was possessed	jam now	ab by
ipsi (they) themselves	petẽrent (imp. subj.) were seeking	denſiores the thicker	silvas; woods;
tempestates storms	ejuſmõdi of such kind	consecutæ sunt, followed,	ũti that
intermitteretur (imp. subj.) was interrupted		necessariõ; necessarily;	et and
uatione continuance	imbrũum, of the rains,	milites the soldiers	possent (imp. subj.) were able
non not	contineri to be kept	diutũs longer	sub under
omnibus all	eorum their	agris lands	vastatis, <sup>65</sup> having been ravaged,
que and	ædificiis buildings	incensis, having been burned,	Cæsar led back
		reduxit led back	exercitum the army

et collocavit in hibernis in Aulereis  
 and placed (it) in winter quarters among the Aulerci  
 que Lexovii, item reliquis civitatibus, quæ  
 and the Lexovii, also the remaining states, which  
 facerant bellum proxímè.  
 had made war last.



## FOURTH BOOK

The fourth book contains the description of Cæsar's campaign against the Germans and of his first invasion of Britain, B. C. 55. The German tribes, the Usipetes Germani and the Teneteri, pressed by the Suevi, had crossed the Rhine near its mouth and conquered the Menapii. Cæsar, fearing complications and a possible alliance of the Gauls and Germans, orders the Germans to withdraw from Gaul. He then advances with the army and a protracted parley takes place between him and the Germans. After a treacherous attack by the German cavalry Cæsar assaults the camp of the Germans and puts them to flight. The Rhine is bridged by Cæsar, who invades Germany and after a stay of 18 days returns. He sends a reconnoitering fleet to Britain, and after assembling a large fleet, himself, sails and lands on the British coast. A storm disables the fleet, whereupon the Britons attack him and are defeated. Cæsar returns to Gaul. The Morini rebel and are subdued. For that winter the legions are quartered among the Belgæ and the Senate appoints a thanksgiving of 20 days.

1. Eâ hième quæ secuta est, qui fuit annus,  
 In this winter which followed, which was the year,  
 Cneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus,  
 (when) Cneius Pompey, Marcus Crassus (were) counsuls,  
 Germani Usipètes, et item Tenetëri transiêrunt  
 the German Usipetes, and also the Teneteri crossed  
 flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudîne hominum,  
 the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,  
 non longè à mări, quò Rhenus influit.  
 not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows in.  
 Causa transeundi fuit, quòd exagitati ab  
 The cause of crossing was, because having been harassed by  
 Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,  
 the Suevi many years, they were crushed by war,  
 et prohibebantur agri culturâ. Gens  
 and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxīma et bellicosissima  
 of the Suevi is by far the greatest and most warlike

omnīum Germanorum. Hi dicuntur habere  
 of all the Germans. These are said to have

centum pagos; ex quibus<sup>1</sup> educunt  
 a hundred cantons; from which they lead forth

quotannis singula (pl.) millia armatorum  
 yearly single thousands of armed (men)

ex suis finibus, causâ bellandi: reliqui  
 from their borders, for the sake of warring: the rest

qui manserunt dōmi (gen.), alunt se atque  
 who remained at home, support themselves and

illos. Hi rursus sunt in armis invicem  
 those. These again are in arms in turn

anno post; illi remanent dōmi (gen.).  
 in the year after; they [those] remain at home.

Sic nēque agri cultura, nēque ratio atque  
 Thus neither agriculture, nor the theory and

usus belli intermittitur. Sed est nihil  
 practice of war is interrupted. But (there) is nothing

privati ac separati agri apud  
 [not any] (of) private and separate land at [among]

eos: nēque licet remanere longiūs anno  
 them: neither is it lawful to remain longer (than) a year

in uno loco, causâ colendi. Nēque  
 in one place, for the sake of tilling [farming]. Neither

vivunt multum frumento, sed maximam<sup>2</sup>  
 do they live much by [on] corn, but the greatest

partem lacte atque pecōre; que sunt  
 part by [on] milk and cattle; and they are

multum in venationibus (pl.); quæ res et  
 much in huntings [in the chase]; which thing both

ălit vires et efficit homines  
 nourishes the forces [strength] and produces men

immani magnitudine corpōrum et genere  
 with [of] huge size of bodies and by the kind

ăbi, et quotidianâ exercitatione, et libertate  
 of food, and daily exercise. and freedom

vitæ, quòd àssuefacti nullo officio aut  
 of life, because having been accustomed to no duty or  
 disciplinâ à puëris, faciunt (pres. subj.)  
 discipline from boys [boyhood], they do  
 nihil omnino contra voluntatem. Atque  
 nothing at all against (their) will. And  
 adduxerunt se in eam consuetudinem,  
 they have brought themselves into this habit,  
 ut habent (pres. subj.) neque quidquam  
 that they have neither any (thing)  
 vestitus frigidissimis locis, præter pelles;  
 (of) clothing in the coldest places, except skins;  
 propter exiguitatem quarum, magna pars  
 on account of the scantiness of which, a great part  
 corporis est aperta; et laventur (pres. subj.)  
 of the body is uncovered; and they are washed [bathe]  
 in fluminibus.  
 in the rivers.

2. Aditus est mercatoribus ad eos, magis  
 Access is for merchants to them, more  
 eò, ut habent quibus  
 by this [on this account], that they may have (those) to whom  
 vendant, quæ cepèrint bello, quàm  
 they may sell, what they may have taken in war, than  
 quòd desiderent ullam rem importari  
 that they may desire any thing to be imported  
 ad se. Quinetiam Germani utuntur non  
 to themselves. Moreover the Germans use not  
 importatis jumentis, quibus Galli maxime  
 imported beasts of burden, with which the Gauls especially  
 delectantur que quæ parrant impenso  
 are delighted and which they procure at expensive [a high]  
 pretio; sed efficiunt hæc, quæ sunt nata  
 price; but they render these, which are born  
 prava atque deformia apud eos, quotidianâ  
 mis-shapen and deformed among them, by daily  
 exercitatione ut sint summi  
 exercise that they may be (capable) of the highest [greatest]

laboris. Equestribus praeliis desiliunt sæpe  
 labor. In cavalry fights they leap down often

ex æquis, ac praeliantur<sup>3</sup> pedibus; que  
 from the horses, and fight on feet [on foot]; and

assuefaciunt æquos remanere eodem vestigio,  
 they accustom the horses to remain in the same footstep [spot],

ad quos recipiunt se celeriter, quum usus  
 to which they betake themselves quickly, when need

poscit: neque quidquam habetur turpius  
 requires: nor is any thing held more shameful

aut inertius eorum moribus quam uti  
 or more lazy by their customs than to use

ehippiis (abl.). Itaque,<sup>4</sup> quamvis pauci audent  
 saddles. Therefore, however few, they dare

adire ad quemvis numerum ehippiatorum  
 to approach to any number of saddled

equitum. Non sinunt vinum importari  
 horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported

omnino ad se, quod<sup>5</sup> arbitrantur  
 at all to themselves, because they think (that)

homines remollescere hæc re ad ferendum,  
 men (to) become enfeebled by this thing for bearing,

laborem atque effeminari.  
 labor and to be [are] effeminated.

3. Publicè putant esse maximam  
 Publicly [as a nation] they think (it) to be [is] the greatest

laudem, agros vacare quam latis-  
 praise (that), the lands to be [are] vacant as most exten-

sime à suis finibus.  
 sively [as extensively as possible] from their borders. (That)

Significari hæc re, magnum numerum  
 to be [it is] indicated by this thing (that), a great number

civitatum non potuisse sustinere  
 of states not (to) have been able to [could not] withstand

suum vim. Itaque circiter sexcenta millia  
 their force [power]. Therefore about six hundred thousands

passuum agri dicuntur<sup>6</sup> vacare à  
 (of) paces of land [country] are said to be vacant from

Suevis ex unâ parte. Ubii succedunt  
 the Suevi from [on] one part [side]. The Ubii come next  
 ad altëram partem, quorum civitas fuit  
 at the other part [side], whose state has been  
 ampla atque florens, ut captus Germanorum  
 extensive and flourishing, as the nature of the Germans  
 est; ei sunt paulò humaniores cætëris,  
 is; they are a little more civilized than the rest,  
 quamquam sunt ejusdem genëris: propterea  
 although (they) are of the same race; because  
 quòd attingunt Rhenum, que mercatores ventitant  
 (that) they touch on the Rhine, and merchants travel  
 multùm ad eos, et ipsi sunt assuefacti  
 much to them, and they are accustomed  
 Gallicis moribus propter propinquitatem. Quum  
 to Gallic manners on account of (their) nearness. When  
 Suevi, experti hos (acc.) sæpè multis  
 the Suevi, having made trial of these often in many  
 bellis, potuissent (pl. perf. subj.) non expellere  
 wars, had been able [could] not (to) expel (them)  
 finibus, propter amplitudinem que  
 from (their) borders, on account of the extent and  
 gravitatem civitatis, tãmen fecerunt  
 weight [influence] of the state, at length they made  
 vectigales sibi, ac redegerunt multò  
 (them) tributary to themselves, and rendered (them) much  
 humiliores que infirmiores.  
 lower [poorer] and weaker.

4. Usipètes et Tenctëri, quos diximus  
 The Usipetes and Tencteri, whom we have said  
 suprà, fuerunt in eâdem causâ: qui  
 above, were in the same cause [condition]: who  
 sustinuerunt vim Suevorum complures annos:  
 withstood the violence of the Suevi many years:  
 tãmen ad extremum expulsi  
 however at last having been driven out from (their)  
 agris, et vagati multis locis Germaniæ  
 lands, and having wandered in many places of Germany



triennium, pervenerunt<sup>7</sup> ad Rhenum:  
 (during) three years time, they arrived at the Rhine:  
 quas regiones Menapii incolebant, Hi  
 which countries the Menapii were inhabiting, These  
 habebant agros, ædificia, qua vicus ad  
 were holding lands, buildings, and villages at [along]  
 utramque ripam fluminis: sed perterritis  
 each bank of the river: but alarmed  
 adventu tantæ multitudinis, demigraverunt  
 by the arrival of so great a multitude, they emigrated  
 ex his ædificiis, quæ habuerant trans flumen:  
 from these buildings, which they had had beyond the river:  
 et præsidiiis dispositis cis Rhenum,  
 and garrisons having been posted on this side the Rhine,  
 prohibebant<sup>8</sup> Germanos transire.  
 they were checking the Germans to cross [from crossing] over.  
 Illi experti omnia, quum possent (imp.  
 They, having tried all (things) when they were able  
 subj.) neque contendere vi, propter  
 neither to contend by force, on account of  
 inopiam navium, neque transire clam,  
 the want of ships, nor to cross over secretly,  
 propter custodias Menapiorum, simulaverunt<sup>9</sup>  
 on account of the guards of the Menapii, pretended  
 se reverti in suas sedes  
 (that they) themselves (to) return into their seats  
 que regiones; et progressi viam  
 [settlements] and countries; and having advanced a way  
 tridui, reverterunt rursus; atque  
 [distance] of three days, they return again and  
 omni hoc itinere confecto unâ nocte  
 all this march having been finished in one night  
 equitatu, oppræsserunt Menapios inscios que  
 by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant and  
 inopinantes; qui<sup>10</sup> facti certiores  
 unaware; who having been made more sure [having been  
 de discessu Germanorum per  
 informed] of the departure of the Germans by

exploratores, remigravērant s̄ne mētu in  
 spies, had moved back without fear into  
 s̄nos vicos trans Rhenum. His interfectis  
 their villages beyond the Rhine. These having been slain  
 que eorum navibus occupatis, prius-quam<sup>11</sup>  
 and their ships having been seized, before (that)  
 ěa pars Menapiorum, quę ěrat citra  
 this part of the Menapii, which was on this side  
 Rhenum, fiěret (imp. subj.) certior,  
 the Rhine, was made more sure [was informed],  
 transierunt flumen; atque omnibus eorum  
 they crossed the river; and all their  
 ædificiis occupatis, aluerunt se  
 buildings having been seized, they supported themselves  
 eorum copiis reliquam partem hiěmis.  
 with their supplies [stores] the remaining part of the winter.  
 5. Cæsar factus certior de  
 Cæsar being made more sure [having been informed] of  
 his rebus, et veritus infirmitatem Gallorum,  
 these things, both having feared the weakness of the Gauls,  
 quòd sunt mobiles in capiendis consiliis, et  
 because they are changeable in taking counsils, and  
 plerumque student novis rebus,  
 generally are zealous for new things [a revolution],  
 existimavit nihil committendum his. Autem  
 thought nothing to [should] be entrusted to these. But  
 hoc est Gallicę consuetudinis; ut et  
 this is (of) the Gallie custom; that both  
 cogant (pres. subj.) viatores, etiam invitos,  
 they compel travellers, even unwilling,  
 consistere; et quęrant (pres. subj.) quod quisque  
 to stop: and they inquire what each  
 eorum audiěrit aut cognověrit de  
 of them may have heard or may have learned about  
 quęque re: et vulgus circumstatat  
 each thing: and the common people stand about  
 (pres. subj.) mercatores in oppidis: cogant  
 the merchants in the towns: they compel

(pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex quibus regionibus  
(them) to declare from what countries

veniant, que quas res cognoverint ibi.  
they come, and what things they have learned there.

Permoti his rumoribus atque auditionibus,  
Aroused by these reports and hearsays,

inēunt consilia sæpè de summis  
they enter upon plans often concerning the most important

rebus: quorum est necesse eos pœnitere  
things: of which it is necessary (for) them to repent

in vestigiõ, quum serviant (pres. subj.)  
on the track [spot], since they are slaves

incertis rumoribus, et plerique<sup>12</sup> respondēant  
to uncertain reports, and very many answer

(pers. subj.) ficta ad eorum voluntatem.  
feigned (things) to their wish.

6. Quâ consuetudinē cognitâ, Cæsar  
Which custom having been known, Cæsar

proficiscitur ad exercitum maturiùs quàm  
sets out to the army sooner than

consueverat, ne<sup>13</sup> occurreret graviori  
he had been accustomed, lest he might meet a heavier [more serious]

bello (dat.). Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) èd  
war. When he had come there

cognovit<sup>14</sup> ea facta, quæ  
he learned (that) these (things) (had been) done, which

suspiciatus-erat fore: legationes mis-  
he had suspected to be about to [would] be: embassies to have

sas à nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos,  
[had] been sent by some states to the Germans,

que eos invitatos uti discederent  
and these to have [had] been invited that they should depart

ab Rheno: que omnia quæ  
from the Rhine: and all (things) which

postulassent fore parata ab  
they had demanded to be about to [would] be prepared by

se. Quâ<sup>15</sup> spe Germani adducti,  
themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced [moved],

vagabantur jam latius, et pervenerant  
 were wandering now more widely, and had arrived  
 in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum,  
 into [at] the borders of the Eburones and of the Condresi,  
 qui sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principibus  
 who are dependents of the Treviri. The chiefs  
 Gallæ evocatis, Cæsar existimavit  
 of Gaul having been summoned, Cæsar thought (that)  
 Æa, quæ cognoverat, dissimulanda  
 these (things), which he had learned, to [must] be concealed  
 sibi (dat.); que eorum animis permulsis  
 by himself; and their minds having been soothed  
 et confirmatis, que equitatu imperato,  
 and strengthened, and cavalry having been demanded,  
 constituit gerere bellum cum Germanis.  
 he resolved to carry on war with the Germans.

7. Frumentariâ re comparatâ, que  
 The grain supply having been prepared, and  
 equitibus delectis, cœpit facere iter  
 the cavalry having been chosen, he began to make (his) march  
 in Æa loca, in quibus locis audiebat  
 into these places, in which places he was hearing  
 Germanos esse. A quibus<sup>16</sup> quum  
 the Germans to be [were]. From whom [them] when  
 abesset (imp. subj.) iter paucorum dierum,  
 he was distant a journey of a few days,  
 legati venerunt ab his, quorum<sup>17</sup> hæc  
 ambassadors came from them, of whom this  
 fuit oratio: "Germanos neque inferre bellum  
 was the speech: "The Germans neither (to) wage war  
 Romano populo priores, neque<sup>18</sup> tamen  
 to [on] the Roman people the first, nor however  
 recusare, quin contentant armis, si  
 to refuse, but that they may contend in arms, if  
 lacessantur: quod hæc consuetudo Germanorum  
 they should be attacked: because this custom of the Germans  
 tradita-sit (perf. subj.) à majoribus, resistere,  
 has been delivered by (their) ancestors, to oppose,

nēque deprecari, quicumque infērant  
 nor to beg off [ask quarter of], whosoever may bring on  
 bellum: tamen dicere hoc: venisse  
 war: however to [they] say this: to (that they) have come  
 invitos, ejectos dōmo: si Romani vēlint  
 unwilling, having been driven from home: if the Romans wish  
 suam gratiam, posse esse utiles amicos  
 their favor, to be [they are] able to be useful friends  
 eis: vel attribuant agros sibi, vel  
 to them: either let them assign lands to themselves, or  
 patiantur tenere eos, quos possederint  
 let them permit (them) to hold these, which they have possessed  
 armis: sese concedere Suevis  
 by arms: (that they) themselves (to) yield to the Suevi  
 unis; quibus ne quidem immortales dii  
 one [alone]; to whom not even the immortal gods  
 possint esse pares: neminem reliquum  
 are able to be equal: (that) no one remaining [else]  
 quidem esse in terris, quem  
 indeed to be [is] in the lands [on earth], whom  
 non-possint superare.”  
 they are not able to overcome.”

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc quæ  
 Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)  
 visum-est; sed exitus orationis fuit:  
 seemed (best); but the conclusion of (his) speech was:  
 “Nullam amicitiam posse esse sibi  
 “No friendship to be able [can] (to) be for himself  
 cum his, si remanerent in Gallia: nēque  
 with them, if they should remain in Gaul: neither  
 esse verum occupare alienos, qui  
 to be [is it] true [just] to seize others' (lands), who  
 potuerint non tueri suos fines:  
 may have been able not to defend their own borders:  
 nēque ullos agros vacare in Gallia, qui  
 nor (are) any lands (to be) vacant in Gaul, which  
 possint dari sine injuria, præsertim  
 may be able to be given without injury, especially



tantæ multitudīni: sed licere, si  
to so great a multitude: but (that) to be [it is] permitted, if  
vēlint, considere in finibus Ubiorum;  
they wish, to settle in the territories of the Ubii;  
legati quorum sint (pres. subj.) apud se,  
ambassadors of whom are at [with] himself,  
et querantur (pres. subj.) de injuriis Suevorum,  
and complain of the injuries of the Suevi,  
et pētant (pres. subj.) auxiliū à se:  
and ask aid from himself: (he)  
se impetraturum hoc ab Ubīs."'  
himself about to [would] obtain this from the Ubii."

9. Legati dixerunt se rela-  
The ambassadors said (that they) themselves about to  
turos hæc ad suos, et  
[would] carry back these (words) to their own (people), and  
re deliberatâ, reversuros  
the thing having been considered, (to be) about to [would] return  
ad Cæsarem post tertium diem: interea  
to Cæsar after the third day: meantime  
petiērunt ne moveret castra (pl.) propiūs  
they requested (that) he would not move (his) camp nearer  
se. Cæsar dixit ne id quidem posse  
themselves. Cæsar said not this even to be able  
impetrari ab se. Enim cognovērat  
[could] (to) be obtained from himself. For he had known  
magnam partem equitatūs missam ab  
a great part of (their) cavalry having [had] been sent by  
iis ad Ambivaritos trans Mōsam, aliquot  
them to the Ambivariti across the Meuse, some  
diebus antè, causâ prædandi que frumentandi:  
days before, for the sake of plundering and of providing corn:  
arbitrabatur hos equites expectari,  
he was thinking (that) these horsemen to be [were] awaited,  
atque mōram interponi causâ  
and the delay to be [was] interposed for the sake  
ejus rēi.  
of this thing.

10. Mōsa profūit ex monte Vogēsō,  
 The Mosa [Meuse] flows from mount Vogesus  
 qui est in finibus Lingōnam;  
 [Vosges], which is in the territories of the Lingones;  
 et quādam parte ex Rheni receptā,  
 and a certain part from [of] the Rhine having been received,  
 quæ appellatur Vahālis, efficit insulam  
 which (part) is called Vahalis [Waal], it forms the island  
 Batāvorum: nēque longiūs ab ěo  
 of the Batavi: and not farther from this (than)  
 octoginta millibus passuum influit in Oceānum.  
 eighty thousand (of) paces it empties into the Ocean.  
 Autem Rhenus oriūtur ex Lepontis, qui  
 But the Rhine rises from the Lepontii, who  
 incolunt Alpes, et fertur citatus longo spatio  
 inhabit the Alps, and is borne rapid in a long distance  
 per fines Nantuatum, Helvetiorum,  
 through the territories of the Nantuates, of the Helvetii,  
 Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribocorum, que  
 of the Sequani, of the Mediomatrici, of the Triboci, and  
 Treverorum; et ūbi appropinquat Oceāno,  
 of the Treveri; and when it approaches (to) the Ocean,  
 diffūit in plures partes; multis<sup>19</sup>  
 it flows apart into more [several] parts [estuaries]; many  
 que ingentibus insulis effectis; magna  
 and great islands having been formed; a large  
 pars quarum incolitur à fēris que barbaris  
 part of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous  
 nationibus; (ex quibus sunt qui  
 nations; (from [of] which (there) are (some) who  
 existimantur vivere piscibus atque ovis  
 are thought to live (on) fishes and the eggs  
 avium); que influit in Oceānum multis  
 of birds); and it empties into the Ocean by many  
 capitibus.  
 heads [outlets].
11. Quum Cæsar abesset (imp. subj.) ab  
 When Cæsar was distant from

hoste non amplius duodécim millibus  
 the enemy not more (than) twelve thousand  
 passum, legati revertuntur ad eum,  
 (of) paces, the ambassadors returned to him,  
 ut constitutum-erat: qui congressi in  
 as it had been appointed: who having met (him) on  
 itinere, orabant magnopere, ne progredieretur  
 the march, were praying very much, that he would not advance  
 longius. Quum non impetrassent (pl. perf.  
 farther. When they had not obtained  
 subj.) id, petebant, "ut præmitteret  
 this, they were asking, "that he would send before  
 ad eos equites, qui antecessissent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 to these horsemen, who had preceded  
 agmen, que prohiberet eos pugnâ: que  
 the marching line, and would prohibit them from battle: and  
 uti faceret potestatem sibi mittendi  
 that he would make an opportunity to themselves of sending  
 legatos in Ubios: si quorum principes que  
 ambassadors unto Ubii: if their chiefs and  
 senatus fecissent fidem<sup>20</sup> sibi  
 senate would make faith [give pledge] to themselves  
 jurejurando, ostendebant se  
 by oath, they were showing (that they) themselves  
 usuros eâ conditione, quæ ferretur  
 about to use [would accept] this condition, which was offered  
 à Cæsare; daret sibi spatium tridui  
 by Cæsar: let him give to themselves the period of three days  
 ad conficiendas has res." Cæsar arbitrabatur  
 for accomplishing these things." Cæsar was thinking (that)  
 omnia hæc pertinere eodem-illò, ut,  
 all these (things) (to) tend to this same (point), that,  
 morâ tridui interpositâ, eorum  
 the delay of three days having been interposed, their  
 equites qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur:  
 horsemen who were absent might return:  
 tamen dixit sese processurum non  
 however he said (that he) himself about to (would) advance not

longiùs quatŭor millibus passŭum ęo dęe  
farther (than) four thousand (of) paces on this day

causâ aquationis: convenirent<sup>21</sup> huc quàm  
for the sake of watering: let them assemble hither as

frequentissĭmi postęro dęe,  
most numerous [as many as possible] on the following day,

ut cognoscęret de eorum postulatis.  
that he might learn concerning their requests.

Intęrim mittit ad pręfectos, qui  
Meanwhile he sends (persons) to the commander, who

antecessęrant cum omni equitatu, qui  
had advanced with all the cavalry, who

nuntiarent, ne laccessęrent hostes  
should announce [instruct], that they should not provoke the enemy

pręlio; et, si ipsi laccesserentur,  
to battle; and, if (they) themselves should be provoked, [attacked],

sustinerent quŏad ipse accessisset  
they should hold out until (he) himself should approach

propĭus cum exercĭtu.  
nearer with the army.

12. At hostes,<sup>22</sup> ũbi primŭm conspexerunt  
But the enemy, when first [as soon as] they beheld

nostros equĭtes, numęrus quorum ęrat quinque  
our cavalry, the number of whom was (of) five

millĭum, quum ipsi haberent (imp. subj.)  
thousand, although (they) themselves were having

non amplĭus octongentos equĭtes, quŏd  
not more (than) eight hundred cavalry, because

ĭi, qui ięrant trans Mŏsam causâ  
those, who had gone beyond the Męuse for the sake

frumentandi, nondum redięrant; nostris  
of foraging, had not yet returned; our (men)

timentibus nĭhil, quŏd eorum legati  
fearing nothing, because their ambassadors

discessęrant paulŏ antę à Cęsäre, atque is  
had departed a little before from Cęsar, and this

dęes petitus-ęrat ab ĭis indutiĭs (pl.),<sup>23</sup>  
day had been sought by them for a truce,

impĕtu facto, perturbaverunt celerĭter  
 an attack having been made, confused quickly  
 nostros. Nostris rursus resistentĭbus, desiliĕrunt  
 our (men). Our (men) again resisting, they leaped down.  
 ad pĕdes, sũâ consuetudinĕ, que ĕquis  
 to feet, [on foot] by their custom, and the horses  
 suffossis, que complurĭbus nostris  
 having been stabbed, and very many (of) our (men)  
 dejectis, conjecerunt reliquos in fũgam;  
 having been cast down, they hurled the rest into flight;  
 atque egerunt ĭta perterritos, ut desistĕrent  
 and drove (them) so panicstricken, that they were ceasing  
 (imp. subj.) non fũgâ priũs quàm venissent  
 not from flight before that they had come  
 (pl. perf. subj.) in conspectum nostri agminis.  
 into sight of our marching line.  
 Quatũor et septuaginta ex nostris equitibus  
 Four and seventy out of our cavalry  
 interficiuntur in ěo praelĭo; in his Piso,  
 are killed in this battle; among these (was) Piso,  
 fortissĭmus vir, Aquitanus, natus amplissĭmo  
 a most brave man, an Aquitanian, born from [of a] most distin-  
 genĕre, cujus avus obtinuĕrat regnum  
 guished family, whose grandfather had obtained the sovereignty  
 in sũâ civitate, appellatus amicus à nostro  
 in his own state, having been called a friend by our  
 senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.) auxiliũm  
 senate. When he was bearing aid  
 fratri intercluso ab hostibus, eripũit  
 to (his) brother cut off by the enemy, he rescued  
 illum ex pericũlo; ipse, ĕquo vulnerato,  
 him from danger; (he) himself, (his) horse having been  
 dejectus restitit fortissĭme quoad  
 wounded. thrown down, resisted most bravely as long as  
 potũit. Quum circumventus cecidisset  
 he was able. When having been surrounded he had fallen;  
 (pl. perf. subj.); multis vulneribus acceptis,  
 many wounds having been received,



atque frater, qui jam excesserat praelio  
 and (his) brother, who already had departed from the battle  
 animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id procul, equo  
 (had) perceived this afar off, (his) horse  
 incitato obtulit sese hostibus,  
 having been urged on he threw himself to [upon] the enemy,  
 atque interfectus-est.  
 and was slain.

13. Hoc praelio facto, Cæsar jam  
 This battle having been done [fought], Cæsar now  
 arbitrabatur neque legatos audiendos  
 , was thinking (that) neither ambassadors (ought) to be heard  
 sibi (dat.), neque condiciones accipiendas  
 by himself, nor conditions (ought) to be received  
 ab his, qui, pace petita, intulissent  
 from these, who, peace having been sought, had brought on  
 (pl. perf. subj.) bellum ultrò, per dolum  
 war voluntarily, through deceit  
 atque insidias (pl.). Verò judicabat esse  
 and treachery. But he was judging (that) to be  
 summæ dementiæ expectare, dum  
 [it was] (of) the highest madness to wait, until  
 copiæ hostium augerentur que  
 the forces of the enemy should be increased and (their)  
 equitatus reverteretur et infirmitate Gallorum  
 cavalry should return and the weakness of the Gauls  
 cognita, sentiebat quantum auctoritatis  
 having been known, he was perceiving how much (of) prestige  
 hostes consecuti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) apud eos  
 the enemy had obtained among them  
 uno praelio; quibus existimabat nihil<sup>24</sup>  
 by one battle; to whom he was judging nothing [not any]  
 spatii dandum ad capienda consilia.  
 of space [time] to [must] be given for taking counsels.  
 His rebus constitutis, et consilio  
 These things having been determined, and (his) plan  
 communicato cum legatis et  
 having been communicated with [to] the lieutenants and

quæstore,      opportunissîma      res      accîdit,  
 the quæstor,      a most advantageous      thing [incident]      occurred,  
 ne prætermittêret quem diem pugnæ, quòd  
 that he might not omit any day of [for] a battle, because  
     manè      postridie      ejus diei, Germani  
 in the morning      the day after      (of) this day,      the Germans,  
 frequentes,      .usi      et      eâdem      perfidiâ      et  
 in numbers,      having used      both      the same      treachery      and  
 simulatione,      omnibus      principibus      que  
 pretence,      all      (their) chiefs      and (those)  
 majoribus-natu      adhibitis,      venerunt ad  
 greater by birth [the elders]      having been brought,      came to  
 ěum in castra (pl.); sîmul,<sup>25</sup> ut dicebatur,  
 him into the camp;      as well,      as      it was said,  
     causâ      purgandi      sũi,      quòd      commisissent  
 for the sake      of clearing      themselves,      because      they had joined  
 (pl. perf. subj.) prælium pridie, (contrâ<sup>26</sup> atque  
     battle      the day before,      (contrary      as  
     dictum-esset (pl. perf. subj.),      et      ipsi  
 (it) had been said,      and (they)      themselves  
     petissent (pl. perf. subj.): sîmul ut impetrarent  
 had requested):      as      that      they might obtain  
 quid,      si      possent (imp. subj.),      fallendo  
 some (thing),      if      they could,      by deceiving  
     de      indutiis (pl.).      Quos      oblatos  
 concerning the truce.      (When) whom [they](were) presented  
     sibi      Cæsar      gavisus,<sup>27</sup>      jussit      illos  
 to himself      Cæsar,      having rejoiced,      commanded      them  
     retineri:      ipse      eduxit      omnes      copias  
 to be detained:      he himself      led out      all      (his) forces  
 castris (pl.);      jussit      equitatum      subséquì  
 from the camp;      he ordered      the cavalry      to follow near  
     agmen,      quòd      existimabat      perterritum-  
 the marching line,      because      he was thinking      (it) to have [had]  
 esse      recenti      præliò.  
 been alarmed      by the late      battle.

14. Triplîci acie institutâ, et itinère  
 A tripple battle line having been arranged, and a march

octo millium confecto celeriter, pervenit  
 of eight miles having been completed quickly, he arrived  
 ad castra (pl.) hostium, prius quam Germani  
 at the camp of the enemy, before (that) the Germans  
 possent sentire quid ageretur: qui<sup>28</sup> per-  
 were able to perceive what was transpiring: who having  
 territi subito omnibus rebus, et  
 been panicstricken suddenly by all the things, both  
 celeritate nostri adventus, et discessu  
 by the quickness of our arrival, and by the departure  
 suorum, neque spatium<sup>29</sup> dato  
 of their own (people), neither space [time] having been given  
 habendi, consilii neque capiendi arma,  
 of having [forming]. a plan nor of taking arms,  
 perturbantur, ne praestaret educere  
 are confused (as to) whether it would be better to lead out  
 copias adversus hostem, an defendere  
 (their) troops against the enemy, or to defend  
 castra, an peteret salutem fugam. Quum  
 the camp, or to seek safety by flight. When  
 quorum timor<sup>30</sup> significaretur (imp. subj.) fremitu  
 their fear was signified by the noise  
 et concursu, nostri milites incitati perfidia  
 and running, our soldiers impelled by the treachery  
 pristini diei, irruerunt in castra (pl): in  
 of the former day, broke in upon the camp in  
 quo loco, qui potuerunt capere arma  
 which place, (those) who were able to take arms  
 celeriter, restiterunt nostris (dat.) paulisper,  
 quickly, resisted our (men) a little while,  
 atque commiserunt praelium inter  
 and joined battle between [among]  
 carros que impedimenta. At reliqua  
 the wagons and baggage. But the remaining  
 multitudo puerorum que mulierum (nam  
 multitude of boys and (of) women (for  
 excesserant domo cum omnibus suis  
 they had departed from home with all their

que transiērant Rhenum,) cœpit fugēre  
 (people) and had crossed the Rhine,) ' began to flee  
 passim, ad consecrandos quos Cæsar misit  
 everywhere, for pursuing whom Cæsar sent

equitatum.  
 the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post  
 The Germans, a shout having been heard behind [in]  
 tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) suos  
 the back [the rear], when they were beholding their  
 interfici, armis abjectis  
 (people) (to be) slaughtered, (their) arms having been cast away  
 que militaribus signis relictis, ejecerunt  
 and the military standards having been left, hurled  
 se ex castris (pl.); et quum perven-  
 themselves from the camp; and when they had  
 issent (pl. perf. subj.) ad confluentem Mōsæ  
 arrived at the junction of the Meuse  
 et Rheni, reliquâ fugâ des-  
 and (of) the Rhine, remaining [further] flight having  
 peratâ, magno numēro interfecto,  
 been despaired of, a great number having been killed,  
 reliqui præcipitaverunt se in  
 the rest dashed themselves headlong into  
 flumen, atque oppressi ibi timore  
 the river, and having been overpowered there by fear  
 lassitudīne et vi fluminis,  
 by weariness and by the force of the river,  
 periērant. Omnes nostri incolūmes ad  
 they perished. All our (men) safe to  
 unum, perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt  
 one [to a man], very few having been wounded, betook  
 se in castris (pl.) ex timore  
 themselves into camp (freed) from the fear  
 tanti belli, quum numērus hostium fuisset  
 of so great a war, since the number of the enemy was  
 quadringentorum triginta millium capitum.  
 (of) four hundred thirty thousand of heads [souls].

Cæsar fecit potestem discedendi ïis,  
 Cæsar made power [an opportunity] of departing to those,  
 quos retinuërat in castris (pl.). Illi ver-  
 whom he had detained in the camp. They having  
 ïti supplicia que cruciatus Gallorum,  
 feared the punishments and tortures of the Gauls,  
 quorum agros vexaverant, dixerunt  
 whose lands they had harassed. said (that they)  
 se velle remanere apud eum. Cæsar  
 themselves (to) wish to remain at [with] him. Cæsar  
 concessit libertatem his.  
 granted the liberty [privilege] to them.

16. Germanico bello confecto, Cæsar de  
 The German war having been finished, Cæsar from  
 multis causis statuit Rhenum transeundum-esse  
 many causes resolved (that) the Rhine to [must] be crossed  
 sibi (dat.); quarum illa fuit justissima;<sup>31</sup>  
 by himself of which that [this] was the most just  
 quod, quum videret (imp. subj.) Germanos  
 [strongest] because, when he was seeing (that) the Germans  
 impelli tam facîle, ut venirent  
 to be [were] incited [impelled] so easily, that they should come  
 in Galliam, voluit eos timere suis  
 into Gaul, he wished them to fear for their own  
 rebus quodque, quum intelligerent  
 things [possessions] also, when they should understand (that)  
 exercitum Romani populi et posse  
 the army of the Roman people both to be [was] able  
 et audere transire Rhenum. Accessit<sup>32</sup>  
 and to dare [dared] to cross the Rhine. it was added  
 etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum  
 also, that that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes  
 et Tencterorum, quam commemoravi suprâ  
 and of the Tencteri, which I have mentioned above  
 transisse Mösam causâ prædandi que  
 (to have) crossed the Meuse for the sake of plundering and  
 frumentandi, neque interfuisse prælio,  
 of providing corn, nor (to have) [had] been present to [at] the bat-



receperat se trans Rhenum, post  
 tle, had betaken itself across the Rhine, after  
 fugam suorum in fines Sugambrorum,  
 the flight of their own (people) into the borders of the Sugambri,  
 que conjunxerat se cum his. Ad quos<sup>33</sup>  
 and had united itself with them. To whom  
 quum Cæsar misisset (pl. perf. subj.) nuncios, qui  
 when Cæsar had sent messengers, who  
 postularent, uti dederent sibi eos,  
 should demand, that they should surrender to himself those,  
 qui intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sibi  
 who had borne war to [on] himself  
 que Galliæ, responderunt: "Rhenum finire  
 and to [on] Gaul, they answered: "the Rhine to end [terminates]  
 imperium Romani populi: si existimaret<sup>34</sup>  
 the empire of the Roman people; if he should judge (it)  
 non æquum Germanos transire in Galliam,  
 not just (that) the Germans to [should] cross over into Gaul,  
 se invito, cur postularet  
 he himself (being) unwilling, why should he require (that)  
 quidquam sui imperii aut potestatis esse  
 any of his empire or power to [should] be  
 trans Rhenum? Autem Ubii, qui uni ex  
 across the Rhine? But the Ubii, who one [alone] from [of]  
 Transrhenanis miserant legatos ad Cæsarem,  
 the Over-Rhine (nations) had sent ambassadors to Cæsar,  
 fecerant amicitiam, dederant obsides, orbant  
 had made friendship, had given hostages, were praying  
 magnopere, ut ferret auxilium sibi,  
 very greatly, that he would bear aid to themselves,  
 quod premerentur (imp. subj.) graviter ab Suevis:  
 because they were oppressed grievously by the Suevi:  
 vel, si prohiberetur facere id occupationibus  
 or, if he should be hindered to [from] doing this by the engagements  
 rei publicæ, modo transportaret Rhenum  
 of the state, only (that) he would carry over the Rhine  
 exercitum: id futurum satis sibi  
 (his) army: that about to [would] be enough to themselves

ad auxiliū que spem reliqui tempōris :  
for aid and hope of [for] the remaining time :

tantum esse nomen atque opinionem  
so great to be [is] the name and opinion [repute]

Romani exercītūs, Ariovisto pulso,<sup>35</sup>  
of a Roman army, Ariovistus having been routed,

et hoc novissīmo prœliō factō,  
and this newest [last] battle having been done [fought],

etiā ad ultīmas nationes Germanorum, ūtī  
even to the remotest nations of the Germans, that

possint esse tuti opinione et  
they may be able to be safe by the opinion [repute] and

amicitiā Romani popūli." Pollicebantur  
friendship of the Roman people." They were promising

magnam copiām navīum ad transportandum  
a great supply of ships for transporting

exercītum.  
the army.

17. Cæsar de his causis, quas commemoravi,  
Cæsar from these causes, which I have mentioned,

decreverat transire Rhenum : sed arbitrabatur  
had resolved to cross the Rhine : but he was judging (that)

nēque esse sātis tutum transire navibus,  
neither (it) to be [was] sufficiently safe to cross with ships,

nēque statuebat esse sūæ  
nor was he considering (that) to be [it was] (worthy) of his own

dignitatis, nēque Romani popūli : itaque,  
dignity, nor (that) of the Roman people : therefore,

etsi summa difficultas faciundi pontis  
although the highest [greatest] difficulty of making a bridge

proponebatur, propter latitudīnem, rapiditatem,  
was confronting (him), on account of the breadth, swiftness,

que altitudīnem fluminis ; tamen existimabat  
and depth of the river : yet he was thinking

id contendendum sibi, aut aliter  
this to [must] be attempted by himself, or otherwise

exercītum non transducendum. Igītur  
the army not to [must not] be led over. Therefore

instituit hanc rationem pontis. Jungebat  
 he formed this plan of the bridge He was joining  
 bina sesquipedalia tigna, paulum præacuta  
 double [two] foot and half thick beams, a little sharp pointed  
 ab imo, dimensa ad  
 from [at] the lowest (part), measured to [according to]  
 altitudinem fluminis, intervallo duorum pedum  
 the depth of the river, with a distance of two feet  
 inter se: cum defixerat hæc  
 between themselves [them]; when he had fastened these  
 demissa in flumen machinationibus que adegērat  
 let down into the river by machines and had driven  
 fistucis, non directa ad perpendiculum  
 (them) with pile drivers, not straight to a perpendicular  
 modo publicæ, sed prone ac fastigate,  
 in the manner of a pile, but inclining and sloping,  
 ut procumbērent secundum naturam  
 that they might lean forward according to the nature [flow]  
 fluminis: statuebat item duo contraria  
 of the river: he was setting up also two (beams) opposite  
 his juncta ad eundem modum intervallo  
 (to) these joined to [after] the same manner with an interval  
 quadragenum pedum ab inferiore parte conversa  
 of forty feet from the lower part turned  
 contra vim atque impetum fluminis: utraque  
 against the force and pressure of the river: both  
 hæc distinebantur binis fibulis utrimque  
 these were separated by two clamps on either side  
 ab extrema parte, bipedalibus trabibus  
 from [at] the extreme part [the top], two foot wide beams  
 immissis, quantum junctura eorum  
 having been let in (to them), as much as the joint of these  
 tignorum distabat: quibus<sup>36</sup> disclusis,  
 beams was apart: which having been separated,  
 atque revinctis in contrariam partem  
 and having been fastened on the opposite part [side]  
 tanta erat firmitudo operis, atque hæc  
 so great was the firmness of the work, and this [such]

natura rerum, ut quò-major vis  
the nature of the things [parts], that the greater the force

āquæ incitavisset se, hōc arctiūs  
of the water roused itself [increased], so much the more closely

tenerentur (imp. subj.) illigata: hæc directa  
they were kept fastened: these laid straight

contexebantur materiâ injectâ,  
were interwoven with material [timber] thrown on (them),

ac consternebante longuriis que cratibus:  
and were strewed with long poles and hurdles:

ac nihilo seciūs subliçæ adigebantur obliquè  
and in no wise [likewise] piles were driven obliquely

ad inferiorem partem fluminis,<sup>37</sup> quæ sub-  
at the lower part of the river, which having been

jectæ pro pariète, et conjunctæ cum  
put below for [as] a wall, and united with

omni opère, excipèrent vim fluminis:  
all the work, [would] receive the force of the river:

et item aliæ mediocri spatio supra  
and also other (piles) at a moderate distance above

ponteni, ut si trunci arbōrum sive naves  
the bridge, so that if trunks of trees or ships

essent missæ à barbāris, causâ  
should be sent by the barbarians, for the sake

dejiciendi, opëris vis earum rerum  
of casting down, the work the force of these things

minueretur his defensoribus, neu  
would be diminished by these defenses, nor

nocerent ponti (dat).  
would they injure the bridge.

18. Omni opère effecto dēcem  
All the work having been completed in ten

diebus, quibus materiâ cœpta-erat comportari,  
days, in which the material had been begun to be gathered,

exercitus transducitur. Cæsar, firmo præsidio  
the army is led over. Cæsar, a strong guard

relicto ad utramque partem pontis,  
having been left at each part [end] of the bridge,

contendit in fines Sugambrorum. Intērim  
 hastened into the territories of the Sugambri. Meantime  
 legati à compluribus civitatibus veniunt  
 ambassadors from very many states come  
 ad eum, quibus petentibus pacem atque  
 to him, to whom seeking peace and  
 amicitiam respondit liberaliter, que jubet obsides  
 friendship he answered generously, and orders hostages  
 adduci ad se. Sugambri, ex eo  
 to be brought to himself. The Sugambri, from this [that]  
 tempore, quod pons coeptus est institui,  
 time, in which the bridge was begun to be built,  
 fugam comparata, his hortantibus,  
 flight having been prepared, these exhorting (them),  
 quos habebant ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus  
 whom they were having from the Tencteri and Usipetes  
 apud se, excesserant suis finibus,  
 at [among] themselves, had departed from their territories,  
 que exportaverant omnia sua, que  
 and had carried away all their (effects), and  
 abdidērant se in solitudinem ac  
 had concealed themselves in the desert and  
 silvas.  
 woods.

19. Cæsar innotatus paucos dies in eorum  
 Cæsar having delayed a few days in their  
 finibus omnibus vicis que ædificiis  
 territories all the villages and buildings  
 incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succissis,  
 having been burned, and the corn (having been) cut down.  
 recepit se in fines Ubiorum; atque  
 betook himself into the territories of the Ubii; and  
 pollicitus suum auxilium his, si preme-  
 having promised his aid to them, if they should  
 rentur à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab  
 be oppressed by the Suevi, he learned these (things) from  
 his; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pl. perf.  
 them; (that) the Suevi, after (that) they had found



subj.) per exploratores pontem fieri,  
 by spies (that) a bridge to be [was] made,  
 concilio habito, suo more, dimisis-  
 a council having been held, in their manner, to have [had]  
 se nuntios in omnes partes, uti demig-  
 sent messengers into all parts, that they might  
 rarent de oppidis, deponerent liberos,  
 emigrate from the towns. might deposit (their) children,  
 uxores, que omnia sua in silvas,  
 wives, and all their (effects) into [in] the woods,  
 atque omnes, qui possent ferre arma,  
 and all, who were able to bear arms,  
 convenirent in unum locum: hunc  
 should assemble into [in] one place: (that) this (place)  
 delectum-esse fere medium earum  
 to have [had] been chosen nearly the middle of these  
 regionum, quas Suevi obtinerent (imp. subj.):  
 countries, which the Suevi were possessing: (that)  
 exspectare hic adventum Romanorum, atque  
 to [they] await here the approach of the Romans, and  
 constituisse decertare ibi. Quod ubi  
 to have [had] resolved to fight there. Which when  
 Cæsar compërit, omnibus his rebus  
 Cæsar discovered, all these things [matters]  
 confectis, causâ quarum rerum con-  
 having been completed for the sake of which things he had  
 stituërat transducere exercitum, ut injiceret  
 resolved to lead over (his) army, that he might arouse  
 metum Germanis, ut ulcisceretur  
 fear to [in] the Germans, that he might punish  
 Sugambros, ut liberaret Ubios obsidione,  
 the Sugambri, that he might deliver the Ubi from a blockade,  
 octodëcim diebus omnino consumptis trans  
 eighteen days altogether being spent across  
 Rhenum, arbitratus profectum (esse)  
 the Rhine, having thought (that) to have [he had] accomplished  
 satis et ad laudem et ad  
 enough both to [for] praise and to [for]

utilitatem,           recepit       se       in       Galliã   que  
advantage [utility],   he betook   himself   into   Gaul     and

rescldit       pontem.  
cut down       the bridge.

20. Exiguã       parte       æstatis       reliquã,  
A small       part       of the summer   having been left,

Cæsar,       etsi       hiemes       in       his       locis   sunt  
Cæsar,       although   the winters   in       these   places   are

maturã,       (quòd       omnis       Galliã   vergit   ad  
early,       (because   all       Gaul     lies     to

Septentrionem),   tãmen   contendit   proficisci   in  
the North),       yet       hastened   to set out   into

Britanniã;   quòd       intelligebat       auxilia  
Britain;       because   he was understanding   (that) auxiliaries

subministrata (esse)       inde   nostris   hostibus,  
to have [had] been supplied   from there   to our   enemies,

fère omnibus Gallicis bellis: et, si tempus  
in nearly   all       the Gallie   wars:   and,   if   the time

anni       deficeret   ad gerendum bellum; tãmen  
of the year   should fail   to   carry on   war;   yet

arbitrabatur       före       magno   usũ  
he was thinking (it)   to be about to [would] be   for [of] great   use [ad-

vantage] to himself,   if       only       he should visit   the island,

perspexisset gẽnus hominum, cognovisset loca,  
should observe   the kind       of men,       should learn   the places,

portus,       aditus:       quæ       fère       omnia   erant  
harbors.       approaches;   which       nearly   all       were

incognita Gallis. Enim nẽque quisquam ãdit  
unknown   to the Gauls.   For   neither   any one   goes

illò       temère   præter   mercatores;   nẽque   est  
thither       rashly   except   merchants;   nor       is

quidquam       notum       iis       ipsis,       præter  
any (thing)   known       to these   themselves,   except

maritimam oram, atque eas regiones, quæ  
the maritime   coast,       and       these   countries,   which

sunt       contra   Galliã.   Itãque,   mercatoribus  
are       opposite   Gaul.   Therefore,   the merchants

convocatis undique ad se,  
 having been called together from every side to himself,  
 potērat reperire nēque quanta esset  
 he was able to find neither how great might be  
 magnitudo insulæ, nēque quæ aut quantæ  
 the size of the island, nor what or how great  
 nationes incolērent, nēque quem usum  
 nations might inhabit (it), nor what method  
 belli haberent, aut quibus (abl.) institutis  
 of warfare they might have, or what customs  
 uterentur, nēque qui portus essent idonei  
 they might use, nor what harbors might be suitable  
 ad multitudīnem majorum navium.  
 for a number of the larger ships.

21. Arbitratus esse idoneum, prius quàm  
 Having thought (it) to be [was] proper, before (that)

faceret periculum, præmittit Caium  
 he should make the trial, he sends before (him) Caius

Volusenum cum longâ navi, ad  
 Volusenus with a long ship [war ship], for

cognoscenda hæc. Mandat huic (dat.) ut,  
 ascertaining these (things). He charges him that,

omnibus rebus exploratis, revertatur  
 all things having been reconitered, he should return

ad se quam primùm. Ipse proficiscitur  
 to himself as soon as possible. He himself sets out

cum omnibus copiis in Morinos, quòd  
 with all (his) forces into the Morini, because

trajectus inde in Britanniam erat brevissimus.  
 the passage from there into Britain was the shortest.

Jūbet naves convenire huc undique ex  
 He orders ships to assemble hither from everywhere from

finitimis regionibus, et classem, quam  
 the neighboring countries, and the fleet, which

fecerat ad Veneticum bellum superiore  
 he had made for the Venetian war in the preceding

æstate. Intērim ejus consilio cognitō,  
 summer. Meantime his design having been known [learned],

et perlatō ad Britannos per  
 and having been reported to the Britons through  
 mercatores, legati veniunt ad eum à  
 the merchants, ambassadors came to him from  
 compluribus civitatibus ejus insulæ, qui  
 very many states of this island, who  
 polliceantur dare obsides, atque obtemperare  
 promise to give hostages, and to obey  
 imperio (dat.) Romani populi. Quibus auditis,  
 the empire of the Roman people. Whom having been heard,  
 pollicitus liberaliter, que hortatus  
 having promised generously, and having exhorted (them)  
 ut permanerent in eâ sententiâ remisit  
 that they should continue in this determination he sent  
 eos domum: et unâ cum his mittit  
 them (back) home: and together with these he sends  
 Commium, quem ipse contulerat regem  
 Commius, whom (he) himself had appointed king  
 ibi, Atrebatibus superatis, et cujus  
 there, the Atrebatians having been overcome, and whose  
 virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem  
 valor and discretion he was approving, and whom  
 arbitrabatur fidelem sibi, que cujus auctoritas  
 he was thinking faithful to himself, and whose authority  
 habebatur magna in his regionibus:  
 was held [considered] great in these countries:  
 imperat huic (dat.), adeat quas civitates  
 he commands him, (that) he should visit what states  
 possit, que hortetur ut sequantur  
 he may be able, and should exhort (them) that they follow  
 fidem Romani populi, que nun-  
 [accept] the faith of the Roman people, and he should  
 t̄t̄et se venturum eò celeriter.  
 announce (that he) himself about [was] to come there quickly.  
 Volusenus, regionibus<sup>38</sup> perspectis, quantum  
 Volusenus, the countries having been reconnoitered, as much  
 facultatis potuit dari ei, qui  
 (of) opportunity (as) was able to be given to him, who

non auderet egredi navi, ac  
might not dare to disembark from the ship, and

committĕre se barbāris, revertitur quinto  
to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns on the fifth

dĕ ad Cæsārem, que renuntiat quæ  
day to Cæsar, and announces what (things)

perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) ĭbi.  
he had discovered there.

22. Dum Cæsar commoratur in his lōcis  
While Cæsar delays in these places

causâ parandarum navium, legati venerunt  
for the sake of preparing ships, ambassadors came

ad ĕum ex magnâ parte Morinorum, que  
to him from a great part of the Morini, who

excusarent se de consilio<sup>39</sup> superioris  
excused themselves concerning the design of the former

tempōris; quòd barbāri homĭnes que  
time; because (being) barbarous men and

imperiti nostræ consuetudinĭs (gen.), fecis-  
unacquainted with our custom, they had

sent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum Romano populo;  
made war [on] the Roman people;

que pollicerentur se facturos  
and promised (that they) themselves about to [would] do

ĕa, quæ imperāasset. Cæsar arbitratus  
these (things), which he commanded. Cæsar having thought

hoc accidisse opportunè sātis sĭbi;  
this to have [had] happened conveniently enough for himself;

quòd volebat nēque relinquĕre hostem  
because he was wishing neither to leave an enemy

post tergum, nēque habebat facultatem  
behind (his) back, nor was he having the means

gerendi belli propter tempus anni;  
of carrying on war on account of the time of the year;

nēque iudicabat has occupationes tan-  
nor was he judging (that) these engagements of so

tularum rerum antepōendas sĭbi (dat.)  
trifling things [matters] to [should] be preferred by himself



Britannię : impërat his magnum numërum  
 to Britain: he demands from them a great number  
 obsïdum. Quïbus<sup>40</sup> adductis, recepit ëos  
 of hostages. Whom having been brought, he received them  
 in fïdem. Circïter octoginta onerariïs  
 into allegiance. About eighty burden [transport]  
 navïbus coactis que contractis,  
 ships having been collected and brought together,  
 quot existimabat esse sätis ad  
 as many as he was thinking to be [was] sufficient for  
 transportandas duas legiones, distribuit quæs-  
 transporting two legions, he distributed to the  
 tori, legatis que præfectis quod  
 quæstor, to the lieutenants and perfects what(ever)  
 longarum navïum præterëa habebat: huc  
 (of) long ships [war ships] besides he was having: hither  
 accedebant octodëcim onerarię naves,  
 [to these] were added eighteen burden [transport] ships,  
 quas tenebantur vento octo millibus  
 which were detained by the wind eight thousand  
 passum ex ëo loco, quò minùs possent  
 (of) paces from this place, that they were the less [not] able  
 pervenire in eundem portum: distribuit  
 to arrive into [at] the same harbor: he distributed  
 has equitibus; dedit reliquum exercitum  
 these to the horsemen: he gave the rest of the army  
 Quinto Tituriõ Sabino, et Lucio Aurunculeõ  
 to Quintus Titurius Sabinus, and to Lucius Aurunculeius  
 Cottæ, legatis, deducendum in Menapiõs  
 Cotta, (his) lieutenants, to be led down into the Menapii  
 atque in ëos pagos Morinorum, ab  
 and into these cantons of the Morini, from  
 quibus legati non vënerant ad ëum.  
 which ambassadors had not come to him:  
 jussit Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum  
 he ordered Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant  
 tenere portum cum ëo præsidio,  
 to hold the harbor with this guard.

quod	arbitrabatur	esse	sătis.
which	he was thinking	to be [was]	sufficient.
23. His	rebus constitutis,	nactus	idonęam
These	things having been arranged,	having got	suitable
tempestatem	navigandum,	solvit	fęrę
weather	for sailing,	he cast loose	nearly
tertĭā	vigiliā, que	jussit	equĭtes
at the third	watch, and	commanded	the cavalry
in	ulteriorem portum,	et conscendęre	naves,
to	the farther harbor,	and to board	the ships,
ac	sęqui se: ab	quĭbus <sup>41</sup>	cũm
and	to follow himself: by	whom	when
tratum-esset (pl. perf. subj)		paulò	tardiũs,
performed		a little	more slowly,
ipse	attĭgit	Britanniām	cum primis
(he) himself	touched [reached]	Britain	with the first
navĭbus	circĭter quartā	horā (abl.)	diei: atque
ships	about the fourth	hour	of the day: and
ĭbi	conspexit	copĭas	hostĭum
there	he beheld	the forces	of the enemy
armatas,			armed,
expositas	in omnĭbus	collĭbus.	Cujus lōci
drawn up	on all	the hills.	Of which place
hęc	ęrat	natura:	māre
this	was	the nature:	the sea
continebatur			was bounded
montĭbus	ita anguste,	ut telum	posset
by heights	so closely,	that a weapon	might be able
	adjĭci	ex superiorĭbus	lōcis in
[could]	(to) be cast	from the higher	places upon
littus.	Arbitratus	hunc lōcum	nequaquam
the shore.	Having thought	this place	by no means
idonęum	ad egrediendum	expectavit	in anchōri
suitable	for disembarking	he waited	in [at] anchor
(pl.)	ad nonam	horam,	dum reliquę
	to the ninth	hour,	until the remaining
naves	convenirent	ęd.	Intęrim
ships	should assemble	there.	Meantime
			legatis
			the lieutenants
que	tribunis	militum	convocatis,
and	tribunes	of soldiers	having been called together,

ostendit he showed (them)	et both	quæ what (things)	cognovisset (pl. perf.) he had learned		
subj.)	ex from	Voluseno, Volusenus,	et and	quæ what	vellet he wished
fieri: to be done:	que and	monuit he warned (that)	omnes all	res things	
administrarentur should be managed	ab by	his them	ad at	nutum the nod	et ad and to [on]
tempus time	ut as	ratio <sup>42</sup> the method	militaris of military	rei (sing.), affairs,	
maximè (and) especially	ut as	maritimæ maritime	res affairs	postularent were demanding,	
(imp. subj.),	(ut (as	quæ which [they]	haberent (imp. subj.) were having		
celèrem a quick	atque and	instabilem unsteady	motum.) movement.)	His These	
dimissis, having been dismissed,	et and	nactus having got	et both	secundum a favorable	
ventum wind	et and	ætum tide	uno at one	tempore, time,	signo a signal
dato, having been given,	et and	anchoris the anchors	sublatis, having been taken up		
[weighed],	progressus having advanced	circiter about	octo eight	millia thousand	
passum (of) paces	ab from	eo loco, this place,	constituit he stood [stationed]	naves the ships	
aperto against an open	ac and	plano level	littore. shore.		
24. At But	barbari, the barbarians,	consilio the design	Romanorum of the Romans		
cognito, having been known.	equitatu the cavalry	præmisso, having been sent before, and	et and		
essedariis; the charioteers;	quo which	genere (abl.) kind [means]	consueverunt they have been accustomed		
plerumque generally	uti to use	in in	præliis, battles,	subsecuti having followed near	
reliquis with the rest of	copiis, (their) forces,	prohibebant they were hindering	nostros our (men)		

egrēdi navibus. Erat  
 to come out [from disembarking] from the ships. (There) was  
 summa difficultas ob has causas, quòd  
 the highest [greatest] difficulty for these reasons, because  
 naves, propter magnitudinem non potērant  
 the ships, on account of (their) size were not able  
 constitūti nisi in alto: autem et erat  
 to be stationed unless in the deep: moreover both it was  
 desiliendum<sup>43</sup> simul de navibus,  
 to [it must] be leaped down at the same time from the ships,  
 et consistendum fluctibus, et pugnandum  
 and to [must] be stood in the waves, and to [must] be fought  
 cum hostibus militibus, ignotis locis,  
 with the enemy by the soldiers, in unknown places,  
 impeditis manibus, pressis magno et  
 with encumbered hands, oppressed with a great and  
 grāvi onēre armorum; quum illi<sup>44</sup> conjiērent (imp.  
 heavy load of arms: while they were hurling  
 subj.) tela audacter aut ex arido aut  
 weapons boldly either from dry (ground) or  
 progressi paulum in āquam, expediti  
 having advanced a little into the water, unencumbered  
 omnibus membris, notissimis locis, et  
 in all (their) limbs, in very well known places, and  
 incitarent (imp. subj.) ēquos insuefactos.  
 were urging on the horses accustomed to (it).  
 Quibus rebus nostri perterrīti, atque  
 By which things our (men) being dismayed, and  
 imperiti omnino hujus genēris pugnæ, omnes  
 unskilled altogether of [in] this kind of battle, all  
 nitebantur non eādem alacritate ac studio,  
 were striving not with the same eagerness and zeal,  
 (abl.), quo (abl.) consueverant uti in  
 which they had been accustomed to use in  
 pedestribus prœliis.  
 infantry battles.  
 25. Quod<sup>45</sup> ūbi Cæsar animadvertit, jussit  
 Which when Cæsar perceived, he ordered

longas naves species quarum et  
 the long ships [war ships], the appearance of which both  
 erat inusitatior barbâris, et motus  
 was more unusual to the barbarians, and the motion  
 expeditior ad usum, removeri paulum ab  
 more easily for use, to be removed a little from  
 onerariis navibus, et incitari  
 the burden [transport] ships, and to be impelled  
 remis, et constitui ad apertum latus  
 with oars, and to be stationed at the open flank  
 hostium, atque hostes propelli ac  
 of the enemy, and the enemy to be repulsed and  
 submoveri inde fundis, tormentis,  
 to be removed from there by slings, shooting engines,  
 sagittis; quæ res fuit magno usui  
 arrows; which thing [means] was for [of] great use  
 nostris. Nam barbâri permoti et  
 to our (men). For the barbarians much alarmed both  
 figurâ navium, et motu remorum,  
 by the shape of the ships, and by the motion of the oars,  
 et inusitato genere tormentorum, constit-  
 and by the unusual kind of the shooting engines, halt-  
 erunt, ac retulerunt pedem paulum. Ac,  
 ed, and retraced (their) foot [steps] a little. And,  
 nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter  
 our soldiers delaying, chiefly on account of  
 altitudinem maris, qui ferebat aquilam  
 the depth of the sea, (he) who was bearing the eagle  
 decimæ legionis, obtestatus deos, ut ea  
 of the tenth legion, having implored the gods, that this  
 res eveniret feliciter legioni: inquit,  
 thing might happen fortunately to the legion: says,  
 "Desilite, commilitones, nisi vultis prodere  
 "Jump down! fellow soldiers, unless you wish to betray  
 aquilam hostibus; ego certe præstitero  
 the eagle to the enemy; I certainly shall have performed  
 meum officium rei publicæ atque Imperatori."  
 my duty to the republic and to (my) Commander."



Quum dixisset (pl. perf. subj.) hoc magnâ  
When he had said this with a great [loud]

voce, projecit se ex navi, atque  
voice, he cast himself (forth) from the ship, and

cœpit ferre aquilam in hostes. Tum  
began to bear the eagle against the enemy. Then

nostri cohortati inter se,  
our (men) having encouraged among themselves [each other],

universi desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum  
every one leaped down from the ship, lest so great

dedêcus admitteretur. Quum alii item ex  
a disgrace should be allowed. When others also from

proximis navibus conspexissent (pl. perf. subj.) hos,  
the nearest ships beheld these,

subsecuti appropinquârunt hostibus (dat.).  
having followed close they approached the enemy.

26. Pugnatum-est<sup>46</sup> acriter ab utrisque (plur.)  
It was fought vigorously by each

Tâmen nostri perturbabantur magnopere, quod  
However our (men) were disordered [confused] very greatly, because

poterant neque servare ordines, neque  
they were able neither to keep (their) ranks, nor

insistere firmiter, neque subsequi signa,  
to stand firmly, nor to follow the standards (closely),

atque alius ex aliâ navi  
and one from one (another from another) ship

aggregabat se quibuscumque signis occurreret.  
was attaching himself to whatever standards he should meet.

Verò hostes, omnibus vadis notis,  
But the enemy, all the shallows having been [being] known,

ubi conspexerant ex littore aliquos  
when they had beheld from the shore some

egredientes singulares ex navi, equis  
coming out single [singly] from a ship, (their) horses

incitatis, adoriebantur impeditos.  
(having been) urged on, were attacking (them) encumbered.

Plures circumstebant paucos: alii  
More [several] were surrounding a few: others

conjiciebant tela in universos ab aperto  
 were hurling (their) weapons upon the whole [the mass] from the open  
 latère. Quod quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl.  
 flank Which when Cæsar had observed,  
 perf. subj.), jussit scâphas longarum navium,  
 he ordered the skiffs of the long ships,  
 [war ships], item speculatoria-navigia compleri  
 likewise the spy-boats to be filled  
 militibus; et submittebat subsidia his,  
 with soldiers, and he was sending aid to these,  
 quos conspexerat laborantes. Nostri simul-  
 whom he had beheld laboring. Our (men) as soon  
 atque constiterunt in arido, omnibus  
 as they stood on dry (ground), all  
 suis consecutis, fecerunt impetum  
 their (comrades) having followed, made a charge  
 in hostes, atque dederunt eos in  
 upon the enemy, and gave [put] them to  
 fugam: neque potuerunt prossequi longius  
 flight: nor were they able to pursue rather far  
 quod equites non potuerant tenere  
 because the horsemen had not been able to hold  
 cursum, atque capere insulam. Hoc  
 (their) course, and to take [reach] the island. This  
 unum defuit Cæsari ad pristinam  
 one (thing) was wanting to Cæsar for (his) former  
 fortunam.  
 good fortune.

27. Hostes, superati proelio,  
 The enemy, having been overcome in the battle,  
 miserunt statim legatos ad Cæsarem de  
 sent immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about  
 pace, simul-atque receperunt se ex  
 peace, as soon as they recovered themselves from  
 fugâ; polliciti-sunt sese daturos  
 flight; they promised (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 obsides, que facturos quæ imperasset.  
 hostages, and about to [would] do what he might command.

Commiſus Atrēbas venit unà cum his  
 Commius the Atrebatian came together with these  
 legatis, quem demonstravēram suprā prēmīss-  
 ambassadors. whom I had shown above to have [had]  
 um (-esse) in Britannīam: illi comprehendērant  
 been sent before into Britain: they had seized  
 hunc egressum è navi, quum deferret  
 him having disembarked from the ships, when he was bearing,  
 (imp. subj.) modo oratoris mandata  
 in the character of an envoy, the commands  
 Cæsaris ad eos, atque coniecērant in  
 of Cæsar to them, and had thrown (him) into  
 vincula. Tum prœliō factō,  
 chains. Then the battle having been done [fought],  
 remisērunt et in petenda pace contulerunt  
 they sent (him) back and in seeking peace they laid  
 culpam ejus rēi in multitudīnem, et  
 the blame of this thing upon the multitude, and  
 petiverunt, ut ignosceretur propter  
 sought, that it might be pardoned on account of  
 imprudentīam. Cæsar questus quōd quum  
 ignorance. Cæsar, having complained that when  
 petīssent (pl. perf. subj.) pacem à se,  
 they had sought peace from himself,  
 legatis missis ultrò in continentem,  
 ambassadors having been sent voluntarily into [to] the continent,  
 intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) bellum sine causâ,  
 they had waged war without cause,  
 dixit ignoscere imprudentiæ,<sup>47</sup> que  
 said to [he would] pardon (their) indiscretion, and  
 imperavit obsīdes: partem quorum illi dederunt  
 demanded hostages: part of whom they gave  
 stătim: dixerunt sese daturos  
 immediately: they said (that they) themselves about to [would] give  
 paucis diebus partem arcessitam ex longinqui-  
 in a few days a part sent for from more  
 oribus locis. Interēa jusserunt suos  
 distant places. Meantime they ordered their (people)

remigrare in agros; que principes  
to return into [to] the lands [country]; and the chiefs

cœpèrunt convenêre undique et commendâre  
began to assemble from every side and to recommend

se que suas civitates Cæsari.  
themselves and their states to Cæsar.

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus,  
Peace having been established by these things,

octodêcim naves de quibus demonstratum-est  
the eighteen ships concerning which it had been shown

suprà, quæ sustulêrant equites, solverunt  
above, which had taken up [embarked] the cavalry, cast loose

ex superiore portu leni vento, quar-  
from the upper harbor with a gentle wind, the

tum dîem post<sup>48</sup> quàm ventum-est in  
fourth day after that it was come [they came] into

Britanniâ: quum quæ appropinquarent  
Britain: when which [these] were approaching

(imp. subj.) Britannæ (dat), et viderentur (imp.  
Britain, and were seen

subj.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas  
from the camp, so great a storm

subitò coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp.  
suddenly arose, that no one of them was able

subj.) tenere cursum, sed aliæ referrentur  
to hold the course, but some were carried back

(imp. subj.) eòdem unde profectæ èrant;  
to the same (place) whence they had set out;

aliæ dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem  
others were cast down [driven] to the lower

partem insulæ, quæ est propiùs occasum  
part of the island, which is nearer the setting

solis cum suo magno pericùlo quæ<sup>49</sup>  
of the sun [the west] with their great danger which [they]

tâmen, ânchõris jactis, cùm complerentur  
however, anchors having been cast, when they were filled

(imp. subj.) fluctibus, propectæ necessariò  
with the waves, having been borne out necessarily

in altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt  
 into the deep in an unfavorable night, they sought  
 continentem.  
 the continent.

29. Accidit eâdem nocte, ut luna  
 It happened in the same night, that the moon  
 esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dñes con-  
 was full, which day has been

suevit efficere maximos maritimos æstus  
 accustomed to produce the greatest maritime tides

in oceáno; que id erat incognitum nostris.  
 in the ocean; and this was unknown to our

Ita æstus complebat uno tempore  
 (men). Thus the tide was filling at one time

et longas naves, (quibus<sup>50</sup> Cæsar  
 both the long ships [war ships], (in which Cæsar

curaverat exercitum transportandum)  
 had taken care (that) the army to [should] be carried over)

quas Cæsar subduxerat in aridum; et  
 which Cæsar had drawn up on dry (ground); and

tempestas afflictabat onerarias, quæ deligatæ-  
 the storm was shattering the transports, which had been

erant ad anchoras (pl.): neque ulla facultas  
 fastened at anchor nor any opportunity

aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur  
 either of managing or of aiding was given

nostris. Compluribus navibus fractis,  
 to our (men). Very many ships having been broken

quum reliquæ essent (imp. subj.) inutiles  
 [wrecked], since the rest were useless

ad navigandum, funibus, anchoris, que  
 for sailing, ropes [cables], anchors, and

reliquis armamentis (pl.) amissis, magna  
 the remaining rigging having been lost, a great

perturbatio totius exercitus facta-est, (id  
 alarm of the whole army was occasioned, (this

quod erat necesse accidere). Enim neque  
 which was inevitable to happen). For neither



ěrant alię naves, quibus possent (imp.  
 were (there) other ships, by which they were able  
 subj.) reportari; et omnia<sup>51</sup> deęrant,  
 to be carried back; and all (things) were wanting,  
 quę essent usũ ad reficiendas; naves  
 which would be for [of] use for repairing; ships  
 et quod constabat omnibus oportere  
 and because it was evident to all (it) to be [was] expedient  
 hiemare in Gallia, frumentum non provisum  
 to winter in Gaul, corn had not been  
 ěrat in his locis in hiemem.  
 provided in these places against the winter.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britannię,  
 Which things having been known, the chiefs of Britain,  
 qui post pręlium convenęrant ad Cæsarem<sup>52</sup>  
 who after the battle had come together to Cæsar  
 collocti inter se; quum intelligęrent  
 having conferred among themselves; when they were understanding  
 (imp. subj.) ěquites, et naves et frumentum  
 (that) horsemen, and ships and corn  
 deesse Romanis, et cognoscęrent (imp.  
 to be [were] wanting to the Romans, and were ascertaining  
 subj.) paucitatem nostrorum militum ex exiguitate  
 the fewness of our soldiers from the smallness  
 castrorum (pl.); quę etiám ěrant (pl.) angustiora  
 of the camp; which also was more narrow  
 hęc, quod Cæsar transportavęrat  
 from this fact, because Cæsar had brought over  
 legiones sine impedimentis; duxerunt esse  
 the legions without baggage; considered (this) to be [was]  
 optimum factu, rebellione facta, prohibere  
 best to be done, a revolt having been made, to prevent  
 nostros frumento que comæatu, et producęre  
 our (men) from corn and provisions, and to prolong  
 rem in hiemem; quod his superatis,  
 the thing [campaign] into the winter; because these having been  
 aut interclusis reditu, confidebant  
 overcome. or intercepted from a return, they were trusting (that)

nemīnem                      postĕa                      transiturum                      in  
no one                      afterwards                      about to [would] cross over                      into

Britanniām                      causā                      inferendi                      belli.                      Itāque,  
Britain                      for the sake                      of waging                      war.                      Therefore,

conjuratiōne                      factā                      rursus,                      cœperunt  
a conspiracy                      having been made                      again,                      they began

discedĕre                      paulatim                      ex                      castris (pl.),                      ac  
to depart                      little by little                      from                      the camp,                      and

deducĕre                      clam                      sũos                      ex                      agris.  
to lead out                      secretly                      their (men)                      from                      the fields.

31. At Cæsar,                      etsi                      nondum,                      cognovĕrat  
But Cæsar,                      although                      he had not yet,                      known

eorum                      consilia                      tamen                      suspicabatur                      id  
their                      plans                      however                      he was suspecting                      (that) this

fõre,                      quod                      accidit, et ex                      eventu  
to be about to [would] be,                      which                      happened, both from                      the fate

suarum                      navium,                      et                      ex                      ěo,                      quòd  
of his                      ships,                      and                      from                      this (fact),                      because

intermisĕrant                      dāre                      obsides.                      Itāque  
they had omitted [failed]                      to give                      hostages.                      Therefore

comparabat                      subsidia (pl.)                      ad                      omnes                      casus:  
he was preparing                      aid [remedies]                      for                      all                      crises:

nam et                      conferebat                      frumentum                      quotidie ex  
for both                      he was bringing                      corn                      daily                      from

agris                      in                      castra; (pl.) et                      utebatur                      materiā  
the fields                      into                      the camp;                      and                      was using                      the material

(abl.)                      atque                      ære earum                      naves, quæ                      afflictæ  
[timber]                      and                      copper of these                      ships,                      which                      had been

ĕrant                      gravissimè,                      ad                      reficiendas                      reliquas  
shattered                      most severely [seriously],                      for                      repairing                      the rest

et                      jubebat                      comportari                      ex                      continenti,  
and                      was ordering                      to be brought                      from                      the continent,

quæ                      ĕrant                      usũi                      ad                      ĕas                      res.                      Itāque,  
what                      were                      for [of] use                      for                      these                      things.                      Therefore,

quum                      id                      administraretur (imp. subj.)                      summo  
since                      this                      was performed                      with the highest

[greatest]                      studio                      à                      militibus,                      duodecim                      navibus  
zeal                      by                      the soldiers,                      twelve                      ships

amissis, officit,<sup>53</sup> ut posset  
 having been lost, he accomplished, that it [they] might be able

navigari commōdè relīquis.  
 to be sailed [to sail] readily in the rest.

32. Dum ěa geruntur, unâ legione,  
 While these (things) are transpiring, one legion,

quæ appellabatur septīma, missâ frumen-  
 which was called the seventh, having been sent to bring

tatum ex consuetudīne, nēque ullâ suspicione  
 corn according to custom, nor any suspieion

belli interpositâ ad id tempus, quum  
 of war having been offered [shown] to this time, when

pars homīnum remaneret (imp. subj.) in  
 a part of the men were remaining in

agris, pars etiā ventitaret (imp. subj.)  
 the fields, a part also were coming often

in castra (pl.); ĩi, qui ěrant in statione  
 to the camp; those. who where on guard

pro portis castrorum (pl.), renunciaverunt  
 before the gates of the camp, announced

Cæsāri, majorem pulvĕrem, quā con-  
 to Cæsar, (that) a greater dust, than cus-

suetudo ferret, videri in ěa  
 tom bore [warranted], to be [was] seen in this

parte, in quam partem legio fecisset  
 part, into which part the legion had made

(pl. perf. subj.) ĩter. Cæsar suspicatus,  
 the march. Cæsar having suspected,

id quod ěrat, aliquid nōvi consilii  
 this which was, (that) some (thing) (of) new plan

inītum(esse) à barbāris. jussit  
 to have [had] been entered on by the barbarians, ordered

cohortes, quæ ěrant in stationibus (pl.), pro-  
 the cohorts, which were on guard, to

ficisci secum in ěam partem, dūas  
 set out with himself into this part, two (cohorts)

succedĕre in stationem, reliquas armari, et  
 to succeed on guard, the rest to be armed, and

se subsēqui confestim. Quum proces-  
to follow himself closely immediately. When he had

sisset (pl. perf. subj.) paulò longiùs à castris  
advanced a little farther from the camp,

(pl.), animadvertit sūos prēmi  
he perceived (that) his own (men) to be [were] pressed

ab hostībus, atque agrè sustinere, et  
by the enemy, and hardly (to) withstand, and

legione confertâ, tela  
the legion having been crowded together, (that) weapons

conjīci ex omnībus partībus. Nam,  
to be [were] thrown from all parts [sides]. For,

quòd omni frumento demesso ex  
because all the corn having been cut down [reaped] from

reliquis partībus, una pars ěrat reliqua,  
the remaining parts, one part was left,

hostes, suspicati nostros esse  
the enemy, having suspected (that) our (men) to be [were]

venturos huc, delituērant noctu in silvis.  
about to come hither, had lurked by night in the woods.

Tum subitò adorti dispersos,  
Then suddenly having attacked (them) dispersed.

occupatos in metendo, armis depositis,  
engaged in reaping, (their) arms having been laid aside,

paucis interfectis, perturbavērant reliquos  
a few having been slain, they had disordered the rest

incertis ordinībus; sīmul circum-  
in uncertain [confused] ranks; at the same time they had

dedērant equitatu atque essēdis.  
surrounded (them) with cavalry and with chariots.

33. Hoc est gēnus pugnæ ex essēdis:  
This is the kind of battle from the chariots:

primò, perequitant per omnes partes, et  
first, they ride through all parts, and

conjiciunt tela: atque perturbant<sup>54</sup> ordīnes  
hurl (their) weapons: and they disorder the ranks

plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et  
generally by the terror itself of the horses, and

strepĭtu rotarum: et quum insinuavĕre  
rattling of the wheels: and when they have introduced

se inter turmas equĭtum, desilŭnt  
themselves among the troops of the horsemen, they leap down

ex essĕdis et prœliantur<sup>55</sup> pedĭbus.  
from the chariots and fight on feet [on foot].

Intĕrim aurigæ excedunt paulŭm è  
Meantime the charioters retire a little from

prœlio, atque collōcant se ĭta, ut si  
the battle, and place themselves so, that if

illi premantur à multitudĭne hostĭum, hab-  
those are pressed by the multitude of the enemy, they

ĕant expeditum receptum ad sŭos. Ita  
may have an unhindered retreat to their own (men). Thus

præstant mobilitatem equĭtum, stabilitem  
they display the activity of cavalry, the steadiness

pedĭtum in prœliis; ac efficiunt tantum  
of infantry in battles: and they accomplish so much

quotidiano usu et exercitatione, ut con-  
by daily practice and exercise, that they have

suevĕrint (perf. subj.) in declivi ac præcipĭti  
been accustomed in a sloping and steep

lōco, sustinere ĕquos incĭtatos, et moderari  
place, to rein in (their) horses spurred on, and to control

ac flectĕre brĕvĭ, et percurrĕre  
and (to) turn (them) shortly [sharply], and to run along

per temonem, et insistĕre in jugo,  
though [on] the pole, and to stand on the yoke,

et recipĕre se inde citissĭmè in  
and to betake themselves thence most quickly into

currus.  
the chariots.

34. Nostris perturbatis quĭbus  
To our (men) having been disordered by which [these]

rebus, novitate pugnæ, Cæsar tŭlit  
things, by the novelty [strangeness] of the battle, Cæsar brought

auxilĭum opportunissĭmo tempōre: namque hostes  
aid at a most seasonable time: for the enemy



constiterunt halted	ejus, on his,	adventu arrival	nostri our (men)	receperunt recovered
se themselves	ex from	timore. fear.	Quo Which	facto, having been done,
arbitratus <sup>56</sup> having thought	tempus the time	esse to be [was]	alienum improper	ad for
laccendum attacking	hostem the enemy	et and	committendum for engaging in	prœlium, battle,
continuit he kept	se himself	suo in his own	loco; place;	et and
tempore time	intermisso, <sup>57</sup> having been passed [spent],	reduxit he led back	legiones the legions	
in castra. into the camp.	Dum While	hæc these (things)	geruntur, are passing,	omnibus all
nostris our (men)	occupatis, having been engaged,	qui erant who were	in agris in the fields	
reliqui <sup>58</sup> the rest	discesserunt. departed.	Tempestates Storms	secutæ-sunt followed	
complures many	continuos dies, successive days,	quæ et which both	continerent were restraining	
(imp. subj.) erent (imp. subj.) hindering	nostros our (men)	in castris (pl.), in camp,	et and	prohib- were
barbãri the barbarians	dimiserunt dispatched	nuncios messengers	in into	omnes all
partes, parts,	que and	prædicaverunt proclaimed	suis to their own (people)	pau- the
citatem fewness	nostrorum of our	militum; soldiers;	et and	demonstraverunt showed
quanta how great	facultas <sup>59</sup> an opportunity	daretur was given	(imp. subj.) of making	faciendæ
prædæ plunder	atque and	liberandi of freeing	sui themselves	in perpetuum, forever,
si if	expulissent they should drive	Romanos the Romans	castris (pl.). from the camp.	Magnâ A great
multitudîne multitude	peditatûs of infantry	que and	equitatûs of cavalry	co- having been

actâ celeriter his rebus, venerunt  
 assembled quickly with these things [objects], they came

ad castra (pl.).  
 to the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar videbat idem  
 Although Cæsar was seeing (that) the same (things)

före, quod accidêrat superioribus  
 to be about to [would] be, which had happened in former

diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,  
 days; that, if the enemy should be routed,

effugêrent pericülum celeritate; tämen  
 they would escape danger by speed; nevertheless

nactus circiter triginta equites, quos Commius  
 having got about thirty horsemen, whom Commius

Atrêbas, (de quo dictum-est antè)  
 the Atrebatian, (of whom it has been mentioned before)

transportavêrat secum, constituit legiones  
 had brought over with himself, he drew up the legions

in acie pro castris (pl.). Prælio  
 in battle line before the camp. The battle

commisso, hostes potuerunt non ferre  
 having been joined, the enemy were able not to bear

impëtum nostrorum militum diutius ac verterunt  
 the charge of our soldiers longer and turned

terga: quos secuti tanto spatio,  
 (their) backs [retreated]: whom having followed for so great a distance,

quantum potuerunt efficere cursu et  
 as they were able to accomplish by running and

viribus (pl.), occiderunt complures ex his:  
 by exertion, they killed many from [of] them:

deinde omnibus ædificiis incensis longè  
 then all the buildings having been burned far

que latè, receperunt se in castra (pl.).  
 and wide, they betook themselves into the camp.

36. Eodem die legati missi ab  
 On the same day ambassadors (having been) sent by

hostibus venerunt ad Cæsarem de pace.  
 the enemy came to Cæsar concerning peace.

Cæsar duplicavit his numĕrum obsĭdum,  
Cæsar doubled for these [them] the number of hostages,

quem imperavĕrat antĕa; que jussit ĕos  
which he had ordered before; and commanded them

adduci in continentem; quòd, dĕ  
to be conducted to the continent; because, the day

æquinoctĭ propinquâ, existimabat navigationem<sup>60</sup>  
of the equinox (being) near, he was thinking the voyage

non subjiendam hiĕmi infirmis navĭbus:  
not to [would not] be exposed to winter with weak ships:

ipse nactus idoneam tempestatem solvit  
he himself having gained suitable weather cast loose

naves paulò post mediã noctem; omnes  
the ships a little after mid night; all

quæ pervenerunt incolūmes ad continentem.  
which [these] passed safe to the continent.

Ex his, dŭæ onerariæ potuerunt  
From [of] these, two burden [transport ships] were able

non capĕre eosdem portus, quos  
not to take [reach] the same harbors, which [as]

reliquæ; sed delatæ-sunt paulò infrâ.  
the rest; but were carried down a little below.

37. Ex quĭbus<sup>61</sup> navĭbus, quum circĭter  
From which ships, when about

trecenti milĭtes expositi-essent (pl. perf. subj.),  
three hundred soldiers had been landed,

atque contendĕrent (imp. subj.) in castra (pl.),  
and were hastening into camp,

Morĭni, quos Cæsar reliquĕrat pacatos  
the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued

proficiscens in Britannĭam, adducti spe  
setting out into Britain, induced by hope

prædæ, primò circumsteterunt numĕro  
of plunder, first surrounded (them) with a number

suorum non ĭta magno, ac jusserunt  
of their own (men), not so large, and ordered

ponĕre arma, si nollent<sup>62</sup>  
(them) to lay down (their) arms, if they were unwilling

(that they) sese themselves to [should] be slain. Quum illi, When they,  
 orbe facto, defendērent (imp. subj.)  
 a circle having been formed, were defending  
 sese, circiter sex millia celeriter convenerunt  
 themselves, about six thousand quickly assembled  
 ad clamorem hominum. Quâ re nun-  
 at the shout of the men. Which thing having been  
 tiatâ, Cæsar misit omnem equitatum ex  
 announced, Cæsar sent all the cavalry from  
 suis castris (pl.) auxilio suis. Intērim nostri  
 his camp for aid to his (men). Meantime our  
 milites sustinuerunt impetum hostium, atque  
 soldiers bore the attack of the enemy, and  
 pugnaverunt fortissimè amplius quatuor horis ;  
 fought most bravely more (than) four hours ;  
 et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, occiderunt  
 and, a few wounds having been received, killed  
 complures ex iis. Verò posteaquàm noster  
 many from them. But after (that) our  
 equitatus venit in conspectum, hostes,  
 cavalry came into sight, the enemy, (their)  
 armis abjectis, verterunt terga,  
 arms having been thrown away, turned (their) backs,  
 que magnus numerus eorum occisus-est.  
 [retreated] and a great number of them was killed.  
 38. Cæsar misit legatum Titum Labienum  
 Cæsar sent (his) lieutenant Titus Labienus  
 postero diē, cum iis legionibus, quas  
 the following day, with these legions, which  
 reduxerat ex Britannîâ, in Morinos,  
 he had brought back from Britain, into the Morini,  
 qui fecerant rebellionem. Qui, quum habe-  
 who had made a rebellion. Who, when they were  
 rent (imp. subj.) non quò recipērent  
 having not [no] where they might betake  
 se propter siccitates (pl.) paludum,  
 themselves on account of the dryness of the marshes,

quo perfrugio (abl.) usi-fuerant superiore anno,  
 which refuge they had used in the former year,  
 fere omnes prevenerunt in potestatem Labieni.  
 nearly all came into the power of Labienus.  
 At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati,  
 But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants,  
 qui duxerant legiones in fines Me-  
 who had led the legions into the territories of the  
 napiorum, omnibus eorum agris vastatis,  
 Menapii, all their lands having been devastated,  
 frumentis (pl.) succisis, que edificis  
 the corn having been cut down, and the buildings  
 incensis, quod omnes Menapii abdiderant  
 having been fired, because all the Menapii had hid  
 se in densissimas silvas, receperunt  
 themselves among the thickest woods, betook  
 se ad Cæsarem. Cæsar constituit hi-  
 themselves to Cæsar. Cæsar established the winter  
 berna omnium legionum in Belgis. Eò  
 quarters of all the legions among the Belgæ. There  
 duæ civitates omnino ex Britannia miserunt  
 two states altogether from Britain sent  
 obsides: reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus  
 hostages: the rest neglected (it). These things  
 gestis, supplicatio viginti  
 having been accomplished, a general thanksgiving of twenty  
 dierum decreta-est à senatu, ex  
 days was decreed by the senate, from [because of]  
 literis (abl.) Cæsaris.  
 the letters of Cæsar.



## FIFTH BOOK

The fifth book includes the description of Cæsar's second campaign against the Britons and an account of certain internal trouble and revolts which endangered several Roman encampments. Cæsar in preparing to leave his winter quarters ordered a huge fleet of specially constructed ships to be made ready. A second expedition against Britain is undertaken, and boldly resisted by the tribesmen of the island. The Roman fleet suffers severe losses through storms. The Britons throw a fresh offensive against the Romans; but they are defeated. Cæsar with hostages returns to Gaul. There the tribes are involved in an internal war, and a revolution under Indutiomarus and Ambiorix is attempted. Contrary to his custom, Cæsar quarters his army in divisions and Gaul is finally brought again to a peaceful state.

1. Lucio	Domitio,	Appio	Claudio	
Lucius	Domitius.	Appius	Claudius	(being)
Consulibus,	Cæsar	discendens	ab	hibernis
Consuls.	Cæsar	departing	from	winter quarters
in	Italian,	ut	consuerat	facere
into	Italy,	as	he had been accustomed	to do
quotannis,		imperat	legatis (dat.),	quos
yearly [every year],		orders	the lieutenants.	whom
præfecerat		legionibus (dat.),		uti
he had appointed over		the legions,		that
curent		quam plurimas <sup>1</sup>		naves
they should take care	(that)	as many		ships
possent		ædificandas	hieme,	que
as might be possible		to [should] be built	in the winter,	and
veteres	reficiendas.	Demonstrat	eorum	mōdum
the old (ships) to [should] be repaired.		He shows	their	size
que formam;	facit	paulò	humiliores	quàm
and form;	he makes (them)	a little	lower	than
quibus (abl.)		consuevimus	uti	in
(those) which		we have been accustomed	to use	in

nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que  
our sea, for quickness of loading, and

subductionis; atque id măgis ẽd,  
of drawing up [beaching]; and thus the more for this reason,

quòd cognovërat mĩnùs magnos  
because he had learned (that) less [not so] great

fluctus<sup>2</sup> fiëri ĩbi propter crebras  
waves to be [are] found there on account of the frequent

commutationes æstuum; paulò latiores quàm  
changes of the tides; a little wider than

quĩbus (abl.) utĩmur in reliquis marĩbus, ad  
what we use in the other seas, for

onëra<sup>3</sup> et ad transportandum multitudĩnem  
loads and for transferring a multitude

jumentorum. Impërat omnes has fiëri  
of beasts of burden. He commands all these to be made

actuarĩas : ad quam<sup>4</sup> rem humilitas adjuvat  
fast sailing : for which thing [object] the lowness aids

multum. Jūbet ea, quę sunt usũ ad  
much He orders these things, which are for use for

armandas<sup>5</sup> naves apportari ex Hispaniã.  
rigging ships to be brought from Spain.

Ipse, conventibus citerioris Gallię peractis,  
He himself, the assemblies of nearer Gaul having been finished,

proficiscitur in Illyricum; quòd audiebat  
sets out into Illyricum; because he was hearing (that)

finitimam partem Provincię vastari  
the neighboring part of the Province to be [was] ravaged

incursionibus à Pirustis. Quum venisset  
with incursions by the Pirustæ. When he had come

(pl. perf. subj.) ẽd, impërat<sup>6</sup> civitatibus (dat.)  
there. he demands (of) the states

milites, que jūbet convenire in certum locum.  
soldiers, and orders (them) to assemble to [into] a certain place.

Quã re nuntiata, Pirustæ  
Which [This] thing having been announced, the Pirustæ

mittunt legatos ad eum, qui doceant nihil  
send ambassadors to him, who may show that nothing

earum rerum factum (-esse) publico  
 of these things [acts] to have [had] been done by public

concilio: que demonstrant sese esse  
 council: and they show (that they) themselves to be

paratos satisfacere omnibus rationibus de  
 [are] prepared to satisfy by all means regarding

injuriis. Eorum oratione acceptâ,  
 the injuries. Their speech having been received [heard],

Cæsar imperat obsides, que jubet eos adduci  
 Cæsar demands hostages, and orders them to be brought

ad certam diem: nisi fecerant ita,  
 to [on] a certain day: unless they should do so,

demonstrat<sup>7</sup> sese persecuturum  
 he shows (that he) himself about to [would] pursue

civitatem bello. His adductis ad  
 the state by war These having been brought on the

diem, ut imperaverat, dat arbitros  
 day, as he had commanded, he gives [appoints] arbitrators

inter civitates, qui aestiment litem  
 among the states, who may value the suit [the damage]

que constituant pœnam.  
 and may determine the penalty

2. His rebus confectis, que  
 These things having been accomplished, and

conventibus peractis, revertitur in  
 the assemblies having been concluded, he returns into

citeriorem Galliam, atque inde proficiscitur ad  
 hither Gaul, and thence sets out to

exercitum. Quum venisset (pl perf subj.) ðd,  
 the army. When he had come there,

omnibus hibernis circuitis, invenit  
 all the winter quarters having been visited, he found

circiter sexcentas naves ejus generis, cujus  
 about six hundred ships of this kind, (of) which

demonstravimus supra, et viginti octo longas  
 we have shown above, and twenty eight long

constructas, singulari studio militum,  
 [var ships] built, by the singular zeal of the soldiers,

in summâ inopîâ omnium rerum, neque multum  
 in the highest want of all things, nor much  
 abesse<sup>8</sup> ab eo, quin  
 to be [was] wanting from this (condition), but that  
 possent deduci paucis diebus.  
 they might be able [could] (to) be launched in a few days.  
 Militibus collaudatis, atque iis, qui  
 The soldiers having been commended and to those, who  
 præfuërant negotio, ostendit quid  
 had presided in the business [undertaking], he shows what  
 vëlit fieri; atque jubet omnes convenire  
 he wishes to be done: and orders all to assemble  
 ad portum Itium: ex quo portu  
 to[at] the port Itius [Boulogne]: from which port  
 cognoverat trajectum in Britanniam esse  
 he had learned the passage into Britain to be [was]  
 commodissimum, circiter triginta millium  
 the most convenient, about thirty (of) thousand  
 passuum à continenti. Relinquit quod  
 paces from the continent. He leaves what  
 visum-est esse satis militum huic rei:  
 seemed to be enough (of) soldiers for this thing  
 [expedition]: ipse proficiscitur cum quatuor  
 (he) himself sets out with four  
 expeditis legionibus, et octingentis equitibus,  
 light-armed legions, and eight hundred cavalry,  
 in fines Trevirorum; quòd hi nèque  
 into the territories of the Treviri: because these neither  
 veniebant ad concilia, nèque parebant  
 were coming to the councils, nor were obeying  
 imperio (dat.), que dicebantur sollicitare  
 (his) command, and were said to be inciting  
 Germanos transrhenanos.  
 the Germans beyond the Rhine.  
 3. Hæc civitas vālet<sup>9</sup> longè plurimum  
 This state prevails by far the most  
 totius Galliæ equitatu, que hæbet magnas  
 of the whole of Gaul in cavalry, and has great

copias peditum; que tangit Rhenum, ut  
forces of infantry; and borders the Rhine, as

demonstravimus suprâ. In eâ civitate duo,  
we have shown above. In this state two (men),

Indutiomârus et Cingetorix, contendebant<sup>10</sup> inter  
Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, were striving among

se de principatu: alter ex  
[between] themselves about the supreme authority: one from [of]

quibus, simul atque cognitum-est de adventu  
whom, as soon as it was known concerning the approach

Cæsaris que legionum, venit ad eum; confirmavit  
of Cæsar and of the legions, came to him; he declared

se que omnes suos futuros  
(that he) himself and all his (people) about to [would] be

in officio, neque defecturos ab  
in duty [allegiance], nor about to [would] revolt from

amicitiâ Romani populi; que ostendit,  
the friendship of the Roman people; and he shows,

quæ gererentur (imp. subj.) in Treviris.  
what (things) were transpiring among the Treviri.

At Indutiomârus instituit cogere equitatum que  
But Indutiomarus began to collect cavalry and

peditatum; que his, qui per ætatem poterant  
infantry; and those, who through age were able

non esse in armis, abditis in silvam  
not to be in arms, having been hid within the forest

Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudine  
of Arduenna [Ardennes], (which of great extent

pertinet à flumine Rheno ad initium  
reaches from the river Rhine to the beginning

Rhemorum per medios fines Trevirorum)  
of the Rhemi through the central territories of the Treviri)

parare.<sup>11</sup> bellum. Sed posteaquàm nonnulli  
[to] prepare [prepares] war. But after (that) some

principes ex eâ civitate, et adducti familiaritate  
chiefs from this state, both induced by the intimacy

Cingetorigis, et perterriti adventu nostri  
of Cingetorix, and alarmed by the approach of our



exercītūs, venerunt ad Cæsārem, et cœperunt petere  
 army, came to Cæsar and began to seek

ab eo de suis privatis rebus, quoniam  
 from him about their own private affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulere civitati:  
 they were able not to consult for the state.

Indutiomārus veritus ne desereretur  
 Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnibus, mittit legatos ad Cæsārem;  
 by all. sends ambassadors to Cæsar: (to say)

se<sup>12</sup> discedere idcirco à  
 (that he) himself to withdraw [withdraws] for this reason from

suis, atque noluisse venire ad  
 his own (people). and to have [had] been unwilling to come to

ëum, quò contineret civitatem facilius  
 him. in order that he might restrain the state more easily

in officio; ne discessu omnis  
 in duty [allegiance]: lest by the departure of all

nobilitatis, plebs laberetur propter  
 the nobility. the common people might slip through (their)

imprudentiā: itaque civitatem esse in suā  
 indiscretion: therefore the state to be [was] in his

potestate; que se venturum  
 power; and (that he) himself (to be) about to [would] come

ad ëum in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permittëret;  
 to him into the camp. if Cæsar would permit

et permissurum suas fortunas que  
 and (to be) about to [would] consign his own fortunes and

civitatis ejus fidëi.  
 (those) of the state to his faith.

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de quā causā<sup>13</sup>  
 Although Cæsar was understanding from what cause

ëa dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res  
 these things were said. and what thing

detereretur (imp. subj.) ëum ab instituto  
 was deterring him from (his) determined

consilio; tamen, ne cogeretur consumere  
 purpose; however, lest he might be compelled to waste

æstatem in Treviris, omnibus rebus  
the summer among the Treviri. all things

comparatis ad Britannicum bellum, jussit  
having been prepared for the Britannie war, he ordered

Indutiomãrum venire ad se cum ducentis  
Indutiomarus to come to himself with two hundred

obsidibus. His adductis, et filio  
hostages. These having been brought, and (his) son

in iis, que omnibus ejus propinquis, quos  
among them, and all his relations, whom

evocaverat nominatim, consolatus est que  
he had called out by name, he consoled and

hortatus (est) Induticmãrum, uti permaneret  
encouraged Indutiomarus, that he might continue

in officio. Tãmen, nihilo secius principibus  
in duty [allegiance] Yet, nevertheless the chiefs

Trevirorum convocatis ad se,  
of the Treviri having been called together to himself,

conciliavit eos singulatim Cingetorigi: quod<sup>14</sup>  
he reconiled them individually to Cingetorix: which

intelligebat cum fieri à se  
(thing) he was understanding not only to be [was] done by himself

ejus merito (sing.) tum arbitrabatur interesse  
by his deserts but also he was judging to concern

magni, ejus auctoritatem  
[it concerned] (him) of great [greatly] (that) his authority

valere quam plurimum inter suos,  
to [should] prevail as much as possible among his own (people),

cujus voluntatem perspexisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
whose (good) will he had perceived (was)

tam egregiam in se. Indutiomãrus tulit  
so exeellent toward himself Indutiomarus bore

id factum graviter, suam gratiam  
this act heavily [bitterly]. his own favor

minui inter suos: et qui  
to be [was] diminished among his own (people) and (he) who

fuisset (pl. perf. subj.) inimico animo antè  
had been in [of] unfriendly spirit before

in nos exarsit multò gravïus hoc  
 toward us blazed forth [raged] much more violently by this  
 dolore.  
 vexation

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit  
 Those things having been settled, Cæsar arrived

ad portum Itum cum legionibus. Cognoscit  
 at the harbor Itus with the legions. He learns

ibi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ erant  
 there, (that) forty ships, which had been made

in Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non  
 among the Meldi, thrown back by a storm. not

potuisse<sup>15</sup> tenere cursum, atque  
 to have [had not] been able to hold (their) course. and

relatas eodem, unde profectæ erant:  
 (were) carried back to the same (place) whence they had set out:

invenit reliquas paratas ad navigandum, atque  
 he finds the rest prepared for sailing, and

instructas omnibus rebus. Equitatus totius  
 furnished with all things The cavalry of the whole

Galliæ convenit eodem, numero quatuor  
 of Gaul assembled in the same (place) to the number of four

millium, que principes ex omnibus civitatibus;  
 thousand, and the chiefs from [of] all the states,

perpaucos ex quibus, quorum fidem in  
 a very few from [of] whom. whose fidelity toward

se perspexerat, decreverat relinquere in  
 himself he had clearly seen, he had resolved to leave in

Galliâ; ducere reliquos secum loco  
 Gaul: (and) to lead [take] the rest with him in the place

obsidum; quod verebatur motum Galliæ,  
 of hostages; because he was fearing a disturbance of Gaul.

quum ipse abesset.  
 when (he) himself was absent.

6. Dumnorix Ædus erat una cum  
 Dumnorix the Æduan was together with

cæteris de quo dictum est  
 he rest, concerning whom it has been spoken

[mention was made]	à	nobis	antëa.	Constituërat
by	by	us	before	He had resolved
ducëre	hunc	secum	inprimis,	quòd
to conduct	him	with him	in particular,	because
cognovërat	ëum	cupïdum	novarum	rerum,
he had known	him	desirous	of new	things
[revolution].	cupïdum	imperii,	magni anïmi,	magnæ
	desirous	of power	of high spirit,	of great
auctoritatis	inter	Gallos.	Accedebat	huc, <sup>16</sup>
authority	among	the Gauls.	It was added	to this,
quòd	Dumnorix	dixërat	jam	in
that	Dumnorix	had said	already	in
				concilio
				a council
Æduorum,		regnum		civitatis
of the Ædúi.	(that)	the government		of the state
deferri		sïbi	à Cæsäre.	Quod
to be [was] conferred		to [on] himself	by Cæsar.	Which
dictum	Ædúi	ferebant	gravïter,	nëque
saying	the Ædúi	were bearing	heavily [ill].	nor
audebant	mittëre	legatos	ad Cæsãrem	
were they daring	to send	ambassadors	to Cæsar	
causã	recusandi	nëque	deprecandi.	Cæsar
for the sake	of objecting	nor	of protesting.	Cæsar
cognovërat	id	factum (esse)	ex	
had known	(that) this	to have been [was] done	from	
suis <sup>17</sup>	hospitibus.	Ille	primò	petëre
his	guests.	He	at first	strove
				to seek
omnibus	precibus,	ut	relinqueretur	in Gallïa;
by all	entreaties,	that	he might be left	in Gaul;
partim	quòd	insuetus	navigandi	timeret (imp.
partly	because	unused	of [to] voyaging	he was fearing
subj.)	mãria;	partim	quòd	dicëret (imp. subj.)
	the sea;	partly	because	he was saying
	sese	impediri	religionibus.	
(that he) himself	to be [was] hindered		by religious scruples.	
Posteaquam	vidit	id	negari <sup>18</sup>	obstinatë
After (that)	he saw	this	to be [was] denied	obstinately
	sïbi,	omni spe	impetrandi	ademptã,
to himself,	all	hope	of obtaining (it)	having been taken away,

cœpit            sollicitare            principes            Gallïæ,            sevocare  
he began            to instigate            the chiefs            of Gaul,            to call apart

singŭlos        que    hortari,        ut            remanerent        in  
individuals        and    to exhort,        that            they should remain        on

continenti;        territare<sup>19</sup>            mētu  
the continent; (saying) he to be [was] alarmed with the fear (that this)

fiēri            non        sine        causâ,        ut        Gallïa  
to be [was] done        not        without        reason,        that        Gaul

spoliaretur        omni        nobilitate.        Id        esse  
might be stripped        from [of] all        the nobility. (That) this        to be [was]

consilium        Cæsãris,        ut        necaret        omnes  
the plan        of Cæsar,        that        he might destroy        all

hos            transductos            in        Britannïam,        quos  
these            conveyed over            into        Britam,        whom

vereretur (imp. subj.)        interficere        in        conspectu  
he was fearing            to slay        in        the sight

Gallïæ.        Interponere<sup>20</sup>            fidem        reliquis;  
of Gaul.            To suggest [He suggests]        a pledge        to the rest;

poscere            jusjurandum,        ut        administrarent  
to demand [he demands]        an oath,        that        they would perform

communi        consilio,        quod        intellexissent        esse  
with common        design,        what        they should understand        to be

ex            usu            Gallïæ.  
[was]        from [for]        the use [advantage]        of Gaul.

7. Hęc            deferebantur        ad        Cæsãrem        à  
These (matters)        were reported        to        Cæsar        by

compluribus. Quâ        re        cognitâ,        Cæsar, quòd  
very many.        Which thing        having been known,        Cæsar, because

tribuebat        tantum        dignitatis        Ædũæ        civitati,  
he was granting        so much        (of) honor        to the Æduan        state,

statuebat            Dumnorïgem        coercendum  
was determining        (that)        Dumnorix        to [should] be restrained

atque        deterrendum        quibuscunque        rebus  
and        to [should] be checked        by whatever        things [means]

posset;            quòd        videbat        ejus        amentiam  
he might be able;        because        he was seeing        his        madness

progrēdi        longŭs,            prospiciendum,<sup>21</sup>        ne  
to [would] proceed        further,        (it was) to be provided,        lest



posset		nocere	sibi (dat.)	ac		
he might be able [should]		(to) injure	himself	and		
rei publicæ (dat.).	Itaque	commoratus	in	ëo		
the republic.	Therefore	having delayed	in	this		
lõco	circiter viginti	quinque	dies,	quod	ventus	
place	about	twenty	five	days,	because	the wind
Corus		impediebat	navigationem,	qui		
Corus (North West wind)		was hindering	the passage,	which		
consuevit	flare	in his	lõcis	magnam	partem	
is accustomed	to blow	in these	places	a great	part	
omnis	tempõris,	dãbat	opëram, <sup>22</sup>	ut		
of every	season.	he was giving	work [attention].	that		
contineret	Dumnorigem	in	officõ;	tãmen		
he might keep	Dumnorix	in	(his) duty :	yet (that)		
cognoscëret	nihilõ-secius	omnia	ejus	consilia.		
he should learn	nevertheless	all	his	designs.		
Tandem	nactus	idonëam	tempestatem,	jũbet		
At length	having got	favorable	weather,	he orders		
miltes	que equites	conscendëre	in	naves.	At	
the soldiers	and cavalry	to embark	on	the ships.	But	
anõmis	omnium	impeditis,	Dumnorix	cum		
the minds	of all	having been occupied,	Dumnorix	with		
equitibus	Æduorum,	Cæsãre	insciente,	cœpit		
the cavalry	of the Ædúi,	Cæsar	not knowing,	began		
discedëre	dõmum	à	castris (pl.).	Quã	re	
to depart	home	from	the camp.	Which [Thus]	thing	
nuntiatã,	Cæsãr,	professione	inter-			
having been announced.	Cæsãr	the departure	having been			
missã	atque omnibus	rebus	postpositis,			
discontinued	and all	things	having been postponed,			
mittit	magnam partem	equitatũs	ad insequendum			
sends	a large part	of the cavalry	to pursue			
ẽum,	que impërat	retrãhi :	si	faciat <sup>23</sup>		
him,	and orders (him)	to be dragged back :	if	he may do		
vim,	nẽque	parëat,	jũbet	interfõci :		
violence,	nor	may obey,	he commands (him)	to be killed :		
arbitratus	hunc	facturum	nihil			
having considered	him (that he)	about to [would] do	nothing			

pro sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)  
for [as] a sound [sane] (man), who had disregarded

imperium præsentis. Enim ille revocatus  
the command of (him) present. For he having been summoned

cœpit resistere, ac defendere se manu,  
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand [foree],

que implorare fidem suorum;  
and to entreat the faith [support] of his own (people):

clamitans sæpè, se esse liberum,  
crying out often, (that he) himself to be [was] a free (man),

que liberæ civitatis. Isti circumstant  
and of a free state. They surround

que interficiunt hominem, ut imperatum erat:  
and slay the man, as it had been ordered:

at omnes Ædūi equites revertuntur ad  
but all the Æduan horsemen return to

Cæsarem.  
Cæsar.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno  
These things having been performed, Labienus

relicto in continente cum tribus legionibus  
having been left on the continent with three legions

et duobus millibus equitum, ut tueretur  
and two thousand (of) cavalry, that he might defend

portus, et provideret frumentariæ rei, que  
the harbors, and might provide for the grain supply, and

cognosceret quæ gererentur in Galliâ, et  
might ascertain what might be transpiring in Gaul, and

caperet consilium pro<sup>24</sup> tempore et pro  
might take counsel for [according to] time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionibus et  
the affair: (he) himself with five legions and

pâri numero equitum, quem relinquerat in  
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum  
the continent, east loose the ships at [about] the setting

solis; et proventus leni  
of the sun; and having been carried forward by a gentle

Afrīco,	vento	intermisso	circiter
South West wind.	the wind	having discontinued	about
mediā nocte,	tenūit	non	cursum : et
mid night,	he held	not	the course : and
delatus	longiūs	æstu,	luce
being carried away	farther	by the tide,	the light [day]
ortā,	conspexit	Britanniām relictam	sub
having risen,	he beheld	Britain	left [lying] under [on]
sinistrā.	Tum rursus	secutus	commutationem
the left.	Then again	having followed	the change
æstūs,	contendit	remis,	ut caperet
of the tide,	he strove	with oars,	that he might take [reach]
eam partem	insulæ,	quâ	cognoverat
this part	of the island.	on which	he had known
superiore æstate esse	optimum egressum.	In	
in the former summer to be [was]	the best landing.	In	
quâ re	virtus militum	fuit	
which [this] thing [attempt]	the merit of the soldiers	was	
admōdum laudanda,	qui,	labore remigandi non	
very much to be praised,	who,	the labor of rowing not	
intermisso,	adæquaverunt	cursum longarum	
having been interrupted.	equalled	the course of the long	
navium,	vectoris	que gravibus navigiis.	
ships [war-ships].	with transports and	heavy vessels.	
Accessum est <sup>25</sup>	ad Britanniam omnibus navibus		
It was [They] approached to	Britain with all	the ships	
fere meridiano tempore.	Næque <sup>26</sup>	hostis visus est	
nearly at noon time.	Nor	an enemy was seen	
in eo loco.	Sed, ut Cæsar postea compertit		
in this place.	But, as Cæsar afterwards discovered		
ex captivis,	quum magnæ manus convenissent		
from the prisoners,	when a great band had assembled		
(pl. perf. subj.)	eo,	perterritæ multitudi-ne	
	there,	having been alarmed by the multitude	
navium,	quæ amplius octingentæ visæ erant		
of ships,	which more (than) eight-hundred had been seen		
unà	cum annotinis	que privatis,	
together	with last year's (ships)	and the private (ones),	

quas quisque fecerat causâ sũ  
 which each had made for the sake of his own  
 commōdi, discesserant timore à littōre,  
 convenience, they had departed in fear from the shore,  
 ac abdidērant se in superiora lōca.  
 and had concealed themselves in the higher places.  
 9. Cæsar, exercitu exposito, ac  
 Cæsar, the army having been disembarked, and  
 lōco idoneo castris (pl.) capto, ũbi  
 a place suitable for a camp, having been taken, when  
 cognovit ex captivis, in quo lōco copiæ  
 he learned from the prisoners, in what place the forces  
 hostium consedisent (pl. perf. subj.), dēcem  
 of the enemy had encamped, ten  
 cohortibus relictis ad mære, et trecentis  
 cohorts having been left at [near] the sea, and three-hundred  
 equitibus, qui essent præsidio navibus,  
 horsemen, who were (for) a guard to the ships,  
 contendit ad hostes de tertîa vigiliâ;  
 hastened to the enemy on the third watch;  
 veritus èd mînus navibus, quòd  
 having feared for this reason the less for the ships, because  
 relinquebat deligatas ad anchōras (pl.) in molli  
 he was leaving (them) fastened at anchor on a soft  
 atque aperto littōre; et præfecit Quintum  
 and open shore; and he put in command Quintus  
 Atrium præsidio navibus. Ipse progressus  
 Atrius for protection to the ships. He himself having advanced  
 noctu circiter duodēcim millia passum  
 by night about twelve thousand (of) paces  
 conspicatus est copias hostium. Illi  
 discovered the forces of the enemy. They  
 progressi ad flumen equitatu atque  
 having advanced to the river with the cavalry and  
 essēdis, cœperunt prohibere nostros ex  
 chariots, began to check our (men) from  
 superiore lōco et committēre prælium.  
 the higher place and to engage battle.

Repulsi ab equitatu, nacti locum  
 Having been repulsed by the cavalry, having got a place  
 egregiè munitum et naturâ et opère,  
 excellently fortified both by nature and by work [art],  
 quem, (ut videbantur,) præparvērant jam  
 which, (as it was seeming) they had prepared already  
 antè, causâ domestici belli, abdiderunt  
 before, for the sake of domestic war they hid  
 se in silvas: nam crebris arboribus  
 themselves in the woods: for the thick trees  
 succissis, omnes introitus præclusi-erant.  
 having been cut down, all the entrances had been shut up.  
 Ipsi rari propugnabant ex  
 They themselves, few [in squads], were charging from  
 silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingredi<sup>27</sup>  
 the woods, and were preventing our (men) to enter  
 intra munitiones. At milites  
 [from entering] within the fortifications. But the soldiers  
 septimæ legionis, testudinè factâ, et  
 of the seventh legion, a testudo having been made, and  
 aggere adjecto ad munitiones,  
 a mound having been thrown up against the fortifications,  
 ceperunt locum, que expulerunt eos ex silvis,  
 took the place, and drove them from the woods,  
 paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed Cæsar  
 a few wounds having been received But Cæsar  
 vetuit persèqui eos fugientes longiùs, et quòd  
 forbade to pursue them fleeing farther, both because  
 ignorabat naturam loci, et quòd  
 he was not knowing the nature of the place, and because  
 magnâ parte diei consumptâ, volebat  
 a great part of the day having been spent, he was wishing  
 tempus relinquì munitioni  
 (that) time to [should] be left for the fortification  
 castrorum (pl.).  
 of the camp

10. Postridiè ejus diei, misit manè  
 The day after this day he sent in the morning



mīlītes que equītes tripartitō in  
the soldiers and cavalry in three divisions on

expeditionem, ut persequerentur ēos, qui  
an expedition, that they might pursue these, who

fugērāt. Iis progressi aliquantum  
had fled. These having advanced a considerable part

itinēris, quum jam extremi essent  
of the march, when already the last [the rear] were

(imp. subj.) in conspectu, equītes venerunt à  
in sight, horsemen came from

Quinto Atrio ad Cæsārem, qui nuntiarent  
Quintus Atrius to Cæsar, who announced (that)

maximā tempestate coortā superiori nocte,  
a very great storm having arisen on the former night,

omnes naves propè afflictas-esse atque  
all the ships nearly to have [had] been dashed and

ejectas in litōre; quòd neque anchōræ  
thrown up on the shore; because neither the anchors

que funes subsistērent (imp. subj.), neque nautæ  
and cables were holding, nor the sailors

que gubernatores possent (imp. subj.) pāti  
and pilots were able to endure

vim tempestatis. Itaque magnum  
the violence of the storm. Therefore great

incommōdum acceptum esse ex ēo  
damage to have [had] been received from this

concurso navium.  
collision of the ships.

11. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar jūbet  
These things having been known, Cæsar orders

legiones que equitatum revocari, atque  
the legions and the cavalry to be recalled, and

desistere itinēre, ipse revertitur ad  
to halt from the march, he himself returns to

naves: perspīcit coràm fère eadem,  
the ships: he observes when present nearly the same (things),

quæ cognovērat ex nuntīs (litēris<sup>28</sup> (pl.));  
which he had known from the messengers (the letters);

sic ut, circiter quadraginta navibus amissis,  
so that, about forty ships having been lost,

tāmen reliquæ viderentur (imp. subj.) posse  
however the rest were seeming to be able

refici magno negotio. Itaque deligit  
to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore he selects

fabros ex legionibus, et jubet alios  
mechanics from the legions, and orders others

arcessi ex continenti: scribit Labieno,  
to be summoned from the continent he writes to Labienus,

ut instituat quàm plurimas naves (acc.)  
that he construct the greatest number (of) ships

posset iis legionibus, quæ sunt apud  
he may be able with those legions, which are with

eum. Ipse, etsi res erat multæ  
him. He himself, although the thing was (of) much

operæ ac laboris, tamen statuit esse  
trouble and labor, however determined (that) to be

[it was] commodissimum, omnes naves  
most convenient, (that) all the ships

subduci, et congiungi unâ munitione  
(to) be drawn up, and (to) be united in one fortification

cum castris (pl.). Consumit circiter decem dies  
with the camp. He spends about ten days

in his rebus, ne nocturnis<sup>29</sup> temporibus  
in these things [matters], not the night time

(pl.) quidem intermissis ad laborem  
even having been intermitted [lost] for the labor

militum. Navibus subductis que  
of the soldiers. The ships having been drawn up and

castris (pl.) egregiè munitis, relinquit eadem  
the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same

copias quas antè, præsidio navibus:  
forces which [as] before, for a guard to the ships:

ipse proficiscitur eodem, unde  
(he) himself sets out to the same (place), whence

rediërat. Quum venisset (plup. subj.) èò,  
he had returned. When he had come there,

majores copiae Britannorum jam convenērant  
 greater forces of the Britons now had assembled  
 undique in eum locum. Summa<sup>30</sup>  
 from every side into this place. The supreme authority  
 imperii que administrandi belli permissa-est,  
 of command and of managing the war was assigned,  
 communi consilio, Cassivellauno, fines  
 by a common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories  
 cujus flumen, quod appellatur Tamēsis,  
 of whom a river, which is called Tamesis [Thames],  
 dividit à maritimis civitatibus, circiter octoginta  
 divides from the maritime states, about eighty  
 millia passum à mari. Continentia bella  
 thousand (of) paces from the sea. Continual wars  
 intercesserant huic (dat.) cum reliquis civitatibus,  
 had involved him with the rest of the states,  
 superiori tempore; sed Britanni, permoti  
 in former times; but the Britons, alarmed  
 nostro adventu, praefecerant hunc toti bello  
 by our arrival, had appointed him over the whole war  
 que imperio (dat.).  
 and command.

12. Interior pars Britanniae incolitur ab iis,  
 The interior part of Britain is inhabited by those,  
 quos dicunt proditum<sup>31</sup> memoriâ  
 whom they say (to have [it has] been) handed down by memory  
 natos in insulâ ipsâ; maritima pars  
 (to) have been born in the island itself; the maritime part  
 ab iis, qui transierant ex  
 (is inhabited) by those, who had crossed over from  
 Belgis causâ praedae ac inferendi, belli  
 the Belgae for the sake of plunder and of waging, war  
 qui omnes fere appellantur iis nominibus  
 who all nearly are called by those names  
 civitatum, ex quibus civitatibus orti  
 of states, from which states having sprung  
 pervenerunt eò, ex bello illato  
 they arrived there, and war having been waged

remanserunt ibi, atque cœperunt colere agros.  
remained there, and began to till the lands.

Multitudo hominum est infinita, que  
The multitude of men [inhabitants] is boundless, and

œdificia creberrima fere consimilia Gallicis:  
the buildings most numerous nearly similar to the Gallic:

numerus pecoris magnus. Utuntur aut  
the number of the cattle (is) great. They use either

ære (abl.), aut æreo nummio aut ferris taleis  
brass, or brass coin or iron bars

(abl.) examinatis<sup>32</sup> ad certum pondus, pro nummo.  
regulated to a certain weight, for coin

Album plumbum nascitur idi in mediterraneis  
White lead [tin] is procured there in the midland

regionibus; ferrum in maritimis; sed  
countries; iron in the maritime (parts), but

copia ejus est exigua: utuntur importato  
the quantity of it is small: they use imported

ære. Est materia cujusque generis, ut in  
brass. (There) is timber of every kind, as in

Galliâ, præter fagum atque abietem. Putant  
Gaul, except the beech and the fir tree. They think (it)

non fas gustare leporem et gallinam et  
not right to taste the hare and the hen and

anserem: tamen alunt hæc causâ  
the goose: however they breed these for the sake

animi que voluptatis. Loca sunt  
of mind [the interest] and of pleasure The places are

temperatiora quam in Galliâ, frigoribus (pl.)  
more temperate than in Gaul the cold

remissioribus.

(being) more mild

13. Insula naturâ triquetra, unum latus  
The island (is) by nature triangular one side

cujus est contra Galliam. Alter angulus  
of which is opposite Gaul. The one angle

hujus lateris, qui est ad Cantium,  
of this side, which is near Cantium [Kent].

quò naves ex Gallîâ fēre appelluntur,  
 where ships from Gaul generally are landed,  
 ad orientem solem; inferior  
 (is) toward the rising sun [the East]; the lower (angle)  
 spectat ad meridiem. Hoc lātus tēnet  
 looks [is directed] to the south. This side holds [extends]  
 circiter quingenta millia passūum. Altērum  
 about five hundred thousand (of) paces The other (side)  
 vergit ad Hispaniā, atque occidentem solem:  
 inclines toward Spain, and the setting sun:  
 ex quâ parte est Hibernia, minor  
 from [on] which side is Hibernia [Ireland], less  
 dimidiō quā Britannia, ut existimatur; sed  
 by half than Britain as it is thought, but  
 transmissus est pāri spatio atque ex  
 the passage across is with [of an] equal distance as from  
 Gallîâ in Britanniam. In mediō hoc cursu  
 Gaul to Britain. In the middle of this course  
 est insula, quæ appellatur Mōna. Complures  
 is an island which is called Mona [Man]. Several  
 minores insulæ præterea existimantur objectæ,  
 lesser [smaller] islands besides are thought (to be) interposed,  
 de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem  
 of which islands some have written, (that) the night  
 esse triginta continuos dies sub bruma.  
 to be [is] thirty successive days under [during] winter.  
 Nos reperiebamus nihil de eo  
 We were discovering nothing concerning this  
 percunctationibus, nisi videbamus certis  
 by inquiries except we were seeing by certain  
 mensuris ex aquâ, noctes esse  
 measures of water. (that) the nights to be [were]  
 breviores quā in continente. Longitudo hujus  
 shorter than on the continent The length of this  
 latēris est septingentorum millium passūum,  
 side is (of) seven hundred thousand (of) paces,  
 ut opinio illorum fert Tertium  
 as the opinion of them [their opinion] reports The third (side)



est contra Septentrionem; cui parti nulla  
is opposite the North; to which part no

terra est objecta, sed angulus ejus latëris  
land is opposed, but the angle of that side

spectat maximè ad Germaniam.  
looks [is directed] chiefly toward Germany.

Existimatur octingenta millia passuum  
It is thought (that) eight hundred thousand (of) paces

in longitudinem esse huic. Ita  
in length to be [is] to [on] this (side). Thus

omnis insula est vicies centena millia  
all the island is twenty times a hundred thousand

passuum in circuitu.<sup>33</sup>  
(of) paces in compass

14. Ex omnibus his, qui incolunt  
From [Of] all these, (those) who inhabit

Cantium, sunt longè humanissimi; omnis  
Cantium [Kent], are by far the most civilized; all

quæ regio est maritima, nèque differunt multum  
which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much

à Gallicâ consuetudine. Plerique interiores  
from the Gallic custom. Most of the interior

sèrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt  
(inhabitants) sow [plant] not corn, but live

lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellibus.  
on milk and flesh [meat], and are clad with skins.

Verò omnes Britanni inficiunt se vitro,  
But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,

quod efficit cærulëum colorem, atque hęc  
which forms a bluish color, and by this

sunt horribiliores adspectu in pugna:  
they are more frightful in appearance in battle:

que sunt<sup>34</sup> promisso capillo, atque omni parte  
and they are with long hair, and every part

corpõris rasâ, præter cæput et superius  
of the body shaved, except the head and upper

labrum. Deni que duodeni hãbent uxores  
lip. Ten and twelve (men) have wives

communes inter se, et maxīmè fratres  
common among themselves, and chiefly brothers

cum fratribus, et parentes cum liberis. Sed si  
with brothers, and parents with children. But if

qui sunt nati ex his, habentur  
any are born from [of] these. they are considered

liberi eorum, quo quæque virgo primum  
the children of those. to whom each virgin first

deducta est.  
was married.

15. Equites que essedarīi hostium  
The cavalry and charioteers of the enemy

confixerunt acriter præliō cum nostro equitatu  
engaged sharply in battle with our cavalry

in itinere, ita tamen, ut nostri fuerint  
on the march, so, nevertheless, that our (men) were

(perf. subj.) superiores omnibus partibus, atque  
superior in [on] all parts [sides], and

compulerint (perf. subj.) eos in silvas que  
drove them into the woods and

colles; sed, compluribus interfectis, insecuti  
hills, but, very many having been killed, having pursued

cupidius, amiserunt nonnullos ex  
(them) rather eagerly they lost some from [of]

suis. At illi, spatio intermisso,  
their own. But they, an interval having been interposed

subitò ejecerunt se ex silvis, nostris  
suddenly cast themselves from the woods, our

imprudētibus atque occupatis in  
(men) (being) unaware and engaged in

munitione castrorum (pl.); que impetu  
the fortification of the camp; and an attack

facto in eos, qui collocati erant  
having been made upon these, who had been stationed

in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnauerunt acriter:  
on picket before the camp, they fought sharply:

que duabus cohortibus missis subsidio à  
and two cohorts having been sent for aid by

Cæsare, atque his primis duarum legionum,  
Cæsar, and these the first of two legions,

quum hæ constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexiguo  
when these had taken stand, a very small

spatio loci intermisso inter se,  
space of ground having been left between themselves.

nostris perterritis novo genere pugnæ,  
our (men) having been alarmed by the new kind of battle,

proruperunt audacissimè per medios  
they burst most daringly through the midst (of our men)

que receperunt se inde incolūmes.  
and betook themselves from there safe [safely].

Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus  
On this day Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune

militum interficitur: illi repelluntur, pluribus  
of soldiers is slain: they are repulsed, more

cohortibus submissis.  
cohorts having been sent up.

16. In hoc toto genere pugnæ, quum  
In this whole kind of battle, since

dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub oculis omnium ac  
it was fought under the eyes of all and

pro castris (pl.), intellectum est, nostros  
before the camp, it was understood, (that) our (men)

esse minùs aptos ad hostem hujus generis,  
to be [were] less adapted to an enemy of this kind,

propter gravitatem armorum, quòd possent  
on account of the weight of the arms, because they were able

(imp. subj.) nèque insèqui cedentes, nèque  
neither to pursue (them) yielding nor

auderent (imp. subj.) discedere ab signis;  
(did) they dare to depart from the standards;

autem equites dimicare prælio cum magno  
but the cavalry (to) contend in battle with great

pericūlo, propterèa quòd illi etiā cedèrent (imp.  
danger, because (that) they also were giving way

subj.) plerumque consultò; et quum removissent  
very often purposely; and when they had removed

(pluperf. subj.) nostros paulum ab legionibus,  
our (men) a little from the legions.

desilirent ex essēdis et contendērent  
they would leap down from the chariots and would contend

pedibus dispāri praelio. (Autem ratio  
with feet [on foot] in an equal fight. (But the method

equestris praelii, et cedentibus et  
of the cavalry fight, (they) both yielding and

insequentibus, inferebat par atque idem  
pursuing, was offering an equal and the same

periculum.) Accedebat huc,<sup>35</sup> ut  
[a like] danger) It was added to this, that

praeliarentur (imp. subj.) nunquam conferti, sed  
they were fighting never in close order, but

rari quae magnis intervallis, quae  
few [in open ranks] and at great distances, and

haberent (imp. subj.) stationes dispositas; atque alii<sup>36</sup>  
were having pickets posted, and some

exciperent (imp. subj.) alios deinceps, quae  
were relieving others in succession, and

integri et recentes succedērent (imp. subj.)  
fresh and new (men) were replacing

defatigatis.

the exhausted

17. Postēro dīe hostes constiterunt  
On the following day the enemy took stand

procul à castris (pl.) in collibus; quae rari  
far from the camp on the hills, and squads

coeperunt ostendēre se, et lacessere nostros  
began to show themselves, and to provoke our

equites praelio lentius, quam pridie.  
cavalry to battle more slowly, than the day before.

Sed meridie, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)  
But at noon, when Cæsar had sent

tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caiso  
three legions and all the cavalry with Caius

Trebonio legato causâ pabulandi,  
Trebonius the lieutenant for the sake of foraging.

advolaverunt they flew	repentè suddenly	ad to	pabulatores the foragers	ex from
omnibus all	partibus, parts [sides].	sic so	ŭti that they were	non not
absistèrent <sup>37</sup> keeping apart	(imp. subj.)	ab from	signis the standards	que and
legionibus the legions	Nostri, Our (men)	impëtü an attack	facto having been made	acriter sharply
in upon	ëos, repulerunt, them, repulsed (them).	nëque nor	fecerunt did they make	finem an end
insequendi, of pursuing.	quod while	equites, the cavalry.	confisi relying	subsidiö, on aid.
quum since	viderent (imp subj.) they were seeing	legiones the legions	post behind	
se, themselves.	egerunt drove	hostes the enemy	præcipites: headlong.	que magno and a great
numëro number	eorum of them	interfecto, having been killed	nëque neither	dederunt they gave
facultatem <sup>38</sup> the power [the chance]	colligendi of collecting	sui themselves	nëque nor	
consistendi, of halting.	aut or [nor]	desiliendi of leaping down	ex from	essëdis. the chariots.
Auxilia, The auxiliaries	quæ which	convenërant had assembled	undique, from every side.	
discesserunt departed	protinus immediately	ex after	hâc this	fŭgâ; nëque flight. nor
post id tempus after this time	(did)	hostes the enemy	unquam ever	contenderunt contended
[contend]	nobiscum with us	summis with (their) highest	copiis highest [entire]	forces.
18. Cæsar, Cæsar,	eorum their	consiliö design	cognïto, having been known	duxit led
exercitum the army	ad to	flumen the river	Tamësin Tamesis [Thames]	in into
fines the territories	Cassivellauni: of Cassivellaunus.	quod which	flumen river	pötest is able
transiri to be crossed	pedibus (pl.) on foot	omnino only	uno löco, in one place,	atque and



hoc ægrè. Quum venisset (pluperf subj.)  
 in this with difficulty When he had come  
 ěð, animadvertit magnas copias hostium  
 there he perceived (that) great forces of the enemy  
 esse instructas ad altĕram ripam fluminis.  
 to be [were] drawn up at [near] the other bank of the river.  
 Autem ripa ěrat munita acutis sudibus  
 But the bank was fortified with sharp stakes  
 præfixis, que sudes ejusdem generis defixæ  
 fixed in front, and stakes of the same kind driven  
 sub aquâ tegebantur flumīne. His rebus  
 under water were covered by the river These things  
 cognitis à captivis que perfūgis,  
 having been learned from the prisoners and deserters,  
 Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, jussit  
 Cæsar the cavalry having been sent before, ordered  
 legiones subsĕqui confestim. Sed milites  
 the legions to follow immediately But the soldiers  
 iĕrunt ěâ celeritate atque eo  
 went with this [such] speed and with this [such]  
 impĕtu, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex  
 force, when they were standing out from  
 aquâ capite solo, ut hostes possent  
 the water with the head alone, that the enemy were able  
 (imp. subj.) non sustinere impĕtum legionum  
 not to withstand the attack of the legions  
 que equitum, que dimittĕrent (imp. subj.)  
 and of the cavalry and were abandoning  
 ripas ac mandarent (imp subj.) se  
 the banks and were consigning themselves  
 fūgæ.  
 to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-  
 Cassivellaunus all hope of a contest having been  
 positâ, ut demonstravimus suprâ, amploribus  
 abandoned, as we have shown above (his) larger  
 copiis dimissis, circiter quatŕor millibus  
 forces having been dismissed, about four thousand

essedariorum relicitis, servabat nostra  
 (of) charioteers having been left was watching our  
 itinēra, que excedebat paulum ex vīā,  
 marches. and was withdrawing a little from the way,  
 que occultabat sese impeditis atque  
 and was concealing himself in entangled and  
 silvestribus lōcis, atque compellebat pecōra (pl.)  
 woody places. and was driving the cattle  
 atque homīnes ex agris in silvas īs  
 and men from the fields into the woods from these  
 regionibus, quibus cognovērat nos fac-  
 regions. in which he had known us [we] about to [would]  
 turos iter et quum noster equitatus ejecerat  
 make the march and when our cavalry cast  
 se liberius in agros causā vastandi  
 itself more freely into the fields for the sake of ravaging  
 que prædandi, emittebat essedarios ex  
 and of plundering. he was dispatching the charioteers from  
 silvis omnibus viis que semitis; et configebat  
 the woods by all ways and paths and was combatting  
 cum his cum magno periculo nostrorum equitum;  
 with them with great danger of [to] our horsemen.  
 atque hoc metu prohibebat vagari  
 and by this fear was hindering (them) to rove [from roving]  
 latius Relinquebatur, ut Cæsar neque  
 more widely. It was left that Cæsar neither  
 pateretur discedi<sup>39</sup> longius ab  
 would allow (it) to be departed [them to depart] farther from  
 agmine legionum; et noceretur  
 the marching line of the legions: and it might be injured [they  
 might injure] hostibus in vastandis agris, que  
 (to) the enemy in ravaging the fields and  
 faciendis incendiis tantum quantum legionarii  
 in making burnings [fires] as much as the legionary  
 milites poterant efficere labore atque itinere.  
 soldiers were able to effect by labor and on the march  
 20. Intērim Trinobantes, propè firmissima  
 Meanwhile the Trinobantes, nearly the strongest

civitas earum regionum, ex quâ Mandubracius  
state of these countries. from which Mandubracius

adolescens, secutus fidem Cæsaris,  
a youth having secured the good faith of Cæsar,

venerat ad eum in continentem (Galliâ), (cujus  
had come to him to the continent (Gaul), (whose

pater obtinuerat regnum in eâ  
father had obtained the kingdom [the throne] in this

civitate, que interfectus erat à Cassivellauno;  
state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus;

ipse vitaverat mortem fugâ,) mittunt  
he himself had avoided death by flight,) send

legatos ad Cæsarem, que pollicentur dedit-  
ambassadors to Cæsar, and promise (that) to be about to

uros (esse) sese ei et facturos  
[they would] surrender themselves to him and about to [would] do

imperata Pêtunt ut defendat  
(his) commands They request that he may defend

Mandubratium ab injuriâ Cassivellauni, atque  
Mandubracius from the injustice of Cassivellaunus, and

mittat in civitatem, qui præsit  
may send (him) into (their) state. who may preside [be over it]

que obtineat imperium. Cæsar imperat his(dat.)  
and may obtain the authority Cæsar orders these

quadraginta obsides que frumentum  
(to furnish) forty hostages and corn

exercitui; que mittit Mandubratium ad eos.  
for the army. and sends Mandubracius to them.

Illi fecerunt imperata celeriter; miserunt  
They did (his) commands quickly; they sent

obsides ad numerum, que frumentum.  
hostages to the number (stated). and corn.

21. Trinobantibus defensis. atque  
The Trinobantes having been protected, and

prohibitis ab omni injuriâ militum,  
having been kept from all injury of the soldiers.

Cenimagni, Segontiâci, Ancalites, Bibrôci, Cassi,  
the Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancaltes, Bibroci, Cassi,

legationibus missis, dediderunt sese  
 embassies having been sent, surrendered themselves  
 Cæsari. Cognoscit ab his, oppidum  
 to Cæsar. He understands from these, (that) the town  
 Cassivellauni abesse non longè ex ðo  
 of Cassivellaunus to be [is] distant not far from this  
 lōco, munitum silvis que paludibus, quò  
 place, fortified by woods and by marshes, whither  
 numèrus sãtis magnus hominum que pecõris  
 a number sufficiently great of men and of cattle  
 convenërit (perf. subj.). Autem Britanni vöcant  
 has assembled. But the Britons call  
 oppidum, quò consueverunt convenire,  
 (that) a town, where they have been accustomed to assemble,  
 causã vitandæ incursionis hostium, quum  
 for the sake of avoiding an invasion of the enemy, when  
 munierunt impeditas silvas vallo  
 they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart  
 atque fossã. Eò proficiscitur cum legionibus:  
 and a trench. Thither he sets out with the legions:  
 repërit lōcum egregiè munitum naturã atque  
 he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and  
 opëre; tãmen contendit oppugnare hunc  
 by work [art]: however he endeavors to storm this  
 ex duabus partibus. Hostes morati  
 from [on] two sides. The enemy having delayed  
 paulisper, non tulerunt impëtum nostrorum  
 a little while, did not bear the attack of our  
 militum, que ejecerunt sese ex aliã parte  
 soldiers, and cast out themselves from another part  
 oppidi. Magnus numèrus pecõris repertus (est)  
 of the town. A great number of cattle was found  
 ibi; que multi<sup>40</sup> comprehensi sunt atque interfecti  
 there; and many were seized and killed  
 in fūgã.  
 in the flight.

22. Dum hæc geruntur in his  
 While these (things) are transpiring in these

lōcis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntios ad Cantium,  
places, Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium

[Kent], quod demonstravimus supra esse ad  
which we have shown above to be [is] at [near]

mare, quibus regionibus quatuor reges praeerant,  
the sea, which countries four kings ruled,

Cingetōrix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax; atque  
Cingetorix, Carvilius. Taximagulus. Segonax: and

imperat his, ut omnibus copiis  
he commands these, that all (their) forces

coactis, adoriantur navalia castra (pl.)  
having been collected, they attack the naval camp

de improvise, atque oppugnent. Quum hi  
unexpectedly, and storm (it). When these

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,  
had come to the camp, our (men).

eruptione facta, multis eorum inter-  
a sally having been made many of these having been

fectis, etiam nobili duce Lugotorige  
killed, also (their) noble leader Lugotorix

capto, reduxerunt suos incolūmes  
having been taken (they) led back their (men) safe.

Cassivellaunus, hoc praelio nuntiato, tot  
Cassivellaunus, this battle having been announced so many

detrimentis acceptis, finibus  
reverses having been received. (his) territories (having been)

vastatis, etiam maxime permotus defectione  
ravaged also chiefly alarmed by the revolt

civitatum, mittit legatos ad Caesarem per  
of the states sends ambassadors to Caesar through

Commium Atrebatem de deditioe. Quum  
Commius the Atrebatian about a surrender. Since

Caesar statuisset (pl. perf. subj.) agere hiemem  
Caesar had resolved to spend the winter

in continente propter repentinos motus  
on the continent on account of the sudden commotions

Galliae; neque multum aestatis superesset  
of Gaul; nor much of the summer was remaining;



(imp. subj.); atque intelligēret (imp. subj.), id  
and he was understanding (that), this

posse extrāhi facīlè, impērat  
to be able [could] (to) be protracted easily, he demands

obsīdes; et constitūit quid vectigalis Britannīa  
hostages; and decreed what (of) tribute Britain

pendēret Romano popūlo in singūlos annos  
should pay to the Roman people (on) each year.

(pl.) Interdicit<sup>41</sup> atque impērat Cassivellauno  
He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus,

(dat.), ne nocēat Mandubracio (dat.), neu  
(that) he may not injure Mandubracius, nor

Trinobantibus.

the Trinobantes.

23. Obsidibus acceptis, reducit  
The hostages having been received, he leads back

exercitum ad mǎre: invenit naves refectas.  
the army to the sea: he finds the ships repaired.

His deductis, constitūit reportare  
These having been launched he resolved to carry back

exercitum duobus com meatibus, et quòd  
the army by two passages, both because

habebat magnum numērum captivorum, et  
he was having a great number of prisoners, and

nonnullæ naves deperiērant tempestate. Ac  
some ships had perished by the storm. And

accidit sic, ut ex tanto numēro navium  
it happened so, that from so great a number of ships

tot navigationibus, nēque hoc nēque  
in so many voyages, neither in this nor

superiore anno, ulla navis omnino, quæ  
in the foregoing year, any ship at all which

portaret (imp. subj.) milites, desideraretur (imp.  
was carrying the soldiers, was missing

subj.), at ex iis, quæ remitterentur  
but from [of] these, which were sent back

(imp. subj.) inanes ad ěum ex continente, et<sup>42</sup>  
empty to him from the continent, (and)

militibus	prioris	commeatûs	expositis,
the soldiers	of the former [first]	passage	having been landed.
et	quas <sup>43</sup>	Labienus	postea
and	which	Labienus	afterwards
faciendas,	numero	sexaginta,	perpaucae
to [should] be made.	in number	sixty,	very few
caperent (imp. subj.)	locum,	ferè	omnes
were taking [reaching]	the place,	nearly	all
reliquae	rejicerentur (imp. subj.).	Quas <sup>44</sup>	quum
the rest	were thrown back.	Which	when
Cæsar	expectasset (pl. perf. subj.)	aliquandiu	frustra,
Cæsar	had awaited	some time	in vain,
ne	excluderetur	navigazione	tempore
lest	he might be prevented	from the voyage	by the time
anni,	quod æquinoctium	suberat,	necessario
of the year.	because the equinox	was near.	(he) necessarily
collocavit	milites	angustius.	Ac
stowed	the soldiers	more closely.	And
summam	tranquillitatem	quum	solvisset
the utmost	calm	when	he had cast loose,
(pl. perf. subj.),	secundâ	vigilâ	inîtâ,
	the second	watch	having been begun,
attigit	terram	primâ	luce,
he touched	land	in the first	light [early dawn],
perduxit	omnes	naves	incolumes.
brought in	all	the ships	safe
24. Navibus	subductis,	que	concilio
The ships	having been drawn up	and	a council
Gallorum	Samarobrivæ	peractò,	
of the Gauls	at Samarobriua	having been completed,	
coactus est	collocare	exercitum	in hibernis
he was compelled	to place	the army	in winter quarters
aliter	ac	superioribus	annis,
otherwise	than	in former	years,
legiones	in	plures civitates,	quod èo
the legions	into	more states	because in this
frumentum	provenerat	angustius	in
the corn	had yielded	more narrowly [scantily]	in

Galliã, propter siccitates: ex quibus<sup>45</sup>  
 Gaul, on account of the droughts, from [of] which

dedit unam Caio Fabio legato ducendam  
 he gave one to Caius Fabius the lieutenant to be led

in Morinos, alteram Quinto Ciceroni in  
 among the Morini. another to Quintus Cicero among

Nervios, tertiam Lucio Roscio in Esvios;  
 the Nervii, the third to Lucius Roscius among the Esvii;

jussit quartam hiemare in confinio Trevirorum,  
 he ordered the fourth to winter on the border of the Treviri,

in Remis cum Tito Labieno: collocavit tres  
 among the Remi with Titus Labienus: he placed three

in Belgio: præfecit his Marcum Crassum  
 in Belgium: he appointed over these Marcus Crassus

quæstorem, et Lucium Munatium Plancum, et  
 (as) quæstor, and Lucius Munatius Plancus, and

Caïum Trebonium legatos. Misit unam  
 Caius Trebonius (as) lieutenants. He sent one

legionem, quam conscripserat proximè trans Pädum,  
 legion, which he had levied very lately across the Po,

et quinque cohortes, in Eburones, maxima  
 and five cohorts, into the Eburones, the greatest

pars quorum est inter Mösam et Rhenum,  
 part of whom is between the Mense and the Rhine.

qui erant sub imperio Ambiorigis et  
 who were under the authority of Ambiorix and

Catuvolei. Jussit legatos Quintum Titurium  
 of Catuvolcus. He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius

Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam  
 Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

præesse his militibus (dat.). Legionibus distri-  
 to command these soldiers. The legions having been

butis ad hunc modum, existimavit  
 distributed according to this manner, he thought (that he)

sese posse mederi facillimè frumentaria  
 himself to be able [could] (to) relieve most easily (to) the corn

inopiæ: atque tamen hiberna omnium  
 scarcity: and moreover the winter quarters of all

harum legionum continebantur centum millibus  
 of these legions were contained in a hundred thousand

passūm (præter eam, quam dedērat Lucio  
 (of) paces (except this (one), which he had given to Lucius

Roscio ducendam in pacatissimam et  
 Roscius to be led into the most peaceful and

quietissimam partem). Inter ea ipse constituit  
 calmest portion). Meanwhile (he) himself resolved

morari in Galliā, quoad cognovisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
 to tarry in Gaul, until he had known

legiones collocatas, que hiberna  
 (that) the legions being [were] settled, and the winter quarters

munita.  
 fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutibus Tasgetius natus  
 There was among the Carnutes Tasgetius born

summo loco; cujus majores obtinuērunt  
 in the highest place [rank], whose ancestors had obtained

regnum in sua civitate. Cæsar  
 the kingdom [sovereignty] in their own state. Cæsar

restituērat locum majorum huic pro  
 had restored the position of (his) ancestors to him for

ejus virtute atque benevolentia in se,  
 his valor and (his) good will toward himself,

quod usus fuerat ejus singulari (abl.) operā  
 because he had used his remarkable works

in omnibus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt  
 [efforts] in all the wars. (His) enemies slew

hunc palam, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis  
 him openly, reigning now the third year, many

etiam ex civitate auctoribus. Ea  
 also from [of] the state (being) authors (of the deed). This

res defertur ad Cæsarem. Ille veritus,  
 matter is reported to Cæsar. He having feared,

ne civitas deficeret impulsu eorum,  
 lest the state might revolt by the instigation of these,

quod res pertinebat ad plures, celeriter  
 because the affair was relating to several, quickly

jūbet Lucium Plancum proficisci in Carnutes  
 orders Lucius Plancus to set out among the Carnutes  
 cum legione ex Belgio, que hiemare ibi;  
 with a legion from Belgium, and to winter there.  
 que mittere hos comprehensos ad se,  
 and to send those arrested to himself.  
 op̄râ<sup>46</sup> quorum cognov̄it Tasgetium  
 by the work of whom he may have learned Tasgetius

interfectum. Int̄rim factus est certior  
 (to have [had] been) killed Meantime he was made more sure  
 [was informed] ab omnibus legatis que  
 by all the lieutenants and  
 quæstoribus, quibus tradid̄rat legiones,  
 quæstors, to whom he had delivered the legions.

perventum esse in hiberna, que  
 to have been [that they had] arrived into winter quarters, and  
 locum munitum hibernis.  
 the place (to have [had] been) fortified for winter quarters

26. Quind̄cim diebus / circ̄ter quibus  
 In fifteen days about in which [since]  
 ventum est in hiberna, initium  
 it was come [they came] into winter quarters, the beginning

repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab  
 of a sudden tumult and revolt arose by

Ambiorige et Catuvolco: qui quum fuissent  
 Ambiorix and Catuvoleus: who although they had been  
 (pl. perf. subj.) præstò Sabino que Cottæ  
 near (to) Sabinus and (to) Cotta

ad fines sui regni, que comportavissent  
 at the borders of their kingdom and had carried

(plup. subj.) frumentum in hiberna, impul-  
 corn into winter quarters, having been

si nuntis Indutiomari Treviri,  
 instigated by the messengers of Indutiomarus the Treviri,

concitaverunt suos que lignatoribus  
 incited their own (people), and the wood cutters

oppressis subitò, venerunt magnâ  
 having been overwhelmed suddenly, they came with a great



mānu oppugnatum castra (pl.). Quum nostri  
 band to assault the camp. When our (men)  
 cepissent (pl. perf. subj.) arma celerīter, que  
 had taken arms quickly, and  
 adscendissent (pl. perf. subj.) vallum, atque  
 had ascended the rampart. and  
 Hispanis equitibus emissis ex unā  
 the Spanish cavalry having been sent out from one  
 parte, fuissent (pl. perf. subj.) superiores,  
 part [side]. had been superior  
 equestri praelio, re desperatā,  
 in the cavalry fight. the thing [action] having been despaired of.  
 hostes reduxerunt suos ab oppugnatione.  
 the enemy led back their (men) from the assault.  
 Tum conclamaverunt suo more, uti aliqui  
 Then they cried out in their manner, that some  
 ex nostris prodirent ad colloquium;  
 from [of] our (people) should come forth to a conference;  
 sese habere, quæ vellent  
 (that they) themselves (to) have (things), which they wish  
 (imp. subj.) dicere de communi re, quibus  
 to say about a common matter. by which  
 sperarent (imp. subj.) controversias posse  
 they were hoping (that) the disputes to be able [could]  
 minui.  
 (to) be diminished

27. Caius Arpineius, Romanus eques, familiaris  
 Caius Arpineius, a Roman knight. an acquaintance

Quinti Titurii mittitur ad eos causā  
 of Quintus Titurius is sent to them for the sake  
 colloquendi; que Quintus Junius, quidam ex  
 of conferring; and Quintus Junius, a certain (one) from

Hispaniā, qui jam antè consueverat  
 Spain, who already before had been accustomed

ventitare ad Ambiorigem, missu Cæsaris.  
 to come often to Ambiorix, on the mission of Cæsar.

Apud quos Ambiorix locutus est in hunc  
 Before whom Ambiorix spoke after this

mōdum: "Sese confiteri debere  
 manner: "He himself to confess [confesses] to owe [that he owed]

plurimum ei, pro beneficiis Cæsaris in  
 very much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar toward

se, quòd ejus opĕrâ liberatus esset (pl. perf.  
 himself, because by his efforts he had been freed

subj.) stipendiō, quod consuēset (pl. perf.  
 from the tribute, which he had been accustomed

subj.) pendĕre suis finitimis Aduatucis; que  
 to pay to his neighbors the Aduatuci; - and

quòd et filius et filius fratris,  
 because both (his) son and the son of (his) brother,

quos Aduatuci tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) in  
 whom the Aduatuci had held in

servitute et catenis apud se, missos  
 slavery and chains among themselves, having been sent

numĕro obsidum, remissi essent (pl. perf. subj.)  
 in the number of hostages, had been returned

ab Cæsare: neque fecisse id,  
 by Cæsar: nor (that he) to have [had] done this

quod fecerit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione  
 which he had done in the storming

castrorum (pl.), aut judicĭo aut  
 of the camp, either by (his own) judgment or

sua voluntate, sed coactu civitatis: que  
 his own will, but by compulsion of the state: and

sua imperia (pl.) esse ejusmodi, ut  
 his own authority to be [was] of this sort, that

multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non minus  
 the multitude were having not less

juris in se, quàm ipse in  
 (of) jurisdiction towards himself than (he) himself towards

multitudinem. Porrò hanc fuisse causam  
 the multitude. Moreover this to have [had] been the cause

belli civitati: quòd potuerit (perf. subj.)  
 of war for the state: because he was able

non resistĕre repentinæ conjurationi Gallorum;  
 not to withstand (to) the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls;

se posse probare id facîle ex  
 he himself to be [was] able to prove this easily from

sũâ humilitate; quòd sit non adèd  
 his own humbleness [weakness]; because he is not so

imperitus rerum (gen.), ut confidat  
 unacquainted with things, that he may trust (that he)

se posse superare Romanum popũlum  
 himself to be able [can] (to) overcome the Roman people

sũis copĩis; sed esse commune consilium  
 with his forces; but to be [it is] the common design

Galliæ. Hunc esse dictum diem omnibus  
 of Gaul. This to be [is] the said [appointed] day of all

hibernis Cæsaris oppugnandis, ne qua  
 the winter quarters of Cæsar to be assaulted, lest any

legiõ posset venire subsidio altëri  
 legion might be able [should] (to) come for aid to another

legioni: Gallos<sup>47</sup> non facîle potuisse negare  
 legion Gauls not easily to have been [are] able to refuse

Gallis (dat.); præsertim quum consilium videretur  
 Gauls; especially when a design was seeming

(imp. subj.) initum de recuperandâ  
 entered into concerning regaining

communi libertate. Quibus quoniam satisfacërit  
 (the) common liberty. Whom since he has satisfied

(perf. subj.) pro pietate, se  
 for [as regarded] patriotism, (he) himself

habere nunc rationem officii; monere<sup>48</sup>  
 to have [had] now a regard of moral duty; to advise

Cæsãrem pro beneficiis, orare Titurium pro  
 Cæsar for (his) kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for

hospitiõ, ut consũlat sũæ saluti  
 (his) hospitality, that he may consult for his own safety

ac militum: magnam mãnum Germanorum  
 and (that) of the soldiers: a great band of Germans

conductam transisse Rhenum; hanc  
 having been hired (to) have crossed the Rhine; this

affõre bidũo: esse<sup>49</sup> ipsorum  
 to be about to [would] be in two days: to be [it is] their

consilium vēlint ne deducere milites eductos  
 counsel whether they wish to conduct the soldiers led out

ex hibernis aut ad Ciceronem aut ad  
 from winter quarters either to Cicero or to

Labienum, prius quàm finitimi sentiant,  
 Labienus, before (that) (their) neighbors may perceive (it):

alter quorum absit (pres. subj.) circiter quinquaginta  
 the one of whom is distant about fifty

millia passuum, alter paulò amplius:  
 thousand (of) paces, the other a little more:

se polliceri illud et  
 (that he) himself to promise [promises] that [this] and

confirmare jurejurando, se dat-  
 to affirm [affirms] by oath, (that he) himself about to

urum tutum iter per suos fines:  
 [would] give a safe journey through his territories:

quod<sup>50</sup> quum faciat sese et consulere  
 which when he does (he) himself both to consult

civitati, quòd levetur  
 [consults] for the state, because it may be relieved

hibernis, et referre gratiam Cæsari  
 from winter quarters, and to return [returns] a favor to Cæsar

pro ejus meritis." Hæc oratione habitâ,  
 for his services." This speech having been delivered.

Ambiorix discedit.  
 Ambiorix departs.

28. Caius Arpineius et Junius defērunt ad  
 Caius Arpineius and Junius report to

legatos quæ audiērant. Illi perturbati  
 the lieutenants what they had heard. They much disturbed

repentinâ re, etsi hæc  
 by the sudden affair [condition], although these (things)

dicebantur ab hoste, tamen existimabant  
 were said by an enemy. however were thinking (that

they) non negligenda: que maxime  
 not to [must not] be neglected and especially

permovebantur hæc re, quòd erat  
 were much alarmed by this affair [condition] because it was

vix	credendum	ignobilem	atque	humilem
hardly	to be believed (that)	the mean	and	humble
civitatem	Eburonum	ausam (esse)	facere	
state	of the Eburones	to [would] have dared	to make	
bellum	sua	sponte	Romano	populo.
war	by [of] its own	accord	on the Roman	people
Itaque	defecerunt	rem	ad concilium,	que
Therefore	they report	the matter	to a council	and
magna	controversia	existit	inter eos	Lucius
a great	controversy	arises	among them.	Lucius
Aurunculeius	que complures	tribuni	militum	et
Aurunculeius	and very many	tribunes	of soldiers	and
centuriones	primorum ordinum	existimabant	"nihil" <sup>51</sup>	
centurions	of the first ranks	were thinking	"nothing	
agendum	temere,	neque	discedendum	
to [must] be acted	rashly	nor	to be departed [must they	
ex	hibernis	injussu	Caesaris.	
depart]	from winter quarters	without the command	of Caesar	
Docebant	quantasvis	magnas	copias	
They were showing	(that) howsoever	great	the forces	
etiam	Germanorum	posse	sustineri,	
even	of the Germans	to be able [they could]	(to) be withstood.	
hibernis	munitis.	Rem <sup>52</sup>		
the winter quarters	having been fortified	The thing [fact]		
esse	testimonio,	quod	sustinuērint (perf.	
to be [is]	for a testimony.	that	they have withstood	
subj.)	fortissimè	primum	impetum	hostium,
	most bravely	the first	attack	of the enemy.
multis	vulneribus	illatis	ultrò.	Non
many	wounds	having been inflicted	besides.	Not
premi	frumentaria	re.	Interèa <sup>53</sup>	
to be [They are not] pressed	by the corn	supply	Meantime	
subsidia	conventura	et	ex	proximis
aids	(to be) [are] about to assemble	both	from	the nearest
hibernis	et	à	Caesare.	Postremò, quid
winter quarters	and	from	Caesar	Lastly what
esse	levius	aut	turpius,	quam capere
to be [is]	lighter	or	more base	than to take



consilium de summis rebus, hoste  
 counsel about the most important matters, an enemy

auctore?

(being) the adviser?

29. Contra ěa Titurius clamitabat,  
 Against those (reasonings) Titurus was exclaiming.

"facturos serò, quum majores mānus  
 "about to [they would] act late, when greater bands

hostium, Germanis adjunctis, conven-  
 of the enemy. the Germans having been united, should have

issent; aut quum aliquid (neuter) calamitatis  
 assembled: or when some (of) calamity

acceptum essent in proximis hibernis.  
 might have [had] been received in the nearest winter quarters.

Occasionem consulendi esse brevem Arbitrari  
 The opportunity of consulting to be [was] short. To believe

Cæsarem profectum (esse) in Italiam:  
 [He believes] Cæsar to have [had] set out into Italy:

nęque<sup>54</sup> Carnutes aliter fuisse  
 neither the Carnutes otherwise to have been [would have]

capturos consilium interficiendi Tasgetii;  
 about to form [formed] the design of slaying Tasgetius;

nęque Eburones esse venturos ad castra  
 nor the Eburones to be about to [would] come to the camp

(pl.) cum tantā contempione nostri, si ille  
 with so great contempt of [for] us. if he

adesset (inip. subj.). Non spectare hostem  
 were near. He does not (to) regard the enemy

auctorem sed rem Rhenum subesse:  
 (as) an adviser but the fact. The Rhine to be [is] near:

mortem Ariovisti et nostras superiores victorias,  
 the death of Ariovistus and our former victories,

esse magno dolori Germanis: Galliam  
 to be [are] a (for) great grief to the Germans; Gaul

ardere tot contumeliis acceptis, reductam  
 is aflame so many insults having been received, reduced

sub imperium Romani populi, superiore  
 under the authority of the Roman people. the former

gloriâ militaris rēi (sing.) extinctâ.  
 glory of (its) military affairs having been extinguished.

Postremò, quis persuaderet<sup>55</sup> hoc sibi,  
 Lastly. who should persuade this to himself, (that)

Ambiorigem descendisse ad consilium  
 Ambiorix to have [had] descended to advice

ejusmodi sine certâ re? Sūam  
 of this kind without a sure thing [reason]? His

sententiâ esse tutam in utramque  
 opinion to be [was] safe for either

partem: si sit nil durius,  
 part [case]. if there may be nothing harder [worse],

perventuros (esse) ad proximam legionem  
 to be about to [they would] arrive at the nearest legion

cum nullo pericūlo; si omnis Gallia conseniât  
 with no danger if all Gaul conspires

cum Germanis, unam salutem esse positam  
 with the Germans the one safety to be [is] placed

in celeritate. Quidem quem exitum consilium  
 in speed Indeed what result [would] the advice

Cottæ atque eorum, qui dissentirent, haberet?  
 of Cotta and of those who might disagree, have?

In quo<sup>56</sup> si non præsens pericūlum, at certè  
 In which if not present danger, still certainly

fâmes esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."  
 famine would be to [must] be dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habitâ in utramque  
 This dispute having been kept up on both

partem (sing) quum resisteretur (imp subj.) acriter  
 sides since it was opposed sharply

à Cottâ que primis ordinibus; Sabinus inquit,  
 by Cotta and the first ranks. Sabinus says.

"Vincite, si vultis ita," et id clariore  
 "Conquer if ye wish so " and this with a louder

voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret:  
 voice that a great part of the soldiers might hear:

"nēque sum is," inquit, "ex vobis,  
 "neither am I this (man) " says he. "from [of] you.

qui terrëar gravissimè pericūlo mortis.  
 who is frightened most severely by the danger of death

Hi sapiënt; et, si quid gravius  
 These (men) will know; and, if any (thing) more severe

accidërit, reposcent rationem abs te:  
 shall have happened they will demand an account from thee:

qui, si licëat per te, conjuncti cum  
 who, if it were allowed by thee, being united with

proximis hibernis dië perendino,  
 the nearest winter quarters on the day after to-morrow.

sustinëant communem casum cum reliquis; nec  
 would endure a common chance with the rest nor

rejecti et relegati longè ab cætëris,  
 driven back and separated far from the rest.

intereant aut ferro aut fãme."  
 would perish either by iron [the sword] or by famine "

Consurgitur ex concilio: comprehendunt  
 It is risen [They rise] from the council they seize

utrumque et orant; "ne deducant rem  
 both and beseech, "they may not bring the thing

in summum periculum suã dissensione  
 [situation] into the highest danger by their dissension

et pertinaciã: rem esse facilem, seu  
 and obstinacy: the matter to be [is] easy, whether

manëant seu proficiscantur, si modò omnes  
 they remain or set out. if only all

sentiant ac pröbent unum Contrà,  
 may think and may approve one (thing) On the other hand.

se perspicere nullam salutem in  
 (they) themselves (to) perceive no safety in

dissensione." Res perducitur disputatione ad  
 "dissension." The matter is protracted in dispute to

mediam noctem.  
 mid night

31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat manus:  
 At length Cotta having been moved gives hands

sententiã Sabini supërat Pronuntiatur  
 [yields]: the opinion of Sabinus prevails It is announced

about to (that they) [would] go	ituros	at the first	primâ	light [day-break]	luce.
The remaining	Reliqua pars	of the night	noctis	is spent	consumitur
				in sleeplessness :	vigiliis (pl.);
since	quum quisque	soldier	miles	was examining	circumspiceret (imp. subj.)
his own (things)	sua,	what	quid	he might be able	posset
				to carry	portare cum
himself.	se, quid	he might be compelled	cogeretur	to leave	relinquere ex
the equipment	instrumento	of the winter quarters	hibernorum		Omnia <sup>57</sup>
					All (things)
are devised	excogitantur,	wherefore	quare	it may be remained [they may remain]	maneatur
not without	ne sine	danger	periculo,	and	et periculum
				may be increased	augeatur
by the weariness	languore	and	et	by the sleeplessness	vigiliis (pl)
				of the soldiers.	militum.
They set out	Proficiscuntur <sup>58</sup>	at the first	primâ	light [early dawn]	luce
					ex
the camp	castris (pl)	so [just]	sic,	as (they)	ut
				to whom	quibus esset (imp.
				it was	)
persuaded	subj ) persuasum	(that)		the advice	consilium
				to have [had] been given	datum esse
not by an enemy	non ab hoste,	but	sed <sup>59</sup>	by	ab amicissimo
				a most friendly	homine
Ambiorix	Ambiorige,	in a very long	longissimo	marching line	agmine
				and	que magnis
				with great	impedimentis (pl.).
					baggage
But	32 At	after (that)	posteaquam	the enemy	hostes
				learned	senserunt
their	eorum	departure	profectione	from	ex nocturno
				the night	fremitu
				and	que
sleeplessness.	vigiliis,	ambuscades	insidiis	having been placed	collocatis
				in two divisions	bipartitò
in the woods,	in silvis,	in a convenient	opportuno	and	atque occulto
				secret	lòco,
					place.

expectabant adventum Romanorum à circiter  
they were waiting the approach of the Romans at about

duobus millibus passuum: et quum major  
two thousand (of) paces: and when the greater

pars agminis demisisset (pl. perf. subj.)  
part of the marching-line had sent down

se in magnam convallem, ostenderunt  
itself [descended] into a great valley, they showed

sese subito ex utraque parte ejus vallis;  
themselves suddenly on each side of this valley;

que cœperunt premere novissimos et prohibere  
and began to press the newest [rear] and to hinder

primos adscensu, atque committere prælium  
the first [van] from the ascent, and to engage battle

lōco iniquissimo nostris.  
in a place most unfavorable to our (men).

33. Tum demum Titurius trepidare,  
Then at last Titurius to bustle [bustled],

concursare que disponere cohortes, ūti  
to run [ran] about and to arrange [arranged] the cohorts, as

qui providisset (pl. perf. subj.) nihil antè,  
(one) who had foreseen nothing before,

tāmen, hæc ipsa timidè, atque  
however, (he did) these (things) themselves timidly, and

ut omnia viderentur (imp. subj.) deficere  
as (if) all (things) were seeming to fail (him)

quod plerumque consuevit accidere iis qui  
which usually is accustomed to happen to those who

coguntur capere consilium in negotio ipso.  
are forced to take counsel in the business itself.

At Cotta, qui cogitasset (pl. perf. subj.) hæc  
But Cotta, who had thought these

posse accidere in itinere, atque  
(things) to be able to [could] happen on the march, and

ob eam causam non fuisset (pl. perf.  
on account of this reason had not been

subj.) auctor profectionis, deerat communi  
the adviser of the departure, was failing for the common



salutī in nullā re; et præstabat<sup>60</sup> officia  
 safety in no thing: and was performing the duties  
 imperatoris in appellandis que cohortandis militibus  
 of a general in addressing and exhorting the soldiers  
 et militis in pugnâ. Que quum propter  
 and of a soldier in the battle. And when on account of  
 longitudīnem agmīnis, possent (imp. subj.)  
 the length of the marching-line, they were able  
 mīnūs facilē obire omnia per se,  
 less easily to perform all (things) by themselves,  
 et providere, quid esset faciendum quoque  
 and to provide, what might be to [must] be done in every  
 lōco; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut relinquērent  
 place; they ordered (it) to be proclaimed that they should leave  
 impedimenta atque consistērent in orbem.  
 the baggage and should take stand in a circle.  
 Quod consilium, etsi est non  
 Which [This] plan although it is not  
 reprehendendum in casu ejusmodi, tamen  
 to be blamed in a case of this kind however  
 accidit incommōdè: nam minuit spem nostris  
 happened badly: for it diminished hope to [in] our  
 militibus, et effecit hostes alacriores  
 soldiers. and rendered the enemy more eager  
 ad pugnandum; quòd id videbatur<sup>61</sup> factum (esse)  
 for fighting. because this was seeming to have been done  
 non sine summo timore et  
 not without the highest [utmost] fear and  
 desperation. Præterea accidit, quod erat  
 despair Besides it happened, what was  
 necesse fieri, ut milites  
 necessary to be done [to occur] that the soldiers  
 discedērent (imp subj) volgò ab signis;  
 were withdrawing generally from the standards:  
 que quisque eorum properaret (imp subj) petere  
 and every one of them was hastening to seek  
 atque arripere ab impedimentis, quæ  
 and to seize from the baggage, what

habēret carissīma; et omnīa complerentur  
he might hold most dear; and all (places) were filled

(imp. subj.) clamore ac fetu.  
with noise and with bewailing [lamentation]

34. At consilium defuit non barbāris.  
But prudence was wanting not to the barbarians

Nam dūces eorum jusserunt  
For the leaders of them [their leaders] commanded (it)

pronuntiari totā acīe, ne quis  
to be announced in the whole battle-line. that not any (one)

discederet ab lōco: quæcunque Romani  
should depart from (his) place: whatsoever the Romans

reliquissent, esse illorum prædam, atque  
might have left. to be [was] their plunder, and

reservari illis: proinde existimarent  
to be [was] reserved for them: wherefore they should think

omnīa posita in victoriā. Nostri  
(that) all (things) (were) placed [hung] on victory. Our (men)

erant pāres pugnando et virtute et numēro:  
were equal in fighting both in valor and in number.

tametsi deserebantur è dūce et  
although they were deserted by (their) general and by

fortunā, tāmen ponebant omnem spem salutis  
fortune, however they were putting all hope of safety

in virtute; et quoties quæque cōhors  
in valor; and as often as every cohort

procurreret (imp. subj.), magnus numērus hostium  
was charging, a great number of the enemy

cadebat ab eā parte. Quā re  
were falling on that side. Which thing

animadversā, Ambiorix jussit pronuntiari,  
having been observed, Ambiorix ordered (it) to be announced.

ut conjiciant tela procul neu  
that they cast (their) weapons from a distance. nor

accedant propiūs; et in quam partem  
approach nearer; and on what (-ever) side

Romani fecerint impētum, cedant;  
the Romans made an attack, (that) they give way;

nihil<sup>62</sup> posse noceri ïis  
nothing to be able [could] (to) be injured [injure] to them [them]

levitate armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione:  
by the lightness of (their) arms and by daily exercise

insequantur recipientes se rursus  
(that) they pursue (them) betaking themselves again

ad signa  
to the standards

35 Quo præcepto observato diligentissimè  
Which direction having been observed most carefully

ab ïis, quum quæpiam cõhors excesserat ex  
by them, when any cohort had gone out from

orbe, atque fecerat impetum, hostes  
the circle and had made an attack, the enemy

refugiebant velocissimè; intërim erat necesse  
were retiring most swiftly meantime it was necessary

nudari eâ parte, et tela  
to be exposed on this side and (that) weapons

recipi ab aperto latere. Rursus, quum  
to [would] be received on the open flank Again, when

cœperant adverti in eum locum, unde  
they had begun to return into this place, whence

egressi erant, circumveniebantur et ab ïis,  
they had gone out, they were surrounded both by those,

qui cesserant et ab ïis, qui steterant  
who had given way and by those, who had stood

proximi; autem sin vellent (imp. subj.) tenere  
nearest but if they wished to hold

locum, neque locus relinquebatur  
(their) place [ground]. neither a place [opportunity] was left

virtuti, neque conferti poterant vitare tela  
for valor nor crowded were they able to avoid the weapons

conjecta à tantâ multitudîne. Tâmen conflictati  
hurled by so great a multitude However having struggled

tam multis incommõdis, multis vulneribus  
with so many disadvantages, many wounds

acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ  
having been received, they were withstanding; and a great

parte diei consumptâ, committebant nihil,  
part of the day having been spent. they were doing nothing.

quod esset indignum ipsis (abl.), quum  
which would be unworthy themselves, although

pugnaretur (imp. subj.) à primâ luce  
it was fought [they fought] from the first light [early dawn]

ad octavam horam. Tum<sup>63</sup> utrumque femur  
to the eighth hour [two o'clock] Then each thigh

transjicitur tragulâ Tito Balventio, forti  
is pierced with a javelin to [of] Titus Balventius, a brave

viro, et magnæ auctoritatis, qui<sup>64</sup> duxerat primum  
man and of great authority. who had led the first

pilum superiore anno. Quintus Lucanius  
century in the former year. Quintus Lucanius

ejusdem ordinis pugnant fortissimè interficitur,  
of the same rank fighting most bravely is slain,

dum subvenit filio (dat.) circumvento.  
while he aids (his) son having been surrounded.

Lucius Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes  
Lucius Cotta the lieutenant encouraging all

cohortes que ordinés, vulneratur fundâ in  
the cohorts and ranks is wounded with a sling on

adversum os.  
the front face [squarely in the face]

36 Quintus Titurius permotus his rebus,  
Quintus Titurius much alarmed by these things

quum conspexisset (pl perf subj) Ambiorigem  
when he had beheld Ambiorix

procul cohortantem suos, mittit suum  
at a distance exhorting his (men) sends his

interprætém, Cnæium Pompeium ad eum, rogatum,  
interpreter Cnæius Pompey to him, to beseech.

ut parcat sibi (dat) que militibus (dat). Ille  
that he may spare himself and the soldiers He

appellatus respondit, "licere  
having been addressed answered "to be [it is] allowed

collôqui secum, si velit; sperare  
to confer with himself. if he wishes; to hope [he hopes it]

posse                      impetrari                      à                      multitudīne,  
to be able [can]                      (to) be obtained                      from                      the multitude.

quod    pertinēat    ad    salutem    milītum :    verò  
what    may relate    to    the safety    of the soldiers :    but

nihil                      nocitum iri                      ipsi :    que  
nothing    to be about to be hurt [should harm]    (to) himself :    and

se    interponere    suam    fidem    in    eam  
(he) himself    to put [puts]    his own    good faith    on    this

rem."    Ille    communicat    cum    saucio    Cottā ;  
thing."    He    communicates    with    the wounded    Cotta :

"si    videatur,                      ut    excedant    pugnā,  
"if    it may seem (best),    that    they retire    from the battle,

et    colloquantur    unā    cum    Ambiorīge ;    se  
and    confer    together    with    Ambiorix ;    (he) himself

sperare                      posse                      impetrari                      ab    eo  
to hope [hopes]    to be able    to [that it can] be obtained    from    him

de    suā    salute    ac                      milītum."    Cottā  
about    his own    [safety    and    (that) of the soldiers."    Cotta

nēgat                      se                      iturum    ad    armatum  
refuses    (that he) himself    (about) to [should] go    to    an armed

hostem atque perseverat in eo. (37.) Sabinus jubet  
enemy    and    persists    in this.    Sabinus orders

tribuno    milītum,    quos    habebat    circum  
the tribunes    of soldiers,    whom    he was having    about

se    in præsentiā,    et    centuriones    primorum  
himself    at present,    and    the centurions    of the first

ordinum,    sequi    se ;    et    quum    accessisset  
ranks,    to follow    himself ;    and    when    he had approached

(pl. perf. subj.) propius Ambiorīgem,    jussus  
nearer    Ambiorix,    having been ordered

abjicere    arma,    facit    imperatum,    que  
to throw aside    (his) arms,    he performs    the command.    and

impērat    suis (dat.),    ut    faciant    idem.    Intērim,  
commands    his (men),    that    they do    the same.    Meantime.

dum    agunt    inter    se    de    conditionibus,  
while    they treat    between    themselves    about    conditions,

que    longior    sermo    instituitur    consultò    ab  
and    a rather long    speech    is undertaken    designedly    by



Ambiorige, circumventus paulatim, interficitur.  
 Ambiorix. having been surrounded gradually he is killed

Tum verò conclamant victoriã atque tollunt  
 Then indeed they shout victory and raise

ululatum sũo more que impẽtu facto  
 a whoop in their manner and an attack having been made

in nostros, perturbant ordĩnes Ibi  
 upon our (men) they disorder the ranks There

Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur, cum maximã  
 Lucius Cotta fighting is killed with the greatest

parte militum: reliqui recipiunt se in  
 part of the soldiers: the rest betake themselves into

castra (pl.), unde egressi erant. Ex  
 the camp. whence they had gone out From [Of]

quĩbus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer project  
 whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle bearer [ensign] cast

aquilam intra vallum, cum premeretur (imp.  
 the eagle within the rampart when he was pressed

subj) magnã multitudĩne hostium; ipse  
 by a great multitude of the enemy: (he) himself

pugnans fortissimẽ pro castris (pl) occiditur.  
 fighting most bravely before the camp is slain

Alii agrẽ sustinent oppugnationem ad  
 The others hardly [barely] support the assault until

noctem; ipsi omnes ad unum, salute  
 night (they) themselves all to one [to a man] safety

desperatã, interficiunt se noctu  
 having been despaired of. kill themselves by night.

Pauci elapsi ex prælio perveniunt  
 A few having escaped from the battle arrive

incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum  
 by uncertain routes through the woods to Titus

Labienum legatum in hiberna; atque  
 Labienus the lieutenant into winter quarters and

faciunt eum certiozem de rebus  
 make him more sure [inform him] of the things

gestis.  
 carried on.

38. *Ambiōrix* *sublatus* *hāc* *victoriā,* *stātim*  
*Ambiorix* *elated* *by this* *victory* *immediately*  
*proficiscitur* *cum* *equitatu* *in* *Aduatucos,*  
*sets out* *with* *(his) cavalry* *unto* *the Aduatuci.*  
*qui* *erant* *finitimi* *ejus* *regno;* *nēque*  
*who* *were* *neighbors* *to his* *kingdom.* *neither*  
*intermittit* *dīem* *nēque* *noctem;* *que* *jūbet*  
*does he pause* *day* *nor* *night.* *and* *he orders*  
*peditatum* *subsēqui* *se* *Re* *demonstratā,*  
*the infantry* *to follow* *himself* *The affair* *having been explained.*  
*que* *Aduatucis* *concitatis,* *pervēnit* *postēro*  
*and* *the Aduatuci* *having been incited* *he arrives* *on the following*  
*dīe* *in* *Nerviōs,* *que* *hortatur*  
*day* *among* *the Nervi.* *and* *exhorts (them)* *“(that)*  
*“ne dimittant* *occasionem* *liberandi* *sūi*  
*they may not let slip [lose]* *the opportunity* *of freeing* *themselves*  
*in perpetūm,* *atque* *ulciscendi* *Romanos* *pro*  
*forever* *and* *of punishing* *the Romans* *for*  
*īis* *injurīis,* *quas* *accepērunt* (perf. subj.);  
*those* *injuries,* *which.* *they have received*  
*demonstrat* *dūos* *legatos* *interfectos esse,*  
*he shows (that)* *two* *lieutenants* *(to) have been killed,*  
*que magnam partem exercītūs* *interisse:* *esse,*  
*and a great* *part* *of the army* *(to) have perished.* *to be*  
*nīhil*<sup>65</sup> *negotīi* *legionem*  
*[that there is]* *nothing* *of business [no trouble]* *the legion*  
*subitō* *oppressam,* *quæ hiēmet* (pres. subj.)  
*suddenly* *having been overwhelmed.* *which* *winters*  
*cum Cicerone* *interfici:* *profitetur* *se*  
*with* *Cicero* *(that it) to [should] be slain:* *he declares* *himself*  
*adjutorem* *ad* *eam* *rem.*  
*a helper* *for* *this* *thing.*

39 *Persuadet* *Nerviōis* (dat.) *facilē* *hāc* *oratione.*  
*He persuades* *the Nervi* *easily* *by this* *speech.*

*Itaque* *nunciīs* *dimissis* *confestim* *ad*  
*Therefore* *messengers* *having been dispatched* *immediately* *to*  
*Centrones,* *Grudīos* *Levācos,* *Pleumoxios,* *Geidumnos,*  
*the Centrones* *Grudii,* *Levaci,* *Pleumoxii,* *Geidumni.*

qui omnes sunt sub eorum imperio, cogunt  
 who all are under their authority, they collect  
 manus quàm maximas<sup>66</sup> possunt; et  
 bands as greatest [great as] they can, and  
 advolant de improvise ad hiberna Ciceronis,  
 fly unexpectedly to the winter quarters of Cicero,  
 famâ de morte Titurii nondum  
 the report about the death of Titurius not yet  
 perlatâ ad eum. Accidit quoque huic,  
 having been brought to him. It happened also to him,  
 quod fuit necesse,<sup>67</sup> ut nonnulli milites,  
 which [as] was necessary, that some soldiers,  
 qui discessissent (pl. perf. subj.) in silvas  
 who had departed into the woods  
 causâ lignationis que munitionis  
 for the sake of wood cutting and of fortification  
 interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu  
 were cut off by the sudden arrival  
 equitum. His circumventis, Eburones,  
 of the cavalry. These having been-surrounded, the Eburones,  
 Aduatuci, Nervii, atque socii et clientes  
 Aduatuci, Nervii, and the allies and dependents  
 omnium horum, incipiunt oppugnare legionem  
 of all these, begin to assault the legion  
 magnâ manu. Nostri celeriter concurrunt  
 with a great throng. Our (men) quickly run together  
 ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dies  
 to arms; they mount the rampart. This day  
 sustentatur ægrè, quòd hostes  
 is supported hardly [with difficulty]. because the enemy  
 ponebant omnem spem in celeritate, atque  
 were placing all hope in haste, and  
 adepti hanc victoriam, confidebant  
 having obtained this victory, they were trusting  
 se fore victores  
 (that they) themselves to be about to [would] be conquerors  
 in perpetuum.  
 forever.

40. Litĕræ (pl.)	mittuntur (pl)	confestim	ad
A letter	is sent	immediately	to
Cæsārem à Cicerone,	magnis præmiis	pro-	
Cæsar by Cicero.	great rewards	having been	
positis, si pertulissent.	Omnibus viis		
offered, if they should carry (it).	All the ways		
obsessis,	missi intercipiuntur.	Centum	
having been blockaded,	(those) sent are intercepted.	A hundred	
et viginti turres excitantur	incredibili celeritate		
and twenty towers are raised	with incredible speed		
noctu ex eâ materiâ,	quam comportaverant <sup>68</sup>		
by night from this material,	which they had brought together		
causâ munitionis.	Quæ videbantur		
for the sake of fortification.	What (things) were appearing		
deesse opĕri perficiuntur.	Hostes, multo		
to be wanting to the work are completed.	The enemy. much		
majoribus copiis	coactis,	oppugnant	
greater forces	having been collected,	assault	
castra (pl.)	postĕro die,	complent fossam.	
the camp	on the following day.	they fill up the trench.	
Resistitur à nostris	eâdem ratione,		
It is withstood by our (men)	in the same manner,		
quâ pridie :	hoc idem fit		
in which [as] the day before :	this same (thing) is done		
deinceps reliquis diebus.	Nulla pars		
afterwards on the remaining days	No part		
nocturni temporis intermittitur	ad laborem :		
of the night time is discontinued	for the labor :		
facultas quietis datur non ægris, non			
an opportunity of [for] rest is given not to the sick, nor			
vulneratis	Quæcunque sunt	opus	
to the wounded	Whatever (things) are	necessary	
ad oppugnationem proximi diei,	comparantur		
for the assault of the next day.	are prepared		
noctu. Multæ sudes præustæ,	magnus		
by night. Many stakes burnt at the point,	a great		
numĕrus muralium pilorum instituĭtur;	turres		
number of mural [wall-] javelms is prepared.	towers		

contabulantur;<sup>69</sup>      pinnæ      que      loricæ      attexuntur  
are built up;      battlements      and      parapets      are woven

ex      cratibus.      Cicero      ispe,      quum      esset  
from [of]      hurdles.      Cicero      himself.      although      he was

(imp. subj.)      tenuissimâ      valetudinē,      relinquebat  
in very delicate      health.      was leaving

ne      nocturnum<sup>70</sup>      tempus      quidem      sibi      ad  
not      the night      time      even      to himself      for

quietem;      ut      cogeretur (imp. subj.)      parcere  
rest;      so that      he was compelled      to spare

sibi (dat.)      ultrò      concursu  
himself      beyond [contrary to] (his wishes)      by the running

ac      vocibus      militum.  
[thronging] (to him)      and      voices [words]      of the soldiers.

41. Tunc      dūces      que      principes      Nerviorum,  
Then      the leaders      and      chiefs      of the Nervii,

qui      habebant      aliquem      aditum      sermonis      que  
who      were having      some      access      of speech      and

causam      amicitiae      cum      Cicerone,      dicunt  
cause      of friendship      with      Cicero,      say

sese      velle      collōqui.      Potestate  
(that they) themselves      (to) wish      to parley.      The opportunity

factâ,      commemorant      eâdem,      quæ  
having been made,      they relate      the same (things).      which

Ambiōrix      egērat      cum      Tituriō:      "Omnem  
Ambiorix      had treated      with      Titurius.      "All

Galliā esse      in armis:      Germanos      transisse  
Gaul      to be [is]      in      arms:      the Germans      (to) have crossed

Rhenum:      hiberna      Cæsaris      que      reliquorum  
the Rhine.      the winter quarters      of Cæsar      and      of the rest

oppugnari."      Addunt      etiā      de      morte  
to be [are] stormed."      They add      also      about      the death

Sabini.      Ostentant<sup>71</sup>      Ambiorigem      causâ  
of Sabinus.      They display      Ambiorix      for the sake

faciundæ      fidēi.      Dicunt      eos  
of making      faith [credit].      They say      (that) these

errare,      si      sperent      quidquam      præsidii      ab  
(to) mistake,      if      they hope      any      (of) protection      from



īis, qui diffidant (pres. subj) sūis rebus :  
those, who distrust (to) their own affairs :

tāmen sese esse hoc animo  
however (they) themselves to be [are] with [of] this mind

in Ciceronem que Romanum popūlum, ut  
towards Cicero and the Roman people, that

recusent nihil, nīsi hiberna, atque  
they may refuse nothing, except the winter quarters, and

nolint hanc consuetudinem inveter-  
are unwilling (that) this custom to [should] be

ascēre;<sup>72</sup> licere per se illis  
established ; (it) to be [is] allowed by themselves to them

discedere incolumibus ex hibernis, et  
to depart safe from the winter quarters, and

proficisci sine metu in quascunque partes  
to set out without fear into whatever parts

vēlint. Cicero respondit mōdō unum  
they may wish. Cicero answered only one (thing)

ad hęc : "Non esse consuetudinem  
to these : "Not to be [It is not] the custom

Romani popūli accipere ullam conditionem ab  
of the Roman people to receive any condition from

armato hoste : si vēlint discedere ab  
an armed enemy . if they wish to withdraw from

armis, utantur se ad jutore, que  
arms, they may use himself (as) a helper. and

mittant legatos ad Cæsarem : se  
may send ambassadors to Cæsar . (he) himself

sperare impetraturos, quæ  
to hope [hopes] them (to be) about to [they may] obtain, what

petierint, pro<sup>73</sup> ejus justitiā."  
they may have sought, on account of his justice."

42. Nervii repulsi ab hęc spe,  
The Nervii having been repulsed from this hope,

cingunt hiberna vallo undecim  
surround the winter quarters with a rampart of eleven

pēdum et fossā quindēcim pēdum. Cognoverant  
feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had learned

hæc et à nostris consuetudīne  
these (things) also from our (men) by the custom

superiorum annorum; et nacti quosdam  
of former years; and having got some

captivos de exercītu, docebantur ab his.  
prisoners of (our) army. they were taught by these.

Sed nulla copīa ferramentorum his,  
But (there was) no supply of iron tools for them,

quæ esset idoneā ad hunc usum.  
which might be suitable for this use.

Cogebantur circumcidere cæspitem gladīs,  
They were forced to cut round the sod with swords,

exhaurire terram manibus que  
to draw out the earth with (their) hands and (carry it)

sagūlis. Ex quā re quīdem, multitudo  
in cloaks. From which thing indeed, the multitude

homīnum potuit cognosci. Nam mīnus  
of men was able to be known. For in less (than)

tribus horis perfecerunt munitionem quīndēcim  
three hours, they finished a fortification of fifteen

millium passuum in circūitu. Que cœperunt  
thousand (of) paces in compass. And they began

parare ac facere turres reliquis diebus  
to prepare and to make towers on the remaining days

ad altitudinem valli, falces que  
to the height of the rampart, wall hooks and

testudīnes, quas iidem captivi docuerant.  
shelters, which the same prisoners had taught (them).

43. Septimo die oppugnationis, maximo  
On the seventh day of the siege, a very great

vento coorto, cœperunt jacere fundis  
wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings

ferventes glandes ex fusili argillâ, et fervefacta  
hot balls of fusible clay, and heated

jacūla in cāsas, quæ tectæ erant stramentis  
javelins on the cottages, which had been covered with straw

(pl.) Gallico more. Hæ comprehenderunt  
in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celeriter, et magnitudine venti,  
 fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,  
 distulerunt<sup>74</sup> in omnem locum castrorum (pl.).  
 spread (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maximo clamore,  
 The enemy having followed with a very great shout,

quasi victoriã partã atque exploratã  
 as if the victory (had) been obtained and assured

jam, cœperunt agere turres que  
 already, began to drive the towers and

testudines et ascendere vallum scalis.  
 shelters and to mount the rampart with ladders.

At tanta fuit virtus atque presentia animi  
 But so great was the valor and the presence of mind

militum, ut, quum torrentur (imp. subj.)  
 of the soldiers, that, although they were scorched

flammã undisque, que premerentur (imp. subj.)  
 by the flame on every side, and were pressed

maximã multitudinẽ telorum, que  
 with a very great multitude of weapons, and

intelligerent (imp. subj.) omnia sua impedimenta  
 were understanding (that) all their baggage

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non  
 and all (their) fortunes to be [were] on fire, not

modò nemo decederet (imp. subj.) de vallo  
 only no one was withdrawing from the rampart

causã demigrandi, sed<sup>75</sup> ne quisquam pãne  
 for the sake of going away, but not any one hardly

respiceret (imp. subj.) quidem; ac tum  
 was looking back even; and besides

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrimẽ que  
 all were fighting most vigorously and

fortissimẽ. Hic dies fuit longẽ gravissimus  
 most bravely. This day was by far the most severe

nostris; sed tãmen habuit hunc eventum, ut  
 for our (men). but however it had this issue, that

ẽo diẽ maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur  
 on this day the greatest number of the enemy was wounded

(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. subj.); ut  
and was killed. as

constipaverant se sub vallo ipso,  
they had crowded themselves under the rampart itself

que ultimi dabant non recessum  
[the very rampart] and the last were giving no retreat

primis. Quidem flammâ intermissâ paulum,  
to the first. Indeed the flame [fire] having ceased a little,

et turri adactâ quodam loco, et  
and a tower having been forced up in a certain place. and

contingente vallum, centuriones tertię  
touching the rampart. the centurions of the third

cohortis recesserunt ex ěo loco, quo  
cohort retired from this place. in which

stabant, que removerunt omnes suos;  
they were standing. and removed all their (men):

cœperunt vocare hostes nutu que vocibus,  
they began to call the enemy by nod [sign] and by voices

si vellent introire, nemo quorum  
[words]. if they wished to enter no one of whom

ausus est progrēdi. Tum deturbati (sunt)  
dared to advance Then they were beaten off

lapidibus coniectis ex omni parte, que turris  
by stones thrown from every side. and the tower

succensa est.  
was set on fire.

44. Erant in ěâ legione fortissimi  
(There) were in this legion (two) very brave

viri, centuriones, Titus Pullo et Lucius Varenus,  
men. centurions. Titus Pullo and Lucius Varenus,

qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis  
who now were approaching (to) the first

ordinibus. Hi habebant perpetuas  
ranks (of centurions) These were having constant

controversias inter se, ũter  
controversies between themselves. (as to) which of the two

anteferretur altĕri; que contendebant  
should be preferred to the other; and they were striving





defigitur is fixed	in in	baltëo. (his) belt.	Hic This	casus mishap	avertit turns away
vaginam the scabbard	et and	moratur retards	dextram (his) right	mānum hand	
conantis endeavoring	educere to draw out	gladïum, (his) sword,	que and	hostes the enemy	
circumsistunt surround	impeditum. (him) entangled.	Varenus Varenus	mimicus (his) rival		
succurrit succours [runs to help]	illi(dat.), him,	et and	subvënit comes up [brings aid]	(to him)	
laboranti. laboring.	Omnis All	multitudo the multitude	fonfestim immediately	convertit turns	
se itself	à from	Pullone Pullo	ad to	hunc. him.	Arbitrantur They think
	illum him	transfixum run through [pierced]	verũto. with the javelin.	Illic There.	verò however
Varenus Varenus	occursat runs up	ocĩus very quickly	gladĩo with (his) sword	que and	
gërit carries on	rem the affair	comĩnũs; hand to hand,	atque and	uno one	
interfecto, having been killed.	propellit he repulses	relĩquos the rest	paullũm. a little.	Dum While	
instat he presses on	cupidiũs more eagerly,	dejectus having been thrown down	concidit he fell		
in upon	inferiorem a lower	lõcum. place	Pullo Pullo	rursus again	fert brings
subsidĩum aid	huic to him	circumvento; surrounded,	atque and	ambo both	incolũmes, safe,
complurĩbus several	interfectis, having been killed	recipiunt betake	sese themselves		
cum with	summã the highest [greatest]	laude praise [applause]	intra within		
munitiones. the fortifications.	Sic Thus	fortuna fortune	versavit turned [treated]	utrumque each	
in in	contentione (their) strife	et and	certamĩne, contest,	ut (so) that	alter the one
inimicus rival	esset (imp subj) was	auxiliõ (for) an aid	que and	saluti safety	

altĕri; nĕque posset (imp. subj.) dijudicari,  
to the other, nor was it possible to be decided,

ŭter videretur anteferendus ŭtri  
which of the two should seem to be preferred to the other

virtute.

in valor.

45. Quantò gravĭor atque asperĭor  
As much more severe and more arduous

oppugnatiō erat indĭes, et maxĭmè quòd,  
the siege was daily, and chiefly because,

magnâ parte milĭtum confectâ vulnerĭbus,  
a great part of the soldiers having been spent with wounds

res pervenĕrat ad paucitatem  
the case had come to a fewness [scarcity]

defensorum; tantò crebriores litĕræ que  
of defenders, so much more frequent letters and

nunciĭ mittebantur ad Cæsārem; pars quorum  
messengers were sent to Cæsar; a part of whom

deprehensa necabatur cum cruciatu in  
having been caught was put to death with torture in

conspectu nostrorum milĭtum. Erat unus  
sight of our soldiers. There was one

Nerviŭs intŭs, nomĭne Vertico, natus honesto  
Nervian within, by name Vertico, born in an honorable

lōco, qui profugerat ad Ciceronem à  
place [rank], who had fled to Cicero from

primâ obsidiōne, que præstitĕrat sŭam fidem  
the first siege, and had exhibited his fidelity

ĕi. Hic persuadet servo (dat.), spe  
to him. This (man) persuades a slave, with the hope

libertatis que magnis præmiis, ut defĕrat  
of liberty and by great rewards, that he carry

litĕras (pl.) ad Cæsārem. Ille affert has (pl.)  
a letter to Cæsar. He bears this

illigatas in jacŭlo; et Gallus versatus  
tied up in a javelin; and the Gaul having mingled

inter Gallos sine ullŭ suspiciōne, pervenit  
among the Gauls without any suspicion, comes

ad Cæsarem, Cognoscit ab eo de periculo  
to Cæsar He learns from him of the danger

Ciceronis que legionis.  
of Cicero and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, litteris (pl) acceptis circiter  
Cæsar, the letter having been received about

undecimâ horâ diei, mittit nuncium  
the eleventh hour of the day. sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in  
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor among

Bellovacos, cujus hiberna abèrent ab  
the Bellovaci, whose winter quarters were distant from

eo viginti quinque millia passuum. Jûbet  
him twenty five thousand (of) paces. He orders

legionem proficisci mediâ nocte, que venire  
the legion to set out at mid-night, and to come

celeriter ad se. Crassus exiit cum  
speedily [quickly] to himself. Crassus came out with

nuncio. Mittit alterum ad Caium  
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabium legatum, ut adducat legionem  
Fabius the lieutenant, that he lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatium, quâ sciebat  
into the territories of the Atrebrates, where he was knowing

iter faciendum sibi (dat.). Scribit  
the march to [would] be made by himself. He writes

Labienu, si posset facere commodo  
to Labienus, if he might be able to do (it) with the advantage

rei publicæ, veniat cum legione ad  
of the state, (that) he come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pûtat reliquam  
the territories of the Nervii He thinks the remaining

partem exercitûs non expectandam,  
part of the army (must) not (to) be waited for,

quod aberat paulo longius: cogit circiter  
because it was distant a little farther, he collects about

quadringentos equites ex proximis hibernis.  
four hundred cavalry from the nearest winter quarters-

47. Factus est certior de adventu  
 He was made more sure [was informed] of the arrival

Crassi ab antecursoribus circiter tertîâ horâ  
 of Crassus by scouts about the third hour.

(abl.): progreditur viginti millia passuum  
 he advances twenty thousand (of) paces

ĕo dñe. Præficit Cassum Samarobrivæ,  
 on this day. He appoints Crassus to Samarobriva,

que attribuit legionem ĕi; quod relinquebat  
 and assigns a legion to him; because he was leaving

ibi impedimenta exercitûs, obsides civitatum,  
 there the baggage of the army, the hostages of the states,

publicas litēras, que omne frumentum, quod  
 the public letters, and all the corn, which

devexerat ĕd causâ<sup>79</sup> tolerandæ  
 he had conveyed down there for the sake of enduring

hiemis. Fabius, ut imperatum ĕrat, moratus  
 the winter. Fabius, as it had been commanded, having delayed

non ita multum, occurrit cum legione in  
 not so (very) much, meets (him) with a legion on

itinēre. Labienus, interitu Sabini, et  
 the march. Labienus, the destruction of Sacinus, and

cæde cohortium cognitâ, quum omnes  
 the slaughter of the cohorts having been known, when all

copiæ Trevirorum venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad  
 the forces of the Treviri, had come to

ĕum, veritus ne, si fecisset  
 [against] him, having feared lest, if he should make

profectionem ex hibernis similem fugæ,  
 the departure from winter quarters like (to) a flight,

ut posset non sustinere impetum  
 that he might be able not to support the attack

hostium, præsertim quos sciret (imp. subj.)  
 of the enemy, especially whom he was knowing

efferi recenti victoriâ, dimittit litēras  
 to be [were] elated by the late victory, despatches a letter

(pl.) Cæsari, cum quanto periculo esset  
 to Cæsar, (to say) with how great danger he was

(imp. subj.)	educturus	legionem	ex
	about to [he would] lead out	the legion	from
hibernis:	perscribit	rem	gestam
winter quarters:	he details	the affair	carried on
			in
			among
Eburonibus:	dõcet	omnes	copias
the Eburones:	he shows (that)	all	the forces
			peditatûs
			of infantry
que	equitatûs	Trevirorum	consedisse
and	of cavalry	of the Treviri	(to) have halted
			trîa
			three
millia	passûum	longè	ab
thousand	(of) paces	away	from
			suis castris (pl.).
			his camp.
48. Cæsar,	ejus consilio	probato,	etsi
Cæsar,	his plan	having been approved,	although
	dejectus	opinione	trîum
(having been) disappointed	in the expectation	of three	
legionum,	recidërat <sup>80</sup>	ad dũas,	tãmen
legions,	was reduced	to two,	however
			ponebat
			he was putting
unum	auxilium	communis	salutis
the one	aid	of the common	safety
			in
			celeritate.
			haste.
Vënit	magnis	itineribus	in
He comes	by great	marches	into
			fines
			the territories
Nerviorum.	Ibi	cognoscit	ex
of the Nervii.	There	he learns	from
			captivis,
			the prisoners,
quæ	gerantur (pres. subj.)	ãpud	Ciceronem,
what (things)	are transpiring	with	Cicero,
que	in quanto	pericũlo	res
and	in how great	danger	the case [matter]
			sit (pres. subj.).
			is.
Tum	persuadet	cuidam	ex
Then	he persuades	(to) a certain (person)	from [of]
			Gallis
			the Gallic
equitibus	magnis	præmiis,	ũti
horsemen	by great	rewards.	that
			defërat
			epistolam
			a letter
ad	Ciceronem.	Mittit	hanc
to	Cicero.	He sends	this
			conscriptam
			written
			Græcis
			in Greek
litëris;	ne,	epistolã	interceptã,
letters;	lest,	the letter	having been intercepted,
			nostra
			our
consilia	cognoscantur	ab	hostibus.
plans	may be learned	by	the enemy.
			Mõnet,
			He advises (him),
si	non	posset	adire,
if	he may not	be able	to approach to (Cicero),
			ut
			objiciat
			that
			he cast



tragŭlam cum epistolâ deligatâ ad amentum  
a javelin with the letter tied to the thong

intra munitiones castrorum (pl.) Scribit  
within the fortifications of the camp He writes

in litēris (pl.), se profectum  
in the letter, (that he) himself having set out to be about

affōre celerīter cum legionibus,  
to [would] be present speedily [quickly] with the legions,

hortatur ut retinēat pristīnam virtutem.  
he encourages (him) that he retain (his) ancient valor.

Gallus veritus pericŭlum, mittit  
The Gaul having feared danger, sends [throws]

tragŭlam, ut præceptum erat. Hæc adhæsit  
the javelin, as it had been ordered This stuck

ad turrim casu, nēque animadversa (est)  
to a tower by chance, nor was perceived

bidŭo ab nostris; tertio die  
for two days by our (men), on the third day

conspicitur à quodam milite; dempta  
it is seen by a certain soldier, having been taken down

defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille recitat per-  
it is carried to Cicero. He reads aloud, (it) having

lectam in conventu militum, que  
been read through, in an assembly of the soldiers, and

afficit omnes maxīmâ lætitiâ. Tum  
affects all with the greatest gladness Then

fumi (pl.) incendiorum videbantur (pl.) præcul,  
the smoke of the fires was seen afar off,

quæ res expulit omnem dubitationem adventus  
which thing banished all doubt of the approach

legionum.  
of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognitâ per  
The Gauls, the fact having been learned by

exploratores, relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt  
spies, leave [raise] the siege; they set out

ad Cæsarem omnibus copiis; hæc erant  
to Cæsar with all (their) forces; these were

circiter	sexaginta	millia	armatorum.	Cicero,
about	sixty	thousand	(of) armed (men)	Cicero,
facultate	dātā,	repētit	Gallum	ab
the opportunity	having been given,	requests	the Gaul	from
eodem	Verticone,	quem	demonstravimus	suprà,
the same	Vertico,	whom	we have pointed out	above,
qui	defērat	litēras (pl.)	ad Cæsārem.	Admōnet
who	carried	a letter	to Cæsar	He admonishes
hunc,	faciat	iter	cautè	que
him,	(that) he make	the journey	cautiously	and
diligenter.	Perscribit	in	litēris (pl.),	(that)
carefully.	He writes	in	the letter,	
hostes	discessisse	ab	se, que	omnem
the enemy	(to) have departed	from	himself and	all
multitudīnem	convertisse	ad	ĕum.	Quibus
the multitude	(to) have turned	to	him.	Which
litēris (pl.)	allatis	Cæsāri	circiter	mediā
letter	having been brought	to Cæsar	about	mid
nocte,	fācit	certiores	sūos	que
night,	he makes	more sure [informs]	his (men)	and
confirmat	ĕos	anīmo	ad dimicandum.	Postĕro
strengthens	them	in mind	for fighting	On the following
dīe	mōvet	castra (pl.)	primā	luce,
day	he moves	the camp	at the first	light [early dawn],
et	progressus	circiter	quatūor	millia
and	having advanced	about	four	thousand
passūm,	conspicatur	multitudīnem	hostīum	
(of) paces,	he discovers	the multitude	of the enemy	
trans	magnam vallem	et	rivum.	Erat
beyond	a great valley	and	rivulet	It was
magni	pericūli	dimicare	cum tantulis	copiis
of great	danger	to contend	with such small	forces
iniquo	lōco.	Tāmen	quoniam	sciebat
in an unfavorable	place	However	since	he was knowing
Ciceronem	liberatum (fuisse)	obsidione,		
(that)	Cicero	to have [had] been delivered	from the siege,	
que	ĕd	existimabat	remittendum <sup>81</sup>	
and	therefore	was thinking (it)	to be [he must relax] relaxed	

æquō animō de celeritate, consedit, et  
with an easy mind from speed, he halted, and

communit castra (pl.) lōco quā̄m æquissīmo  
fortifies the camp in a place as (most) favorable

pōtest: atque etsi hæc ěrant (pl.)  
(as) he is able [possible]: and although this was

exiguā per se (pl.), vis septem  
small by itself, scarcely (of) [for] seven

millium homīnum, præsertim cum nullis  
thousand men, especially with no

impedimentis; tāmen contrāhit quā̄m maxīmē  
baggage; yet he contracts (it) as much as

pōtest, angustūs viarum ěo consilio, ut  
he is able, by narrow passages, with this design, that

veniat in summam contemptionem  
he may come into the highest contempt

hostibus. Intĕrim speculatoribus dimissis  
to [with] the enemy. Meantime scouts having been sent

in omnes partes, explorat quo itinĕre  
into all parts, he examines by what route

posset transire vallem commodissimē.  
he may be able to cross the valley most conveniently.

50. Eo diē, parvūlis equestribus præliis  
On this day, trifling cavalry battles

factis ad āquam, utrique continent  
having been made at the water, each [both] keep

sese sūo lōco. Galli, quōd exspectabant  
themselves in their place. The Gauls, because they were awaiting

amphores copias, quæ nondum convenĕrant:  
more extensive forces, which had not yet assembled:

Cæsar, si fortĕ posset elicĕre hostes  
Cæsar, if perhaps he might be able to entice the enemy

in sūum lōcum citra vallem  
into his own place on this side the valley

simulatione timoris, ut contendĕret  
by a pretence of fear, (so) that he might contend

prælio pro castris (pl): si posset non  
in battle before the camp: if he would be able not

efficere to effect	id, this,	ut, that	itineribus the routes	exploratis, having been examined,	
transiret he might cross	vallem the valley	que and	rivum rivulet	cum with	minore less
pericūlo. danger.	Primâ At the first	luce, light [early dawn],		equitatus the cavalry	
hostium of the enemy	accedit approaches	ad to	castra (pl.), the camp,	que and	
committit joins	prœlium battle	cum with	nostris our	equitibus. cavalry.	Cæsar Cæsar
consultò designedly	jūbet orders	equites the horse men	cedere to yield	que and	recipere to betake
se themselves	in into	castra (pl.), the camp,	sīmul at the same time	jūbet he orders	
castra (pl.) the camp	muniri to be fortified	altiore with a higher	vallo rampart	ex from [on]	
omnibus all	partibus, parts [sides],	que and	portas the gates	obstrui, (to be) barricaded,	
atque and	concursari <sup>82</sup> to be hurried [to hurry]		quàm maxīmâ as much as possible	in in	
administrandis performing	his these	rebus, things,	et and	âgi to be acted [to act]	
cum with	simulatione a pretence	timoris. of fear.			

51. Omnibus quibus rebus hostes invitati  
By all which things the enemy having been induced

transducunt lead over	copias, (their) forces,	que and	constitunt station	aciem the battle-line	
iniquo in an unfavorable	loco. place.	Verò But	nostris our (men)	etiã also	
deductis having been led down	de from	vallo, the rampart.	accedunt <sup>83</sup> they approach		
propius; nearer;	et and	conjiciunt throw	tela (their) weapons	ex from	omnibus all
partibus sides	intra within	munitiõnem: the fortification:	que and	præconibus criers	
circummissis, having been sent about,	jūbent they order (it)	pronuntiarı; to be declared.	seu whetho		

quis Gallus seu Romanus vēlit transire ad  
anyone. Gaul or Roman, may wish to pass over to

se ante tertiam horam, licere  
themselves before the third hour, to be [it, is] allowed

sine pericūlo: post<sup>84</sup> id tempus, potestatem  
without danger. after this time, the opportunity

non fore: ac contempserunt  
not to be about to [will not] be: and they despised

nostros sic, ut, portis obstructis  
our (men) so. that. the gates having been barricaded

in speciem singulis ordinibus cęspitum,  
in [for] appearance with single rows of sods,

quod videbantur non posse introrumpere  
because they were seeming not to be ab'z to burst in

ęa, alii incipērent (imp. subj.) scandere  
by that (way), some were beginning to climb

vallum manu, alii complere fossas.  
the rampart by hand, others to fill up the trenches.

Tunc Cęsar, eruptione facta omnibus  
Then Cęsar, a sally having been made from all

portis que equitatu emissu, dat  
the gates and the cavalry having been sent out, gives [puts]

hostes celeriter in fugam; sic ut nemo  
the enemy quickly to flight, so that no one

omnino resisteret (imp. subj.) causā pugnandi,  
of all was withstanding for the sake of fighting,

que occidit magnum numerum ex his,  
and he slew a great number from [of] these,

atque exiit omnes armis (abl.).  
and stripped off all (their) arms.

52. Veritus prosęqui longius, quod  
Having feared to pursue (them) farther. because

silvę que paludes intercedebant; (nęque<sup>85</sup>  
woods and marshes were intervening; (nor,

videbat locum relinqui parvulo  
(was) lie was seeing the place (to be) left with trifling

detrimento illorum); omnibus suis copiis  
loss of them [on their part]), all his forces



incolumibus, pervēnit eodem dīe ad Ciceronem.  
 safe, he comes on the same day to Cicero.

Admiratur turrēs, testudīnes, que munitiones  
 He admires the towers, shelters, and the fortifications

hostium, institutas. Legione  
 of the enemy, (which they) prepared. The legion

productā, cognoscit quemque decimum  
 having been drawn out, he learns (that) every tenth

militem non relictum esse sine  
 soldier (was) not (to have been) left without

vulnere. Ex omnibus his rebus, judicat,  
 a wound. From [Of] all these things, he judges,

cum quanto periculo, et cum quantā virtute,  
 with how great danger, and with how great valor,

res administratæ sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat  
 affairs were managed. He commends

Ciceronem pro ejus merito (sing.), que  
 Cicero according to his deserts, and

legionem: appellat sigillatim centuriones que  
 the legion: he addresses individually the centurions and

tribunos militum, quorum virtutem cognovērat  
 tribunes of the soldiers whose valor he had known

fuisse egregiam testimonio Ciceronis.  
 to have [had] been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.

Cognoscit certius de casu Sabini  
 He learns more surely of the calamity of Sabinus

et Cottæ ex captivis. Postero dīe,  
 and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,

concione habitā, proponit rem  
 an assembly having been held, he sets before (them) the affair

(as it) gestam: consolatur et confirmat  
 transpired: he consoles and encourages

milites: docet detrimentum, quod  
 the soldiers: he shows (that) the loss, which

acceptum sit (perf. subj.) culpā et temeritate  
 has been received by the fault and rashness

legati, ferendum æquiore animo  
 of the lieutenant, to [must] be borne with more even mind

hoc ; from this [on this account] ;		quòd because		beneficō by the kindness	
immortalium of the immortal	deorum, gods.	et and	eorum by their	virtute, valor,	
incommōdo the disadvantage	expiato, having been atoned for.		nēque neither	diutīna a lasting	
lætatiō rejoicing	relinquatur (pres. subj.) is left		hostībūs, to the enemy,	nēque nor	
longior longer	dōlor grief	ipsis. to themselves.			
53. Intērim Meantime	fama the report	de of	victoriā the victory	Cæsaris of Cæsar	
perfertur is carried	ad to	Labienum Labienus	per by	Remos the Remi	incredibili with incredible
celeritate ; expedition .	ut, (so) that,	quum though	abesset (imp. subj.) he was distant		
quingenta fifty	millia thousand	passūm (of) paces	ab from	hibernis the winter quarters	
Ciceronis, of Cicero.	que and	Cæsar Cæsar	pervenisset (pl. subj.) had arrived	ēō there	
post after	nonam the ninth	horam hour	diei, of the day	clamor a shout	oriretur was rising
(imp. subj.)	ante before	mediam mid	noctem night	ad at	portas the gates
castrorum (pl.) ; of the camp ;		quo by which	clamore shout	significatiō an indication	
victoriæ of victory	que and	gratulatiō congratulation	fīret (imp. subj.) was made		
Labieno to Labienus	ab by	Remis. the Remi.	Hâc This	famâ report	perlatâ having been carried
ad to	Treviros, the Treviri,	Indutiomârus, Indutiomarus.	qui who	decreverat had resolved	
oppugnare to assault	castra (pl.) the camp	Labieni of Labienus		postēro on the following	
diē, day.	profūgit flees	noctu by night	que and	reducit leads back	omnes all
copias (his) forces	in among	Treviros. the Treviri.	Cæsar Cæsar	remittit sends back	

Fabium cum legione in sua hiberna.  
 Fabius with the legion into their winter quarters.

Ipsè constituit hiemare trinis hibernis  
 He himself resolved to winter in triple winter quarters

cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam: et  
 with three legions about Samarobriua; and

quòd tanti motus Galliae exstiterant  
 because so great disturbances of Gaul had arisen

ipse decrevit manere totam hiemem  
 (he) himself determined to remain the whole winter

ad exercitum. Nam, illo incommòdo de  
 at [with] the army. For. that calamity from

morte Sabini perlato, fère  
 the death of Sabinus having been carried through (them), nearly

omnes civitates Galliae consultabant de  
 all the states of Gaul were deliberating about

bello: dimittebant nuntios que legationes  
 war: they were dispatching messengers and embassies

in omnes partes; et explorabant, quid  
 into all parts, and were searching out, what

consilii reliqui capèrent, atque unde initium  
 (of) counsel the rest might take, and whence a beginning

belli fieret; que habebant nocturna  
 of war might be made, and they were holding night

conciilia in desertis locis: neque ullum  
 assemblies in desert places: nor (did) any

tempus fère totius hiemis intercessit sine  
 time nearly of the whole winter pass without

sollicitudine Cæsaris,<sup>86</sup> quin acciperet (imp.  
 the anxiety of Cæsar, but that he was receiving

subj.) aliquem nuntium de conciliis  
 some messenger concerning the assemblies

et motu Gallorum. In his factus est  
 and disturbance of the Gauls. Among these he was made

certior ab Lucio Roscio legato,  
 more sure [was informed] by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant,

quem præfecerat decimæ tertiae legioni,  
 whom he had appointed to the thirteenth legion, (that)

magnas copias Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ  
 great forces of the Gauls of these states, which  
 appellantur Armoricæ, convenisse causâ  
 are called Armoricæ, to have [had] assembled for the sake  
 oppugnandi sui; neque abfuisse  
 of assaulting himself; nor to have [had] been distant  
 longius octo millia passuum ab suis  
 farther (than) eight thousand (of) paces from his  
 hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de  
 winter quarters; but, a message having been brought about  
 victoriâ Cæsaris, discessisse, adde  
 the victory of Cæsar, to have (that they) departed, so  
 ut discessus videretur (imp. subj.) similis  
 that (their) departure was seeming like  
 fugæ.  
 (to) a flight.

24. At Cæsar, principibus cujusque civitatis  
 But Cæsar, the chiefs of each state  
 vocatis ad se, tenuit magnam partem  
 having been called to himself, kept a great part  
 Galliæ in officio, aliàs territando, quum  
 of Gaul in duty, at one time by alarming, when  
 denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire  
 he was announcing, (that he) himself to know  
 quæ fierent (imp. subj.), aliàs  
 [knew] what (things) were done, at another time  
 cohortando. Tamen Senones, quæ est civitas  
 by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state  
 in primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter  
 particularly strong, and of great authority among  
 Gallos, conati (sunt) interficere publico consilio  
 the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel  
 Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituerat regem  
 Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king  
 apud eos, (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu  
 among them, (whose brother Moritasgus, at the coming  
 Cæsaris in Galliam, que cujus majores  
 of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose ancestors

obtinuērant regnum); quum ille præsensisset  
 had held the sovereignty; when he had forknown  
 (pl. perf. subj.) ac profugisset (pl. perf. subj.),  
 and had escaped,  
 insecuti usque ad fines, expulerunt  
 having pursued (him) even to the borders, they expelled  
 dōmo que regno; et legatis  
 (him) from home and the kingdom; and ambassadors  
 missis ad Cæsārem causā satis-  
 having been sent to Cæsar for the sake of making  
 faciendi, quum is jussisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnem  
 satisfaction. when he had ordered all  
 senatum venire ad se, fuerunt non  
 (their) senate to come to himself. they were not  
 audientes<sup>87</sup> dicto (dat.). Valūt tantum  
 hearing [obedient] to the word It availed so much  
 āpud barbāros homīnes, aliquos  
 among barbarian men, (that) some  
 repertos esse principes inferendi belli,  
 to have been [were] found leaders of [in] waging war,  
 que attūlit tantam commutationem voluntatum  
 and it brought so great a change of wills  
 omnibus, ut fēre nulla civitas fuērit  
 [heart] to all that scarcely no [any] state was  
 non suspecta nobis, præter Ædūos et  
 not suspected by us. except the Ædui and  
 Remos, quos Cæsar semper habūt præcipūo  
 Remi, whom Cæsar always had in particular  
 honore, altēros pro vetēre ac perpetuā fide  
 honor, the former for ancient and constant faith  
 erga Romanum populum; altēros pro recentibus  
 toward the Roman people. the latter for the recent  
 officiis Gallīci belli: que scīo haud, ne  
 duties of the Gallic war: and I know not. whether  
 id sit mirandum adēo, cūm  
 this may be (to be) wondered at so not only from  
 compluribus aliis causis, tum maxīmè quòd  
 many other causes, but also chiefly because



qui præferebantur omnibus gentibus (dat )  
 (those) who were surpassing all nations

virtute belli, dolebant gravissimè,  
 in bravery in war, were grieving most severely. (that they)

se deperdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,  
 themselves to have [had] lost so much of the reputation of it,

ut perferrent imperia Romani  
 that they should endure the commands of the Roman

populi.  
 people.

55. Verò Treviri atque Indutiomarus  
 But the Treviri and Indutiomarus

intermiserunt<sup>88</sup> nullum tempus totius hiemis,  
 omitted no time of the whole winter,

quin mittèrent legatos trans Rhenum;  
 but that they might send ambassadors across the Rhine;

solicitarent civitates; pollicerentur  
 (that) they might solicit the states; (that) they might promise

pecunias (pl.): dicèrent, magnâ  
 money: (that) they might say. (that) a great

parte nostri exercitûs interfectâ, multò  
 part of our army having been slain. by far

minorem partem superesse. Nèque tamen  
 the lesser part to remain [remains]. Nor yet

potuit persuaderi<sup>89</sup> ulli  
 was it possible to be persuaded to any [to persuade any]

civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;  
 state of the Germans, that it should cross the Rhine;

quum dicèrent (imp. subj.) se  
 since they were saying (that they) themselves,

expertos bis, bello Ariovisti, et  
 having tried twice. in the war of Ariovistus, and

transitu Tencterorum, non esse  
 in the crossing of the Tencteri. not to be [are not]

tentaturos fortunam amplius. Indutiomarus  
 about [going] to try fortune further. Indutiomarus

lapsus hâc spe, nihilo minùs cœpit  
 having slipped [failed] in this hope, nevertheless began

cogĕre copias, exigĕre à finitimis,  
to collect forces, to demand (them) from the neighboring

parare ĕquos, allicĕre exules que damnatos  
(states), to procure horses, to entice exiles and condemned

ad se magnis præmiis totâ Gallia:  
(persons) to himself by great rewards in all Gaul:

ac comparaverat jam tantam auctoritatem sibi  
and he procured now so great authority for himself

his rebus in Gallia, ut legationes  
by these things in Gaul, that embassies

concurrerent (imp. subj.) undique ad eum;  
were assembling from every side to him;

peterent (imp. subj.) gratiam atque amicitiam  
they were seeking (his) favor and friendship

publicè que privatim.  
publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit veniri  
When he understood (it) to be come [that they came]

ultrò ad se; Senones que Carnutes  
voluntarily to himself: (that) the Senones and Carnutes

instigatos conscientia facinoris ex alterâ  
to be [were] instigated by a consciousness of crime on one

parte, Nervios que Aduaticos parare  
side, (that) the Nervii and Aduatici (to) prepare

bellum Romanis (dat.) alterâ neque  
war against the Romans on the other side nor (that)

copias voluntariorum defore  
forces of volunteers to be about to [would] be wanting

sibi, si cœpisset (pl. subj.) progredi ex  
to himself, if he was beginning to advance from

sis finibus; indicit armatum concilium.  
his own borders; he proclaims an armed council.

Hoc, more Gallorum, est initium  
This, by the custom of the Gauls, is a commencement

belli; quò omnes puberes coguntur  
of war; where all full grown (persons) are compelled

convenire armati, communi lege; et qui  
to assemble armed, by a common law, and who

ex iis vēnit novissimus, effectus  
 [whoever] from [of] them comes last, having been visited  
 omnibus cruciatibus necatur in conspectu  
 with all tortures is put to death in sight  
 multitudinis. In eo concilio curat  
 of the multitude. In this council he takes care  
 Cingetorigem, principem alterius factionis, sūm  
 Cingetorix, the chief of the other party, his own  
 genērum, judicandum hostem (quem demonstravimus  
 son in law, to be [is] judged an enemy (whom we have shown  
 suprā, secutum fidem Cæsaris, non  
 above, having secured the good-faith of Cæsar, not  
 discessisse ab eo), que publicat  
 to have [had not] departed from him), and he confiscates  
 ejus bona. His rebus confectis,  
 his goods. These things having been finished,  
 pronūciat in concilio se  
 he declares in the council (that he) himself  
 accersitum (esse) à Senonibus et Carnutibus,  
 to have [has] been sent for by the Senones and Carnutes,  
 que compluribus aliis civitatibus Gallæ:  
 and by very many other states of Gaul.  
 facturum (esse) iter huc per  
 to be [that he is] about to make (his) march hither through  
 fines Remorum, que populaturum eorum  
 the territories of the Remi and [is] about to ravage their  
 agros; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labieni  
 lands, and [is] about to assault the camp of Labienus  
 prius quàm faciāt id, que præcipit,  
 before (that) he may do this and he prescribes.  
 quæ vēlit fieri.  
 what he wishes to be done.

57. Labienus timebat nihil de sūo  
 Labienus was fearing nothing about his own  
 pericūlo ac legionis, quum contineret  
 danger and (that) of the legion, since he was keeping  
 sese castris (pl.) munitissimis et naturā  
 himself in a camp most fortified both by the nature

lōci, et mānu; sed cogitabat<sup>90</sup>  
 of the place, and by hand [art]. but he was thinking  
 ne dimittēret quam occasionem gerendæ  
 he should not lose any opportunity of carrying on  
 rēi bēnè. Itaque oratione Indutiomāri,  
 a matter well. Therefore the speech of Indutiomarus,  
 quam habuerat in concilio, cognitā  
 which he had delivered in the council, having been known  
 à Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis, mittit  
 from Cingetorix and his relations, he sends  
 nuntios ad finitimas civitates, que  
 messengers to the neighboring states, and  
 convocat equites undique. Dicit  
 calls together cavalry from every side. He says [fixes]  
 certam diem conveniendi iis. Intērim  
 a certain day of meeting for them. Meantime  
 Indutiomārus vagabatur prōpè quotidie cum omni  
 Indutiomarus was roving almost daily with all  
 equitatu sub ejus castris (pl.); aliàs ut  
 (his) cavalry near his camp; at one time that  
 cognosceret situm castrorum (pl.); aliàs  
 he might learn the situation of the camp, at another time  
 causā colloquendi aut territandi: omnes  
 for the sake of parleying or of alarming: all  
 equites plerumque conjiciebant tela intra  
 (his) cavalry generally were hurling weapons within  
 vallum. Labienus continebant suos intra  
 the rampart. Labienus was keeping his (men) within  
 munitiones, que augebat opinionem timoris  
 the fortifications, and was increasing the supposition of fear  
 quibuscunque rebus poterat.  
 by whatsoever things [means] he was able  
 58. Quom Indutiomārus accedēret (imp. subj.)  
 When Indutiomarus was approaching  
 indies ad castra (pl.) majore contemptione,  
 daily to the camp with greater contempt,  
 equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos  
 the cavalry of all the neighboring states, which

curaverat	accessendos,	intromissis	unâ
he had taken care	to be sent for,	having been admitted	in one
nocte,	continuit omnes suos	custodiis (pl.)	intra
night,	he kept all his (men)	on guard	within
castra (pl.)	tantâ	diligentiâ,	ut ça res
the camp	with so great	diligence,	that this thing
posset	enuntiari	nullâ	ratione, aut
might be able	to [could] be told	by no	means, or
perferri	ad Treviros.	Intërm,	ex
(to) be carried	to the Treviri.	Meantime.	according to
quotidianâ	consuetudinë,	Indutiomãrus	accedit
daily	custom.	Indutiomarus	approaches
ad castra (pl.),	atque consumit	magnam partem	
(to) the camp,	and spends	a great part	
dierum ibi.	Equites conieciunt	tela,	et
of the day there	(His) cavalry	hurl	weapons, and
evocant	nostros	ad pugnam	magnâ <sup>91</sup>
call out	our (men)	to battle	with great
contumeliâ	verborum.	Nulla responso	dãto
insult	of words	No answer	having been given
à castris (pl.),	ubi visum est,	discedunt	
from the camp	when it seemed (well).	they depart	
dispersi	ac dissipati	sub vespërum.	Labienus
dispersed	and scattered	about evening	Labienus
subitò	emittit	omnem equitatum	duabus
suddenly	sends forth	all the cavalry	from two
portis:	præcipit	atque interdicat, <sup>92</sup>	hostibus
gates	he prescribes	and enjoins,	the enemy
perterritis,	atque coniectis	in fûgam,	
having been dismayed	and thrown	into flight,	
(quod videbat	fõre,	sicut	
(which he was seeing	to be about to [would] be,	just as	
accidit)	omnes petërent	Indutiomãrum	
it happened)	(that) all should seek	Indutiomarus	
unum,	neu quis	vulneraret quemquam,	
one [alone]	nor any (man)	should wound any one,	
priùs quàm	videret illum interfectum:	quòd	
before (that)	he should see him killed.	because	



nolebat illum, nactum spatium  
 he was unwilling (that) him [he], having got space [time]  
 mōrâ reliquorum, effugere. Proponit  
 by delay of [with] the rest, to [should] escape. He offers  
 magna præmia iis, qui occiderint: submittit  
 great rewards to those, who should kill (him). he sends up  
 cohortes subsidio equitibus. Fortuna comprobat  
 cohorts for aid to the cavalry. Fortune approves  
 consilium hominis; et quum omnes  
 [favors] the plan of the men: and since all  
 petērent (imp. subj.) unum, Indutiomārus  
 were seeking one, Indutiomarus  
 deprehensus in vādo ipso fluminis  
 having been caught in the ford itself [the very ford] of the river  
 interficitur, que ejus cāput refertur in  
 is slain. and his head is carried back into  
 castra (pl.). Equites redeuntes consecretantur atque  
 the camp The cavalry returning pursue and  
 occidunt, quos possunt. Hâc re cognitâ,  
 slay (those), whom they can This thing having been known,  
 omnes copiæ Eburonum et Nerviorum,  
 all the forces of the Eburones and of the Nervii,  
 quæ convenērant, discedunt; que paulò post id  
 which had assembled, depart, and a little after this  
 factum, Cæsar habuit Galliam quietiorem.  
 deed [action], Cæsar had Gaul more tranquil.

## SIXTH BOOK

The sixth book begins with a description of Cæsar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senonnes and Carnutes. The Triveri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Cæsar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Cæsar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallie approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes, Cæsar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans majorem  
 Cæsar for many reasons expecting (a) greater  
 motum Galliæ instituit per legatos,  
 commotion of Gaul determines through (his) lieutenants,  
 M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium,  
 N. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus, (and) T. Sextius,  
 habere delectum. Simul p̄t̄it ab Cneio  
 to hold a levy. At the same time he requests from Cneius  
 Pompeio, proconsule, quoniam ipse maneret  
 Pompey, proconsul, (that) because he was remaining  
 ad urbem cum imperio, causâ  
 near the city with (military) command, for the sake of  
 rei publicæ, juberet quos  
 the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom  
 rogavisset (pl. perf. subj.) sacramento consil ex  
 he had enrolled by oath (as) consul in

Cisalpinâ Gallîa convenire ad signa et  
 Cisalpine Gaul to assemble at the standards and

proficisci ad se; existimans interesse magni  
 march to him; deem.ing (it) to be of great

ad opinionem Gallîæ  
 (importance) regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might

etiam in reliquum tempus  
 have) even for remaining [future] time (that the)

facultates Italiæ videri tantas ut si  
 resources of Italy to [should] be seen so great that if

quid (neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,  
 any (of) detriment [harm] should be received in war.

id non modò posset sarciri brevî tempore, sed  
 this not only could be repaired in a short time, but

posset etiam augeri<sup>i</sup> majoribus copiis. Quod  
 could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which

quum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et  
 when Pompey had granted both for the republic and

amicitiæ; delectu celeriter confecto  
 for (his) friendship, a levy quickly having been made

per suos, tribus legionibus et  
 through his (lieutenants). three legions both

constitutis et adductis ante hiemem exactum;  
 having been raised and brought on before the winter had passed;

et numero earum cohortium, quas amiserat cum  
 and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost under

Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et  
 Q. Titurius, having been doubled, he showed both

celeritate et copiis, quid disciplina  
 by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline

atque opes Romani populi posset.  
 and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).

2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,  
 Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,

imperium defertur à Trevisis ad ejus propinquos.  
 the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.

Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos Germanos  
 They (do) not cease to invite the neighboring Germans

et polliceri pecuniam. Quum possent non impetrare  
and to promise money. When they could not obtain

ab proximis,<sup>2</sup> tentant ulteriores.<sup>3</sup>  
(this) from the neighboring, they try the more remote.

Nonnullis, civitatibus inventis,  
Some. . states having been found (compliant),

confirmant<sup>4</sup> jurejurando inter se, que  
they pledge by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniâ; adjungunt  
give security by hostages for the money. they unite

sibi Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus  
to themselves Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty Which

rebus cognitis, Cæsar quum videret bellum  
things having been known. Cæsar as he perceived war

parari<sup>5</sup> undique; Nervios, Aduatucos  
to be [was] preparing on all sides, (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis  
and the Menapii. all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis esse in armis; Senones non  
having been added were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare  
come at (his) command, and (that) they exchange

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus;  
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Trevis crebris  
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum,  
embassies: he thought to [it must] be considered [he must

sibi (dat.) maturiùs de bello.  
consider] by himself earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectâ,  
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed,

quatuor proximis legionibus coactis,  
the four nearest legions having been assembled,

contendit improviso in fines Nerviorum; et  
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

priùs quàm illi aut possent convenire, aut  
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugere magno numero pecoris atque hominum  
 escape a great number of cattle and of men

capto, atque eâ prædâ concessâ  
 having been captured and this booty having been given up

militibus, que agris vastatis, coëgit  
 to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced

venire in deditionem, atque dare  
 (them) to come into a surrender, and to give

obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter  
 hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly

confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.  
 performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.

Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut  
 A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as

instituërat, quum reliqui præter Senones,  
 he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,

Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus  
 the Carnutes and Treveri had come, having judged (that)

hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,  
 this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,

ut videretur postponere omnia, transfert  
 although he might seem to postpone every thing, he transfers

concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi erant  
 the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris), These were

confines Senonibus, que memoriâ patrum  
 neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers

conjunxerant<sup>6</sup> civitatem, sed existimabantur  
 had united their state with (them), but they were thought

abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hæc re  
 to have been absent from this council. This thing

pronunciatâ pro suggestu, proficiscitur  
 having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches

eodem die cum legionibus in Senones, que  
 on the same day with the legions into the Senones, and

pervenit eò magnis itineribus.  
 arrives there by long [forced] marches.

4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat  
 His arrival having been learned. Acco, who had been



princeps ejus concilii, jubet multitudinem convenire  
 the author of this council. orders the people to assemble

in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,  
 in the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (and)

priùs quàm id posset effici Romanos  
 before (that) it could be accomplished (that) the Romans

adesse. Necessariò desistunt sententiâ, que  
 to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design, and

mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causâ deprecandi;<sup>7</sup>  
 send ambassadors to Cæsar for the purpose of imploring,

adeunt per Æduos, in fide  
 they approach (him) through the Ædui. under the protection

quorum civitas erat antiquitùs. Æduis  
 of whom (their) state was formerly The Ædui

petentibus Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit  
 petitioning Cæsar readily gives pardon, and receives

excusationem, quòd arbitrabatur æstivum  
 (their) excuse, because he was judging (that) the summer

tempus esse instantis belli non  
 time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not

questionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,  
 of [for] investigation A hundred hostages having been ordered,

tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes  
 he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded The Carnutes

mittunt legatos que obsides eòdem,  
 send ambassadors and hostages to the same place.

usi Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelâ  
 having made use of the Remi as intercessors under the protection

quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.  
 of whom they were. they carry (back) the same answer.

Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites  
 Cæsar held the council, and orders horsemen

civitatibus (dat).  
 (of) the states.

5. Hâc parte Galliæ pacatâ, insistit  
 This part of Gaul having been pacified, he appears

totus et mente et animo in bellum  
 (himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum  
of the Treviri and Ambiorix. He orders Cavarinus

proficisci secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis  
to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any

motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus  
commotion of the state may arise either from his

iracundiâ, aut ex ão, quod meruërat odio.  
irascibility, or from this (fact), that he had merited hatred.

His rebus constitutis, quòd habebat pro  
These things having been settled, because he was holding for

explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum<sup>8</sup>  
[as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend

prælio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.  
in battle, he was considering in mind his other plans.

Menapii ãrant propinqui finibus Eburonum,  
The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,

muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex  
protected by continuous marshes and woods: who alone of

Galliâ nunquam misërant legatos ad Cæsarem  
Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar

de pace; sciebat hospitium esse  
concerning peace: he was knowing (that) hospitality was [existed]

cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item  
with [between] them (and) Ambiorix, also

cognoverat venisse in amicitiam  
he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship

Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat  
to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He was thinking (that)

hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, priùs quàm  
these auxiliaries to [must] be detached from him, before (that)

ipsum lacesendum bello; ne salute des-  
(he) himself to be [was] assailed in war; lest safety having been

peratâ, aut abderet se in Menapios,  
despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii.

aut cogeret congređi cum transrhenanis.  
or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans).

Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta  
This plan having been formed, he sends the baggage

totius exercitûs ad Labienum in Treviros, que  
of all the army to Labienus among the Treviri, and

jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse  
orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself

proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in  
marches with five light armed legions against

Menapios. Illi, nullâ mânu coactâ,  
the Menapii They, no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio loci, confugiunt in silvas  
trusting to the protection of the place retreat to the woods

que paludes, que conferunt eòdem sũa.  
and marshes and convey to the same place their property

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,  
Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,

legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus  
the lieutenant, and M. Crassus, the quæstor and bridges

effectis celeriter, adiit tripartitò;  
having been constructed hastily, he invades in three divisions:

incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno  
he burns the houses and villages (and) gets possession of a great

numero pecõris, atque hominum. Coacti  
number of cattle and of men Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad  
by which [these] things the Menapii send ambassadors to

eum, causâ petendæ<sup>9</sup> pacis Ille, obsidibus,  
him, for the purpose of seeking peace He, the hostages,

acceptis confirmat se habit-  
having been received declares (that he) himself about to

urum numero hostium, si recepissent  
[would] hold (them) in the number of enemies if they received

aut Amborigem, aut ejus legatos suis finibus.  
either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,  
These things having been settled, he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis loco  
the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place

custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.  
of a guard; he himself marches into the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur à Cæsare, Treviri,  
 While these (things) are performed by Cæsar. the Treviri,  
 magnis copiis peditatûs, que equitatûs coac-  
 a great force of foot soldiers, and of cavalry having been  
 tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unâ  
 assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one  
 legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que  
 legion, which had wintered in their territories. And  
 jam aberant ab eo non longius  
 already they were distant from him not farther (than)  
 viâ bidui, quum cognoscunt duas  
 a journey of two days. when they learn (that) two  
 legiones venisse missu Cæsaris.  
 legions had arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.  
 Castris positis à quindecim<sup>10</sup> millibus  
 Their camp having been pitched by fifteen thousand  
 passûum constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)  
 (of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]  
 Germanorum. Labienus, consilio hostium cog-  
 of the Germans. Labienus the plan of the enemy having  
 nito sperans temeritate eorum  
 been learned (and) hoping (that) by the rashness of them  
 fore aliquam  
 [by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some  
 facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium  
 opportunity of fighting. a guard of five cohorts  
 relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem  
 having been left for the baggage, he marches against the enemy  
 cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno  
 with twenty five cohorts, and a great [much]  
 equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille  
 cavalry, and he fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand  
 passûum intermisso. Erat, inter Labienus  
 paces having intervened. There was, between Labienus  
 atque hostem, flumen difficili transtitu, que  
 and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing and  
 præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo  
 with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes  
to cross this, nor was he thinking (that) the enemy

transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.  
would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily.

Loquitur palàm in concilio, "quoniam Germani  
It was said openly in council "because the Germans

dicuntur appropinquare sese non  
are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not

devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas  
(about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes

exercitûs, et moturum castra  
of the army, and (that he) about to [would] move the camp

primâ luce<sup>11</sup> postero die." Hæc deferuntur  
at early dawn on the next day." These (words) are carried

celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero  
quickly to the enemy as from [of] the great number

equitatûs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos  
of cavalry of the Gauls, nature was forcing some

favere Gallicis rebus. Noctû Labienus, tribunis  
to favor the Gallic affairs At night Labienus, the tribunes

militum que primis ordinibus coac-  
of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been

tis, proponit quid sit sui  
assembled, propounds [proposes] what may be (of) his

consiliu; et quò faciliùs det hostibus  
plan; and that the more easily he may give to the enemy

suspicionem timoris, jubet castra moveri  
a suspicion of fear he orders the camp to be moved

majore strepitu et tumultu, quàm fert consuetudo  
with greater noise and confusion, than was the custom

Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem  
of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure

similem fugæ. Hæc quoque deferantur ad  
like to a flight. These (things) also are announced to

hostes per exploratores ante lucem, in  
the enemy through spies before light, in

tanta propinquitate castrorum.  
so great [such] nearness of the camps.



8. Vix novissimum agmen processerat extra  
 Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond  
 munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se<sup>12</sup>  
 the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another  
 ne dimitterent speratam prædam ex  
 (that) they should not lose the hope for booty from  
 manibus; esse longum expectare  
 (their) hands, (that) it would be long [tedious] to wait for  
 auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterritis;  
 the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified:  
 neque suam dignitatem pati ut non  
 (that) neither their dignity suffers that they should not  
 audeant adoriri tantis copiis, tam exiguam  
 dare to attack with so great forces, so small  
 manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;  
 a band, especially fleeing and encumbered;  
 non dubitant transire flumen et committere  
 they do not hesitate to cross the river and to join  
 prælium iniquo loco. Quæ Labienus  
 battle in an unfavorable place. Which Labienus  
 suspicatus fore, ut eliceret  
 having suspected to be about to [would] be, that he would lure  
 omnes cîtra flumen, progrediebatur placidè  
 all to this side the river, he was marching on quietly  
 usus eâdem simulatione (abl.) itineris. Tum,  
 having used the same pretence of a march. Then,  
 impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque  
 the baggage having been sent forward a little, and  
 collocatis quodam tumulo; "habetis," inquit,  
 having been placed on a certain eminence. "you have" says he.  
 "milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenetis  
 "soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought: you hold  
 hostem impedito atque iniquo loco;  
 the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place.  
 præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam  
 exhibit the same courage to us (your) generals which  
 sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori: existimate  
 so often you have displayed to your commander: suppose

ěum adesse, et cernere hęc  
 him to be present, and to observe these (deeds as if)  
 coram." Simul jubet signa con-  
 in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be  
 verti ad hostem, que aciem dirigi; et  
 turned to the enemy, and the battle-line to be formed, and  
 paucis turmis dimissis pręsidio ad  
 a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to  
 impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.  
 the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.  
 Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt  
 Our men, a shout having been raised, quickly throw  
 pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, pręter  
 (their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary  
 spem, viderunt quos credebant fugere  
 to expectation, they saw those whom they believed to flee  
 ire ad se infestis signis, non ferre  
 come at them with hostile standards, (to) [could] not sustain  
 impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,  
 the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter,  
 conjecti in fugam, petiverunt proximas  
 having been thrown into flight, they sought the nearest  
 silvas; quos Labienus consecutus equitatu  
 woods; whom Labienus having followed with (his) cavalry  
 magno numero interfecto, compluribus  
 (and) a great number having been slain, and very many  
 captis, recepit civitatem, paucis  
 having been captured he received the state (in submission), a few  
 diebus post. Nam Germani, qui veniebant  
 days afterwards For the Germans who were coming  
 auxilio, fugam Trevirorum perceptam  
 for [as] aid, the flight of the Treviri having been known  
 contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui  
 betook themselves home With them the relations  
 Indutiomari, qui fuerant auctores defectionis  
 of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt  
 comitati eos excessere ex civitate.  
 having accompanied them departed from the state.

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,  
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorig.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in  
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in

officio ab initio  
allegiance from the beginning

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapis in  
Cæsar after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;  
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine.

altera quarum erat, quod (Germani) miserant  
the one of which was, because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Trevisis contra se; altera  
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself the other (that)

Ambiorix ne haberet receptum ad eos. His  
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them. These

rebus constitutis, instituit facere pontem  
things having been determined he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-  
a little above this place, at which before he had

duxerat exercitum Ratione notâ atque  
transported the army. The plan having been known and

institutâ, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno  
adopted, the work is completed, in a few days by the great

studio militum Firmo præsidio relicto ad  
zeal of the soldiers A strong guard having been left at

pontem in Trevisis, ne quis motus oriretur  
the bridge among the Treviri lest any commotion might arise

subitò ab eis transducit reliquas copias que  
suddenly among them, he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum. Ubii, qui antè dederant obsides,  
the cavalry The Ubii who before had given hostages.

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt legatos ad  
and had come to a surrender send ambassadors to

ëum causâ purgandi sui,<sup>13</sup> qui doceant,  
him for the purpose of clearing themselves who may show

neque auxilia missa in Trevisis ex  
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suâ civitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;  
 their state. nor faith (had been)' violated by them.

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne  
 they beg and pray that he may spare them. lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant  
 in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay

pœnas pro nocentibus, si velit amplius obsidum,  
 the penalties for the guilty. if he desires more hostages.

pollicentur dare Causâ cognitâ,  
 they promise to give (them) The case having been investigated.

Cæsar reperit auxiliâ missa esse ab  
 Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; acceptit satisfactionem Ubiorum;  
 the Suevi he accepts the excuses of the Ubi. and

perquirat aditus que vias in Suevos.  
 carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior<sup>14</sup> ab Ubis, paucis  
 In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubi. a few

diebus p̄st, Suevos cogere omnes  
 days after (that) the Suevi to collect [were collecting] all

copias in unum locum, atque denuntiare  
 (their) forces into one place, and also to warn [were

ns nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperio,  
 warning] these nations who are under their command.

ut mittant auxilia peditatûs que equitatûs.  
 that they should send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry.

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentaria,  
 These things having been known he provides a corn supply.

deligit idoneum locum castris; imperat  
 he selects a suitable place for the camp: he commands

Ubis, ut deducant pecora, que conferant  
 the Ubi that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans  
 all their (property) from the fields into the towns. hoping

barbâros atque imperitos homines adductos  
 (that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiâ cibariorum posse deduci ad  
 by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi Mandat  
 an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubi)

ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,  
 that they send frequent scouts among the Suevi

cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl) apud eos.  
 that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.

Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,  
 They execute the orders and a few days having passed.

referunt; "omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores  
 report: "all the Suevi after (that) more certain

nuncii venerant de exercitū  
 messengers [news] had come concerning the army

Romanorum, recepisse sese penitus ad  
 of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to

extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que  
 the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)

sociorum, quas coëgissent Esse  
 of (their) allies. which they had collected To be [There is]

silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ  
 a forest there of boundless extent, which

appellatur Bacenis, hanc pertinere longè  
 is called Bacenis. this to extend [extends] far

introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,  
 into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]

prohibere injuriis que incursionibus Cheruscos  
 to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci

à Suevis, que Suevos à Cheruscis; Suevos  
 from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci the Suevi

constituisse expectare adventum Romanorum,  
 to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans

ad initium ejus silvæ  
 at the entrance of this forest

11. Quoniam perventum est ad hunc locum,  
 Because it has come to this place

videtur non esse alienum proponere  
 it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)

de moribus Gallæ que Germaniæ, et  
 of the manners of Gaul and of Germany and



quo hæ nationes differant inter  
in what (respects) these nations may differ among

sese.<sup>15</sup> In Gallâ sunt factiones,  
themselves In Gaul (there) are factions.

non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque  
not only in all the states and

pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis  
cantons and parts but also almost in the several

domibus; que principes earum factionum sunt  
houses and the chiefs of those factions are (those)

qui existimantur habere, iudicio eorum  
who are considered to have in the judgement of them [their

judgement] summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que  
the highest authority to the will and

iudicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que  
judgement of whom, the management of all affairs and

consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur  
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)

institutum (esse) antiquitûs causâ ejus rei,  
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing.

ne quis ex plebe egëret auxilii (gen.)  
(that) no one from [of] the people should want assistance

contra potentiorem, enim quisque non patitur  
against the more powerful for each one does not suffer

suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat  
his own to be oppressed and overreached: nor if he do

aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.  
otherwise has he any authority among his (people).

Hæc eadem ratio est in summâ  
This same plan [system] is in the management [authority]

totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divisæ sunt  
of all Gaul For indeed all the states are divided

in duas partes.  
into two parties.

12 Quum Cæsar venit in Galliam, Ædui erant  
When Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædui were

principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius Hi,  
the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other These

quum valerent minus per se,  
 [The latter] as they prevailed less by themselves,  
 (quòd summa auctoritas ěrat in Æduis  
 (because the supreme authority was among the Ædúi  
 antiquitùs, que magnæ erant eorum  
 anciently [of old], and great (states) were their  
 clientelæ), adjunxĕrant Germanos atque  
 tributaries). they [the Sequani] had united the Germans and  
 Ariovistum sibi, que perduxĕrant eos ad  
 Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to  
 se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Verò  
 themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed  
 compluribus secundis prælius factis, atque  
 very many successful battles having been fought, and  
 omni mobilitate Æduorum interfectâ,  
 all the nobility of the Ædúi having been slain,  
 antecesserant tantum potentiâ, ut  
 they [the Sequani] had surpassed so much in power that  
 transducerent ad se magnam partem clientium  
 they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients  
 ab Æduis, que acciperent ab iis  
 [tributaries] from the Ædúi, and received from these  
 filios principum obsides, et cogĕrent jurare  
 the sons of the chiefs as hostages, and forced (them) to swear  
 publicè, se inturos<sup>16</sup> nihil consili  
 publicly, (that) they would enter (into) nothing of [no] design  
 contra Sequanos; et possiderent partem  
 against the Sequani, and they kept a part  
 finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que  
 of the neighboring territories seized by force, and  
 obtinerent principatum totius Galliæ Divitiacus  
 obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus  
 adductus quâ necessitate, profectus Romam  
 led by which [this] necessity, having proceeded to Rome  
 ad senatum causâ petendi auxilia, re  
 to the senate for the purpose of asking aid, the thing  
 infectâ redierat. Adventu  
 [purpose] having been accomplished had returned By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factâ,  
 of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,  
 obsidibus redditis Æduis, veteribus  
 the hostages having been returned to the Ædui, old  
 clientelis restitutis, nôvis comparatis  
 tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired  
 per Cæsarem, (quòd ii, qui aggregaverant  
 through Cæsar, (because these, who had united  
 se ad eorum amicitiam, videbant se  
 themselves to their friendship, were seemg (that) they  
 uti<sup>17</sup> meliore conditione atque æquiore  
 to use [possessed] a better condition and more equitable  
 imperio) reliquis rebus eorum gratiâ  
 government) (their) other affairs, their authority  
 que dignitate amplificatâ, Sequani  
 and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani  
 dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant  
 had lost the sovereignty, the Remi succeeded  
 in eorum lōcum; quos<sup>18</sup> quòd  
 in their place, whom [who] as  
 intelligebatur adæquare gratiâ apud  
 it was perceived equaled (the Ædui) in favor with  
 Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias  
 Cæsar, these, who on account of old hostilities  
 potërant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,  
 could in no manner be united with the Ædui,  
 dicabant se in clientelam Remis.  
 were declaring themselves under the protection of the Remi.  
 illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenebant  
 They were protecting them carefully, and so they held  
 nôvam et repentè collectam auctoritatem. Res  
 a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs  
 erat tum èo statu, ut Ædui haberentur  
 were then in this state, that the Ædui were held  
 longè principes, Remi obtinerent secundum  
 by far as the principal (people) the Remi obtained the second  
 lōcum dignitatis.  
 place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Galliâ eorum hominum, qui sunt  
 In all Gaul of these men who are  
 aliquo numero atque honore, sunt duo genera.  
 of any account and honor, there are two classes.  
 Nam plebs habetur pæne lōco servorum,  
 For the common people are held almost in place of slaves.  
 quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibetur nulli  
 who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no  
 concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,  
 council. Many, when they are oppressed either by debt,  
 aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuriâ  
 or by the greatness of the tributes, or by the injury [violence]  
 potentiorum, dicant sese in servitatem  
 of the more powerful, declare themselves in servitude  
 nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ  
 to the nobles, all the same rights are over these, which  
 dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus  
 [as] to masters over slaves. But of these two  
 generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum  
 classes, the one is (that) of the Druids, the other (that)  
 Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,  
 of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,  
 procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-  
 they have charge of public and private sacrifices (and) inter-  
 pretantur religiones. Magnus numerus adolescentium  
 pret religion A great number of youths  
 concurrunt ad hos causâ disciplinæ, que ii,  
 resort to these for the purpose of training, and they  
 sunt magno honore apud eos. Nam  
 (the Druids) are in great honor among them For  
 constituunt de ferè omnibus controversiis  
 they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)  
 publicis que privatis; et si quod facinus est  
 public and private; and if any crime had been  
 admissum, si cædes facta, si est  
 committed, if (any) murder had been done if (there) is  
 controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, idem  
 a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries the same

decernunt; que constituunt præmia que pœnas.  
decide (it), and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non  
If any (person), either a private or public, should not  
steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.  
submit to their decree, they forbid (him) the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima pœna apud eos. Hi  
This is a very great punishment among them. These  
quibus<sup>19</sup> est ita interdictum, habentur numero  
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt eis,  
of the impious and wicked, all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne  
and flee from their approach and conversation, lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex  
they might receive some (of) evil from (their)

contagione; neque jus redditur eis  
contagion, neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus hōnos communicatur. Autem  
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præest, qui habet  
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter eos. Hoc mortuo,  
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.  
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds.

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio  
But if many are equal he is elected by the suffrage

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis  
of the Druids, also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatu. Hi considunt in consecrato  
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

lōco, certo tempore anni in finibus  
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regio habetur media totius Galliæ.  
of the Carnutes which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc omnes undique, qui habent controversias,  
Here all from all sides, who have disputes,



convenient, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.  
assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britannîa,  
(This) institution [cu't] is supposed (to have) originated in Britain

atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam Et  
and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul And

nunc, qui volunt diligentius cognoscere eam  
now those who wish more perfectly to know this

rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illò causâ  
thing [sect] often go there for the purpose

discendi.

of learning (it)

14. Druides consueverunt abesse à bello, neque  
The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war nor

pendunt tributa unâ cum reliquis; (habent vaca-  
do they pay tribute together with the rest (they have an exemp-

tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium  
tion from military service and immunity of [in] all

rerum.) Excitati tantis præmiis, et multi suâ  
things) Excited by such advantages and many of their

sponte conveniunt in disciplinam, et mittuntur à  
own accord assemble for instruction, and they are sent by

parentibus que propinquis Dicuntur ediscere  
parents and relations They are said to learn by heart

magnum numerum versuum ibi Itaque nonnulli  
a great number of verses there Therefore many

permanent vicenos annos in disciplinâ; neque  
remain twenty years under instruction nor

existimant esse fas mandare hæc  
do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)

litteris, quum utantur Græcis litteris, in ferè  
to writing although they use the Greek letters in nearly

reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus  
(all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions

Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;  
This seems to me to have been established for two reasons

quòd neque velint disciplinam efferi in  
because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque eos qui discunt, confisos  
 the common people nor (that) those who learn relying

litteris, studere memoriæ minùs  
 on writing should cultivate (their) memory the less [too little].

Quod ferè accidit plerisque, ut præsidio  
 Which ordinarily happens to the most so that by the aid

litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,  
 of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning.

ac memoriam In primis volunt persuadere  
 and (their) memory In particular they wish to inculcate

hoc animas non interire, sed post mortem  
 this (that) souls [do] not (to) die but after death

transire ab aliis ad alios,<sup>20</sup> atque putant  
 (to) pass from one (body) to another and they think

hòc maximè excitari . ad virtutem,  
 (that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] excited to courage.

mètu mortis neglecto Præterea disputant,  
 the fear of death having been disregarded Moreover they discuss.

et tradunt juventuti, multa, de sideribus,  
 and impart to the youths many things concerning the stars.

atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi  
 and their motion concerning the size of the world

ac terrarum, de naturâ rerum, de  
 and the earth concerning the nature of things concerning

vi ac potestate immortalium deorum  
 the power and majesty of the immortal gods

15 Alterum genus est equitum Hi, quum  
 The other class is the knights These when there

est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante  
 is need and any war occurs (which before

adventum Cæsaris solebat accidere ferè quotannis.  
 the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year

uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut  
 as either they themselves inflicted injuries or

propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in  
 repelled (them) inflicted) all are employed in

bello, atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus  
 war and as any one of them is most noble

genere que copiis, ita habet plurimos ambactos  
by family and resources so he has very many vassals

que clientes circum se. Noverunt hanc  
and clients about himself [him] They have known this

gratiam que potentiam unam.  
authority and power only

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita  
The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given

religionibus, atque ob eam causam,  
to religion [superstitions] and for this reason (those)

qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui  
who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who

versantur in præliis que periculis, aut immolant  
are engaged in war and dangers either sacrifice

homines pro victimis, aut vovent se  
men for [as] victims or they vow (that they) themselves

immolaturos; <sup>21</sup> que utuntur Druidibus  
to be about to [will] sacrifice (them). and they use the Druids

(abl.) administris ad eam sacrificia; quòd arbitrantur,  
as performers of these sacrifices. because they think.

nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitâ  
(that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life

hominis, numen immortalium deorum  
of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods

non posse aliter placari; que habent sacrificia  
could not be otherwise appeased and they have sacrifices

ejusdem generis instituta publicè Alii habent  
of the same kind performed publicly Others have

simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum  
images with [of] vast size the limbs of which

contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus,  
woven with twigs they fill with living men

quibus succensis homines exanimantur  
which having been set on fire the men are put to death

circumventi flammâ Arbitrantur supplicia  
by the surrounding flame. They think (that) the sacrifices

eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in  
of those, who may be taken in theft or in

latrocinia. aut aliquâ noxâ esse gratiora  
 robbery or in any culpable act to be [are] more acceptable

immortalibus diis. sed quum copia ejus  
 to the immortal gods but when a supply of this

generis deficit, etiâ descendunt ad supplicia  
 kind is wanting also they descend to the sacrifice

innocentium  
 of the innocent

17 Maximè colunt deum Mercurium. sunt  
 They principally worship the god Mercury there are

plurima simulacra hujus; ferunt hunc inventorem  
 many images of him they regard him (as) the inventor

omnium artium; hunc ducem viarum  
 of all arts (they consider) him the guide of their journeys

atque itinèrum; arbitrantur hunc habere maximam  
 and marches they believe him to have very great

vim ad quæstus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl).  
 power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et  
 After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars and

Jovem, et Minervam De his habent ferè  
 Jupiter and Minerva About these they have nearly

ëandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;  
 the same opinion which (as) other nations (that)

Apollinem depellere<sup>22</sup> morbos, Minervam tradere  
 Apollo drives away diseases (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem  
 the principles of crafts and of arts (that) Jupiter

tenere imperium cœlestium; Martem regere  
 holds the empire of the celestials (that) Mars rules

bella. Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare præliõ,  
 wars To him when they have resolved to engage in battle,

plerumque devoent, ëa quæ ceperint  
 they often vow these (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint, capta  
 in war the animals which may have survived (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in  
 they sacrifice. they bring together the remaining things into

unum locum In multis civitatibus licet conspiciari  
 one place. In many states there may be seen

tumulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis lōcis.  
 piles built of these things, in consecrated places.

Neque sæpe accīdit, ut quisq̄iam, religione  
 Nor does it often happen. that any one, religion

neglectâ, auderet aut occultare capta,  
 being disregarded, should dare either to conceal the things captured,

apud se, aut tollere posita, que  
 at his home, or to take away the things deposited, and

gravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est  
 the most grievous punishment with torture has been ordained

ei rei.  
 for this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos  
 All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended

ab Dite patre, que dicunt id  
 from Dis [Pluto] as progenitor and they say (that) this

proditum<sup>23</sup> ab Druidibus. Ob eam causam  
 has been handed down by the Druids. For this reason

finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis tempōris non  
 they determine the duration of all time not

numero dierum, sed noctium: et sic observant  
 by the number of days, but of nights: and so observe

natales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et  
 birth days, and the commencement of the month and

annorum, ut dies subsequatur noctem. In  
 of years, so that the day may follow the night. In

reliquis institutis vitæ differunt hōc ab ferè  
 other usages of life, they differ in this from nearly all

reliquis, quòd non patiantur suos liberos adire  
 others, that they do not suffer their children to approach

se palàm, nisi quum adoleverint, ut  
 them publicly, unless when they may have grown up, so that

possint sustinere munus militiæ; que  
 they may be able to bear the duty of military service, and

ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate  
 they consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age



assistere in conspectu patris, in publico.  
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunias viri acceperunt ab  
As much money (as) the husbands may receive from  
uxoribus, nomine, dotis, tantas, æstimatione  
wives, in the name, of dower, so much, an estimate

factâ, communicant cum dotibus ex suis  
having been made, they join with the dower from their own

bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniæ ratio conjunctim  
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter eorum  
is kept, and the profits are reserved, whoever of them

superârit vitâ, pars utriusque cum fructibus  
may have survived in life, the part of both with the profits

superiorum temporum (pl.) pervenit ad eum. Viri  
to the previous time reverts to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitæ que necis in uxores,  
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives,

sicuti in liberos. Et quum pater-  
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore loco decessit,  
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

ejus propinqui conveniunt, et si res venit  
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quæstionem  
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxoribus in servilem modum,<sup>24</sup> et si est  
of his wives after the slave manner and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque  
discovered they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnibus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu  
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,  
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all,

quæ arbitrantur fuisse cordi<sup>25</sup> vivis, inferunt  
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etiam animalia; ac paulò supra hanc  
into the fire, even animals, and a little before this

memoriam, servi et clientes, quos constabat  
 memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood  
 dilectos esse ab iis, cremabantur unâ,  
 to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together  
 justis funeribus confectis.  
 (with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare  
 Those states (which) are believed to administer  
 suam rem publicam (sing.) commodiùs, habent  
 their public affairs more advantageously, have  
 sanctum legibus si quis acceperit  
 established by law (that) if any one shall have heard  
 quid à finitimis de re publicâ rumore aut  
 any thing from neighbors about the state by rumor or  
 famâ, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve  
 by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor  
 communicet cum quo alio; quòd cognitum est  
 communicate with any other, because it has been known  
 sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines  
 (that) often rash and inexperienced men  
 terri falsis rumoribus, et impelli  
 to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled  
 ad facinus, et capere consilium de summis  
 to crime, and to form plans about the most important  
 rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que  
 things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and  
 produnt multitudini, quæ judicaverint esse ex usu.  
 disclose to the people, what they judge to be of use.  
 Non conceditur loqui de re publicâ nisi  
 It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter unless  
 per concilium.  
 in the council.

21. Germani differunt multùm ab hâc consue-  
 The Germans differ much from these cus-  
 tudine; nam habent neque Druides, qui præsent  
 toms, for they have neither Druids, who preside over  
 divinis rebus; neque student sacrificiis Ducunt  
 sacred things; nor do they regard sacrifices. They hold

ĕos solos numĕro deorum, quos cernunt,  
those only in the number of the gods, whom they perceive,

et quorum opibus (pl.) juvantur apertĕ,  
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously,

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt  
as the Sun, and Vulcan, (fire) and the Moon: they are heard

reliquos ne famâ quidem. Omnis vita  
(of) the others not by report even. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studiis  
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing.); ab parvulis student  
of military affairs, from children they accustom themselves

labori ac duritiâ. Qui permanserunt diutissimĕ  
to labor and hardships. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter suos.  
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people).

Putant hĕc staturam ali,  
(They) believe (that) by this the stature to be [is] increased,

hĕc vires ali, que nervos  
by this the strength to be [is] increased, and the nerves

confirmari. Verò habuisse notitiam  
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in  
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cuius rei est nulla  
the most shameful things. of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quòd perluuntur promiscuè in  
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis  
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl) renonum, magnâ parte corpōris nudâ.  
of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non student agri culturæ; que major  
They do not attend to agriculture, and the greater

pars ĕorum victûs consistit in lacte et casĕo  
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne. Neque habet quisquam certum mōdum  
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac  
of land, or proper boundaries, but the magistrates and  
principes, in singulos annos, attribunt quantum  
chiefs, in each year, assign as much

agri, et quo loco visum est, gentibus que  
(of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and  
cognitionibus hominum, qui coierunt unâ,  
to the families of men, who may have united together,

atque anno post cogunt transire aliò  
and the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen); ne capti  
They offer many reasons for this thing, lest captivated

assiduâ consuetudine commutent studium  
by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturâ; ne student  
of [for] waging war for agriculture, lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant  
to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent  
the more humble from possessions, lest they may build

accuratiùs ad vitandos frigora atque æstus; ne qua  
with more care for avoiding cold and heat, lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quâ re factiones  
desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant  
and dissensions originate, that they may keep

plebem æquitate animi, quum quisque  
the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat suas opes æquari cum  
may see (that) his own means to be [are] equaled with

potentissimis.  
the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habere  
It is the greatest praise to the states, to have

solitudines quàm latissimas<sup>26</sup> circum se,  
deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc  
their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium virtutis, finitimos expulsos  
 a peculiar (evidence) of valor, (that) their neighbors expelled

agris cedere, neque quemquam  
 from (their) lands (to) abandon (them), nor (that) any

(sing) audere consistere se prope.  
 (to) dare (to) settle themselves near.

Simul<sup>s</sup> arbitrantur se  
 At the same time they think (that) they themselves

före tutiores hęc, timore repentinæ  
 to be about to [will] be more safe by this, the fear of sudden

incursionis sublato. Quum civitas aut  
 raids having been removed, When the state either

defendit bellum illatum, aut infert;  
 repels war waged against it, or wages war,

magistratus deliguntur, qui præsint ěi bello,  
 magistrates are chosen, who preside over this war,

ut habeant potestatem vitæ que necis.  
 so that they may have the power of life and death.

In pace est nullus communis magistratus, sed  
 In peace there is no general magistrate, but

principes regionum atque pagorum dicunt  
 the chiefs of the provinces and cantons say [administer]

jus inter sũos, que minuunt controversias.  
 justice among their (people), and settle disputes

Habent latrocinia nullam infamiam, quæ fiunt  
 They hold robberies as no disgrace, which are committed

extra fines cujusque civitatis; atque prædicant  
 beyond the boundaries of any state, and they assert

ěa fieri causâ exercendæ  
 (that) this to be [is] done for the purpose of exercising

juventutis; ac minuendæ desidæ. Atque ubi  
 the youth, and of preventing sloth And when

quis ex principibus dixit in concilio, "se  
 any one from [of] the chiefs has said in council

före ducem, ut qui velint  
 "he to be about to [will] be the leader, that those who may wish

sequi profiteantur;" ĩi qui probant et  
 to follow let them volunteer," those who approve both



causam et hominem consurgunt, que pollicentur  
the cause and the man rise up, and promise

suum auxilium, atque collaudantur ab multitudine  
their aid, and are applauded by the multitude

Qui ex iis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur  
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numero desertorum ac proditorum; que  
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postea fides abrogatur iis omnium  
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.) Putant non fas violare  
things They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad eos de quaque  
their guests, those who have come to them for any

causâ, prohibent ab injuriâ, que habent  
reason, they defend from harm, and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent iis, que  
inviolable; the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.  
food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antea fuit tempus, quum Galli  
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro  
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

inferrent (imp. subj.) bella ac propter  
were waging war and on account of

multitudinem hominum, que inopiam agri  
the multitude of men, and the scarcity of land

mittèrent (imp. subj.) colonias trans Rhenum.  
they were sending colonies across the Rhine

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occupârunt ea loca  
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt  
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam video  
there about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam  
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famâ; quam illi appellant Orcyniam).  
 Greeks by report, which they call Orcynia)

Quæ gens continet se iis sedibus  
 Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, que habet summam opinionem  
 to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; que nunc  
 of [for] justice and (of) warlike praise, and now

permanent in eâdem inopiâ, egestate,  
 they remain in the same privation [want] poverty [need],

patientiâ, quâ Germani; utuntur  
 (and) patience, in which [as] the Germans, they use

ëodem victu et cultu corpõris Propinquitas  
 the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitiâ transmarinarum  
 of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing) multa ad copiam  
 things provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, que  
 and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis præliis ipsi ne se  
 conquered in many battles they do not themselves

quidem<sup>27</sup> comparant virtute cum illis.  
 indeed compare in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ  
 The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est suprâ, patet iter novem dierum  
 has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedito Enim potest non finiri aliter,  
 to an active (man) For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur  
 nor do they know measures of roads. It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et  
 at the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes, and

Rauracorum, que rectâ regione fluminis  
 of the Rauraci, and in a straight direction (along) the river

Danuvî, pertinet ad fines Dacorum et  
 Danube, it extends to the territories of the Daci and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis  
of the Anartes; thence it bends itself to the left in different  
regionibus à flumine, que attingit fines  
directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries  
multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque  
of many nations on account of the great extent. Nor  
est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat  
is (there) any one of this (part) of Germany, who may say  
(aut audisse) aut adisse  
(that) (either to have [he had] heard) or to have [had] gone  
ad initium ejus silvæ, quum processerit  
to the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded  
iter sexaginta dierum; aut acceperit ex quo  
a journey of sixty days, or may have heard from what  
lõco oriatur. Constat multa genera  
place it may take its origin It is certain (that) many kinds  
ferarum nasci in eã, quæ sint non visa in  
of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in  
reliquis lõcis; ex quibus quæ maximè differant  
other places from which (those) that greatly differ  
ab cæteris, et videantur prodenda  
from others, and may seem worthy to be handed down  
memoriæ, sunt hæc.  
to memory, are these

26. Est bos figurâ cervi, à mediâ  
There is an ox [animal] in the shape of a stag, from the mid  
fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit  
forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows  
excelsius, que mǎgis directum his cornibus,  
higher, and more straight (than) these horns,  
quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami  
which are known to us. From the top of this branches  
diffunduntur latè sicut palmæ. Natura  
are spread out broadly like palm (leaves) The nature  
feminæ que maris est eãdem, eãdem forma  
of the female and male is the same, the same form  
que magnitudo cornuum.  
and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.  
 There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et varietas pelhum est  
 The shape of these, and the variety of the skins 15

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt  
 very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; que sunt multilæ cornibus, et habent  
 a little. and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis que articulis; neque  
 legs without articulations and joints, neither

procumbunt causâ quietis, neque si afflictæ  
 do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor, if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigere  
 by any accident they may fall down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro  
 themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad eas, atque  
 beds, they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modò paulùm capiunt quietem;  
 so reclined merely a little they take rest,

quum ex vestigiis quarum animadversum est  
 when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

à venatoribus, quò consueverint recipere  
 by the hunters, where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subrũunt omnes eo  
 themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

lõco, à radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut  
 place. at the roots, or they cut the trees so that

summa species earum stantium relinquatur.  
 the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left

Hùc quum ex consuetudine reclinaverint se,  
 Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affigunt infirmas arbores pondere, atque ipsæ  
 they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt unà.  
 fall down together (with them)

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui  
 There is a third kind of these (animals), which

appellântur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo  
 are called the wild ox. These are in size a little  
 infrâ elephantos, speciē et colore et  
 below the elephant, with the appearance and color and  
 figurâ tauri. Forum vis est magna, et  
 form of the bull. Their strength is great, and (their)  
 velocitas magna; parcunt neque homīni neque feræ  
 speed great: they spare neither man nor beast  
 quam conspexerint; hos interficiunt captos  
 that they may have seen; these they kill captured  
 studiose foveis. Adolescentes durant se  
 with much zeal in pits. The youths harden themselves  
 hōc labore; atque exercent hōc genēre  
 by this task; and they exercise by this kind  
 venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos  
 of hunting; and (those) who have killed the most  
 ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus  
 from [of] these, obtain great praise. the horns  
 relatis in publicum quæ sint  
 having been brought into public which may be (as)  
 testimonio. Sed ne parvuli quidem excepti  
 evidence. But not the young even (when) taken  
 possunt assuescere ad homines, et  
 [captured] can be accustomed to men. and  
 mansueferi. Amplitudo et figura et species  
 tamed. The size and shape and appearance  
 cornūum differt multum à cornibus nostrorum  
 of (their) horns differs much from the horns of our  
 bōum. Hæc studiosè conquisita,  
 oxen. These having been carefully sought,  
 circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque  
 they enclose (them) from [on] the brims with silver, and  
 utuntur in amplissimis epulis pro  
 use (them) in (their) most splendid feasts for  
 poculis.  
 cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compērit per Ubios  
 Cæsar after he discovered through the Ubian



exploratores, Suevos recepissee sese in  
 scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into  
 silvas, veritus inopiã frumenti, (quòd, ut  
 the forests, fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as  
 demonstravimus suprâ, omnes Germani student  
 we have shown above, all the Germans attend  
 minimè agrì culturâ), constituit non progredi  
 very little to agriculture), he resolved not to proceed  
 longiùs; sed ne tolleret omnino metum  
 further, but that he might not take away altogether the fear  
 sũi reditũs barbãris, atque ut tardaret  
 of his return from the barbarians and that he might retard  
 eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu, rescindit  
 their auxiliaries, having led back the army he breaks down  
 ultimam partem pontis, quæ contingebat  
 the farthest part of the bridge which was touching  
 ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum  
 the shores of the Ubi, to the length of two hundred  
 pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)  
 feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge  
 constituit turrì quatuor tabularum, que ponit  
 he constructs a tower of four stories, and places  
 præsidium duodẽcim cohortium causã tuendi  
 a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending  
 pontis, que firmat eum locum magnis  
 the bridge and strengthens this place with great  
 munitionibus. Præfecit ei loco que præsidio,  
 fortifications He placed over this place and garrison.  
 C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, quum  
 C. Volcatus Tullus. a young man: he himself, when  
 frumenta incipẽrent maturescẽre, profectus ad  
 the corn began to ripen, having set out to  
 bellum Ambiorigis, per Arduennam  
 the war of [with] Ambiorix, through the Arduennian [Ardennes]  
 silvam, quæ est maxĩma totius Galliæ, atque  
 forest, which is the largest of all Gaul, and  
 pertinet ab ripis Rheni que finibus  
 extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios, que patet amplius  
of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than

quingentis milibus in longitudinem; præmittit  
five hundred miles in length, he sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si  
L. Minucius Basilus, with all the cavalry, if

possit proficere quid celeritate itinēris,  
he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate temporis; monet ut  
and by the favorableness of the time, he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne  
he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat præcul ejus  
any intimation [sign] might be made at a distance of his

adventûs; dicit sese subsequi confestim.  
coming, he says that he himself to [would] follow speedily.

30. Basilus facit ut imperatum est; itinere  
Basilus does as he was commanded, the march

confecto celeriter, que contra opinionem  
having been performed quickly, and contrary to the opinion

omnium, deprehendit multos inopinantes in agris;  
of all, he captures many unaware in the fields,

eorum indicio contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,  
by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in loco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis  
in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, quum in  
horsemen Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.).  
all things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret  
For as it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus  
on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominibus prius quam  
arrival was seen by the men before (that)

afferretur famâ ac nunciis; sic fuit  
it was brought by report and messengers, so it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento, quod  
(of) great fortune, all the military implements, that

habebat circum se erepto, rhedis  
he was having about him having been seized, his chariots

que equis comprehensis, ipsum  
and horses having been captured, (that) he himself

effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est eo  
should escape death. But this was effected in this

quod ædificiō circumdato silvâ  
(manner) for the house (having been) surrounded by a wood

ut domicilia Gallorum ferè sunt, qui causâ  
as the dwellings of the Gauls generally are, who for the sake

vitandi æstûs, plerumque petunt propinquitates  
of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity

silvarum ac fluminum, ejus comites que familiares  
of woods and rivers, his attendants and friends

sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum  
sustained for a little while the force of our cavalry

in angusto loco. His pugnantibus (abl.  
in a narrow place. (While) these (are) fighting,

abs.), quidam ex suis intulit illum in  
some one from [of] his (men) placed him on

equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna  
a horse; the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune

valuit multum, et ad subeundum periculum, et  
availed much, both for encountering danger, and

ad vitandum.  
for avoiding (it).

31. Ne Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias  
Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces

judicio, quod existimaverit non dimicandum<sup>28</sup>  
on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged

prælio; an exclusus tempore, et prohibitus  
in battle, or he had been cut off by time, and had been

fuerit repentino adventu equitum, quum  
prevented by the sudden arrival of the cavalry, when

crederet reliquum exercitum subsequi,  
he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following.

est dubium, sed certè nunciis dimissis  
 is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent

clàm per agros jussit  
 secretly through the fields [country] he ordered

quemque consulere sibi; quorum pars  
 that each one should take care of himself, of whom a part

profugit in Arduennam silvam,  
 fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes] forest,

pars in continentes paludes. Qui  
 a part into the continuous marshes (Those) who

fuerunt proximi Oceanum, hi occultaverunt  
 were nearest the Ocean, these hid

sese in insulis, quas æstus  
 themselves in the islands, which the tides

consuêrunt efficere. Multi egressi ex suis  
 are accustomed to form Many having emigrated from their

finibus crediderunt se que omnia  
 territories confided [consigned] themselves and all

sua alienissimis. Catuvelcus rex dimidiæ  
 their (property) to entire strangers Catuvelcus king of the half

partis Eburonum qui inerat consilium  
 part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel

unà cum Ambiorige, jam confectus ætate,  
 together with Ambiorix. now worn out with age.

quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut  
 since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or

fugæ, detestatus Ambiorigem omnibus  
 of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)

precibus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilii,  
 imprecations who was the author of this plan [design],

exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est  
 killed himself by yew (leaves). (of which (tree) there is

magna copia in Gallia que Germaniâ).  
 a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany).

32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et  
 The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and

numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones  
 the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treviros, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem,  
 and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar,  
 oratum "ne ducēret se in nuinēro  
 to pray "that he would not place them in the number  
 hostium, neve judicaret causam omnium  
 of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all  
 Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse  
 the Germans, who might be on this side of the Rhine to be  
 unam; se cogitasse nihil  
 [was] one [the same], (that) they to have [had] thought nothing  
 de bello, misisse nulla auxiliā  
 about war. (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries  
 Ambiorigi." Cæsar, re exploratā  
 to Ambiorix." Cæsar. the thing [matter] having been investigated  
 quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui  
 by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any  
 Eburones convenissent ad eos ex fugâ ut  
 Eburones had come to them from flight that  
 reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,  
 they should be brought back to him. If they did so,  
 negavit se violaturum eorum  
 he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their  
 fines. Tum copiis distributis in  
 territories. Then (his) forces having been distributed into  
 tres partes, contulit impedimenta omnium legionum  
 three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions  
 Aduaticam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est  
 to Aduatuca. This is the name of a fortress. This is  
 ferè in medijs finibus Eburonum, ubi  
 nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where  
 Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causâ  
 Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose  
 hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc locum quum  
 of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only  
 reliquis rebus, tum quòd munitiones  
 for other things, but also because the fortifications  
 superioris anni manebant integræ, ut  
 of the preceding year were remaining entire, (so) that



sublevaret laborem mīlitum: reliquit quatuor-  
 he might relieve the labor of the soldiers; he left the

decimam legionem præsidio impedimentis unam  
 fourteenth legion for [as] a guard to the baggage one

ex iis tribus, quas proximè conscriptas,  
 of those three, which lately (having been) enrolled,

transduxerat ex Italiâ. Præfecit ěi legioni  
 he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion

que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit  
 and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned

ducentos equites.  
 (him) two hundred horsemen.

33. Exercitu partito, jubet T. Labienum  
 The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisci cum tribus legionibus ad versùs  
 to march with three legions in the direction

Oceanum, in ěas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.  
 of the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii.

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numĕro legionum  
 He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum ěam regionem,<sup>29</sup> quæ adjacet  
 for to be laid [laying] waste this district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis  
 the Aduatuci. (He) himself with the three remaining (legions)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod  
 resolves to go to the river Scaldis [Scheldt], which

influit in Mosam, que extremas partes  
 flows into the Mosa [Meuse], and (to) the extreme parts

Arduennæ, quò audiebat  
 of the Arduennian [Ardennes] (forest), whither he heard

Ambiorigem profectum cum paucis equitibus.  
 Ambiorix had gone with a few horsemen.

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum  
 On departing he promises (that) (he) himself about to [would] return

post septimum diem; ad quam diem sciebat  
 after the seventh day; on which day he was knowing

frumentum deberi ěi legioni, quæ  
 (that) corn to be [was] due to this legion, which

relinquebatur in præsidio. Horatur Labienum que  
was left in garrison. He exhorts Labienus and

Trebonium revertantur ad eam diem, si  
Trebonius that they should return on this day, if

possint facere commodo rei publicæ, ut,  
they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,

concilio communicato rursus, que rationibus  
counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans

hostium exploratis, possint capere  
of the enemy having been ascertained, they might take [adopt]

aliud initium belli.  
another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus supra, nulla certa  
There was, as we have shown above, no fixed

manus, non presidium, non oppidum, quod  
body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that

defenderet se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in  
could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in

omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdita vallis, aut  
all parts. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or

silvestris locus, aut impedita palus, offerebat  
a woody place, or a difficult swamp, was offering

aliquam spem presidii aut salutis, consederat.  
some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled.

Hæc loca erant nota vicinitatibus, que res  
These places were known to the neighbors, and the thing

[condition] requirebat magnam diligentiam, non in  
was requiring great care, not in

tuenda summâ (abl.) exercitûs (enim nullum  
protecting the total of the army (for no

periculum, universis, poterat accidere ab  
danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)

perterritis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singulis  
terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual

militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat  
soldiers; which thing however in part was appertaining

ad salutem exercitûs. Nam et cupiditas prædæ  
to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longius, ac silvæ incertis  
was enticing many too far and the woods by their uncertain

que occultis itineribus prohibebant confertos  
and hidden paths were preventing (them) collected

adire. Si vellet confici negotium, que  
to advance. If he wished to finish the business, and

interfici stirpem sceleratorum hominum,  
to exterminate a race of infamous men,

plures manus dimittendæ, que milites  
a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers

diducendi erant; si vellet continere manipulos  
to [must] be detached; if he desired to keep the companies

ad signa, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo  
to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom

Romani exercitus postulabat, locus ipse erat  
of the Roman army was demanding, the place itself was

præsidio barbaris; neque dæerat  
(for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting

audaciâ singulis insidiandi ex occulto, et  
the daring to individuals of ambushing in secret, and

circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatibus  
of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties

ejusmodi quantum diligentia poterat provideri  
of this nature whatever by diligence could be provided

providebatur; ut potius aliquid omitteretur  
was provided: so that rather something might be omitted

in nocendo, etsi animi omnium  
in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all

ardebant ad ulciscendum, quam nocere-  
were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might

tur cum aliquo detrimento militum.  
be injured with any loss of soldiers.

Cæsar dimittit nuncios ad finitimas civitates;  
Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states,

evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad  
he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder for

diripiendos Eburones; ut potius vita Gallorum  
ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls

periclitetur in silvis, quàm legionariorum ;  
might be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

sĩmul, ut magnâ multitudine  
(soldiers); at the same time. that a great multitude

circumfusâ, stirps ac nomen civitatis  
having been sent abroad, the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinõre. Magnus numẽrus  
might be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celerĩter convenit undĩque.  
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebatur in omnibus partibus  
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, que septĩmus dĩes appetebat,  
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching.

ad quem dĩem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad  
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta que legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,  
the baggage and the legion Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantos  
how much fortune can do in war. and how great

casus affērat. Hostibus dissipatis  
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterrĩtis, ut demonstravimus, ěrat nulla  
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

mānus, quæ affēret mōdò parvam causam  
body of men, which might create on!y a slight cause

timõris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad  
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones dirĩpi, atque  
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged, and

omnes evocari ultrò ad prædam.  
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millia equitum,  
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand horse,

qui sunt proxĩmi Rheno, à quibus Tencteros  
they are the nearest to the Rhine. by whom the Teucteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugâ,  
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

suprà docūimus; transeuntes Rhenum navibus  
we have above shown, crossing the Rhine in ships

que ratibus triginta millibus passūum infra eum  
and boats thirty thousand paces below this

lōcum ubi pons erat perfectus, que præsidiū  
place where the bridge was made and the garrison

relictum ab Cæsare, adeunt primos fines  
left by Cæsar they enter the first [nearest] territories

Eburonum; excipiunt multos dispersos ex fugā;  
of the Eburones: they surprise many dispersed in flight:

potiuntur magno numēro pecōris, cujus  
they obtain possession of a great number of cattle. of which

barbāri sunt cupidissīmi. Invitati prædā  
the barbarians are very covetous. Enticed by booty

procedunt longiūs. Non pālus, non silvæ,  
they proceed farther. Neither swamps, nor woods.

morantur hos natos in bello, que latrocīnis.  
impede these men born in war and plundering.

Quærunť ex captivis in quibus lōcis Cæsar  
They inquire of the prisoners in what place Cæsar

sit; reperīunt profectum longiūs, que  
may be they find (that) he has gone further, and

cognoscunt omnem exercitum discessisse.  
learn (that) all the army to have [has] departed.

Atque unus ex captivis inquit, "quid vos  
Moreover one from [of] the captives said "why do you

sectamīni hanc misēram et tenūem prædam, quibus  
follow these wretched and trifling spoils to whom

jam licet esse fortunatissīmis? Tribus horis  
it is now allowed to be most fortunate? In three hours

potestis venire Aduatucam, huc exercitus Romanorum  
you can come to Aduatuca, there the army of the Romans

contūlit omnes sūas fortunas; est tantum  
has collected all its property, there is so little

præsidiī, ut ne murus quidem possit cingi,  
(of a) garrison, that not the wall even could be manned,

neque audēat quisquam egredi extra munitiōnes."  
nor dares any one go beyond the fortifications "



(Hæc) spe oblatâ, Germani relinquunt  
(This) hope having been offered. the Germans leave

in occulto prædam quam nacti erant ;  
in hiding the booty which they had obtained ;

ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem  
they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same

(person) dūce cujus indicio cognoverant  
as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.

these things.

36. Cicero, (qui per omnes superiores dies,  
Cicero, (who through all the former days,

præceptis Cæsar's continuisset milites in  
according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in

castris summâ diligentîâ, ac passus est ne  
camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not

quemquam calonem quidem egredi extra  
any camp follower even to go beyond

munitiōnem); septimo die diffidens Cæsarem  
the fortification) on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar

servaturum fidem de numero dierum,  
about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,

quòd audiebat eum progressum longiùs,  
because he was hearing (that) he had proceeded further,

neque ulla fama de ejus reditu afferebatur,  
nor was any report of his return brought.

sîmul permotus vocibus eorum, qui  
at the same time moved by the voices of those, who

appellabant illius patientiam pænè obsessionem si  
were calling his endurance nearly a siege if

quidem non liceret egredi ex castris ;  
indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp ;

expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo  
expecting no event of such kind by which [that]

posset offendi, in tribus milibus,  
he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp)

novem legionibus oppositis, que maximo  
nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus, dispersis ac pænè  
cavalry, the enemy, having been dispersed and almost

deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in  
annihilated, he sent five cohorts to forage in

proximas segètes, inter quas et castra  
the neighboring corn-fields, between which and the camp

unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex  
one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from

legionibus erant relictæ ægri in castris; ex quibus,  
the legions had been left sick in the camp: of whom

qui, hęc spatïo dierum, convaluerant,  
(those) who, in this period of time, had recovered.

circiter trecenti, mittuntur sub vexillo unà;  
about three hundred are sent under a standard together.

præterea magna multitudo calonum magna  
besides a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,  
force of beasts of burden, that remained in the camp.

sequitur, potestate factâ.  
followed (them), permission having been given.

37. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani  
At this very time and by chance the German

equites interveniunt, que protinùs eodem illo  
horsemen arrived, and immediately with that same

cursu, quo venerant, conantur irrumpere in  
speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanâ portâ; nec sunt visi,  
the camp at the decuman gate, nor were they seen.

silvis objectis ab eâ parte, priùs  
a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side], before

quàm appropinquarent castris, usque eò, ut  
(that) they had approached the camp, even so, that

mercatores, qui tendèrent sub vallo,  
the merchants (sutlers), who encamped under the rampart,

habèrent facultatem recipiendi sibi.  
had not an opportunity of taking themselves away.

Nostri inopinantes perturbantur novâ  
Our (men) taken unawares are confused with this new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustinet  
condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains

primum impētum; hostes circumfunduntur ex  
the first attack: the enemy are spread out on

reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem aditum;  
the other sides, if they could find some approach;

nostri ægre tuentur portas; locus  
our (men) with difficulty defend the gates. the place

ipse per se que munitio defendit  
itself through itself and by the fortification defends

reliquos aditus, totis castris trepidatur, atque  
the other approaches, in all the camp there is alarm. and

alius quærit ex alio causam tumultus; neque  
one inquires of another the cause of the confusion; neither

provident quò signa ferantur, neque in  
do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into

quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronunciat  
what part each one may assemble. One declares

castra jam capta, alius contendit,  
(that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),

exercitu atque imperatore delecto,  
the army and the commander having been destroyed,

victores barbãros venisse; plerique fingunt  
the victorious barbarians (to) have come: the greater part form

novas religiones sibi ex loco. Que  
strange superstitions for themselves from the place. And

ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et  
they put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cottæ and

Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus  
Titurii, who had fallen in the same fortress. All

perterritis tali timore, opinio  
(having been) alarmed by such fear, the opinion

confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex  
is confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from

captivo nullum præsidium esse intus;  
the captive (that) no garrison to be [was] within;

nituntur perrumpere, que ipsi adhortantur  
they endeavor to force an entrance. and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex  
 one another, lest they may let go so great a prize from  
 manibus.  
 their hands.

38. P. Sextius Baculus, qui duxerat primum  
 P. Sextius Baculus, who led the first  
 pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecimus mentionem  
 company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention  
 superioribus præliis, erat relictus æger in præsidio,  
 in former battles, was left sick in the garrison,  
 ac caruerat cibo jam quintum diem. Hic,  
 and had been without food now the fifth day. He,  
 diffusus sũæ salutis ac omnium, inermis  
 mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed  
 prodit ex tabernaculo, videt hostes  
 goes out from the tent, he sees (that) the enemy  
 imminere, atque rem esse in  
 to be [were] pressing on. and that the affair to be [was] in  
 summo discrimine; capit arma à proximis,  
 the greatest danger, he seizes arms from the nearest,  
 atque consistit in portâ. Centuriones ejus  
 and places himself in the gate. The centurions of this  
 cohortis quæ erat in statione sequuntur hunc;  
 cohort which was on guard follow him.  
 paulisper sustinent prælium unâ; animus  
 for a little while they sustain the battle together; the mind  
 relinquit Sextium<sup>30</sup> gravis vulneribus acceptis;  
 leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received;  
 tractus per manus (pl.) ægrè servatur.  
 drawn away by hand with difficulty he is saved.  
 Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui confirmant  
 This period having been interposed, the others encourage  
 sese tantum, ut audeant consistere  
 one another so much, that they dare take stand  
 in munitionibus, que præbent speciem  
 on the fortifications, and show the appearance  
 defensorum.  
 of defenders.

39. Intērim frumentatione confectâ,  
 In the mean time the foraging having been completed,  
 nostri milites exaudiunt clamorem, equites  
 our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen  
 præcurrunt cognoscunt in quanto pericūlo  
 hasten on before, they ascertain in what great danger  
 res sit. Verò hic est nulla munitio,  
 the matter is. But here there is no fortification,  
 quæ recipiat perterritos. Modò conscripti  
 which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled  
 atque imperiti militaris usûs convertunt ora ad  
 and unskilled in military practice turn faces to  
 tribunum militum que centuriones; expectant  
 the tribunes of the soldiers and centurions; they await  
 quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam  
 what may be commanded by them. No one is so  
 fortis, quin perturbetur novitate rei.  
 brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the novelty of the affair  
 Barbãri, conspicati signa præcul,  
 [condition]. The barbarians, having seen the standard at a distance.  
 d sistunt ab oppugnatione; primò credunt  
 desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)  
 legiones redisse, quas cognovērant ex  
 the legions had returned, which they had learned from  
 captivis discessisse longiùs; postea, paucitate  
 the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness  
 despectâ, faciunt impetum, ex  
 having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]  
 omnibus partibus.  
 all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proximum tumulum  
 The camp followers run to the nearest eminence  
 celeriter dejecti hinc, conjiciunt se  
 having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves  
 in signa que manipulos; èd magis  
 among the standards and companies; so much the more  
 perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent  
 they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion



cun̄o                      facto                      celeriter  
 (that) a wedge      having been formed      they may      quickly  
 perrumpant, quoniam castra sint tam propinqua,  
 break through,      and as      the camp      is      so      near,  
 etsi aliqua pars circumventa ceciderit,  
 although      some      part      having been surrounded      might fall,  
 at      confidunt                      reliquos                      posse  
 still      they trust      (that)      the remainder      to be able [can]  
 servari.      Alii                      ut      consistant      in  
 (to) be saved.      Others (advise)      that      they take stand      on  
 jigo,      atque                      omnes ferant eundem casum.  
 the hill-top.      and      (that)      all      undergo the same      fate.  
 Veteres      milites,      quos                      documus  
 The veteran      soldiers,      whom [who]      we have mentioned  
 perfectos      un̄a      sub      vexillo      non  
 (to have) marched out      together      under      a standard      do not  
 probant hoc. Itaque cohortati inter se,  
 approve      this      Therefore      having encouraged      one      another,  
 C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui erat præpositus  
 C. Trebonius. a Roman knight, who had been placed over  
 eis,                      duce, perrumpunt per medios<sup>31</sup>  
 them, being their      commander,      they break      through      the middle  
 hostes que omnes ad unum perveniunt  
 [central] enemies      and      all      to      one [a man]      arrive  
 incolumnes in castra (acc.). Calones que  
 safe      in      the camp      The camp followers      and  
 equites      subsequuti      hos      eodem      impetu,  
 the horsemen      having followed      these      with the same      dash,  
 servantur virtute militum. At ii, qui  
 are saved      by the bravery      of the soldiers.      But      those,      who  
 constiterant in jugo, etiam nunc nullo  
 had taken stand      on      the hill-top,      even      now      no  
 usu      militaris      rei (sing.)      percepto,  
 experience      of military      affairs      having been acquired,  
 neque permanere in eo consilio, quod proba-  
 neither      persisted      in      this      design,      which      they have  
 verant, ut defenderent se superiore  
 approved,      that      they should defend      themselves      in the higher

lōco, neque potuerunt imitari ěam vim que  
position, nor were able to imitate this vigor and

celeritatem, quam vidĕrant profuisse  
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in  
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserant in iniquūm lōcum.  
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant  
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,  
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causâ virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus  
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amittĕrent laudem militaris  
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rĕi (sing.) partam antĕ conciderunt pugnantes  
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissimĕ. Pars militum, hostibus  
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,  
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolūmis, prĕter spem,  
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation,

pars circumventa à barbāris periit.  
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-  
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratâ, quòd videbant nostros  
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt  
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum ěâ prædâ quam  
themselves beyond the Rhine, with this booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit  
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut  
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

ẽa nocte, quum C. Volusenus venisset ad  
 this night, when C. Volusenus had come to  
 castra, missus cum equitatu, non  
 the camp, having been sent with the cavalry, he could not  
 faceret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum  
 make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with  
 exercitu incolũmi. Timor præoccupaverat animos  
 the army safe Fear had preoccupied the souls  
 omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatã,  
 of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced.  
 dicerent, equitatum tantum recepisse se  
 they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned  
 ex fugã, omnibus copiis deletis,  
 from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed.  
 que contendèrent Germanos ne fuisse  
 and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been  
 oppugnatos<sup>32</sup> castra exercitu  
 about to assault [had not assaulted] the camp (if) the army  
 incolũmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus  
 being [was] safe; which fear Cæsar's arrival  
 sustulit.  
 removed.

42. Ille reversus, non ignarus eventũs  
 He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty  
 belli, questus unum quòd cohortes essent  
 of war, complained (of) one (thing) that the cohorts had been  
 emissæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit  
 sent from the post and from the garrison; he pointed out  
 locum ne minimum quidem debuisse  
 (that) the place not the least even ought  
 relinqui casui, fortuna potuisse  
 to be left to chance, fortune might have been able [done]  
 multum in repentino adventu hostium; etiam multò  
 much by the sudden arrival of the enemy; also much  
 ampliùs, quòd avertisset barbãros ab  
 more, because she had turned away the barbarians from  
 vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium  
 the rampart itself and the gates of the camp Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maximè admirandum,  
 which things it seemed most to be wondered at,

quòd Germani, qui transiērant Rhenum ěo  
 that the Germans. who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,  
 design. that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix.

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt  
 having been led to the camp of the Romans brought

Ambiorigi optatissimum beneficium.  
 to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit

43. Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos<sup>33</sup>  
 Cæsar having again departed to harass

hostes; magno numĕro coacto ex  
 the enemy a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes  
 the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,  
 parts All the villages and all the buildings

quæ quisque conspexĕrat, incendebantur; præda  
 which any one might see were set on fire spoils

agebatur ex omnibus lōcis; frumenta non  
 were driven off from all places the corn not

solum consumebantur (pl) à tantâ multitudine  
 only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum; sed etiam procubuĕrant  
 of cattle and men. but also had fallen down

tempōre anni atque imbribus; ut si qui  
 by the time of year and the rains so that if any

etiam in præsentîâ occultâssent se, tamen  
 even in [for] the present had concealed themselves yet

videretur his perendum<sup>34</sup> inopiâ omnium  
 it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum exercĭtu deducto. Ac sæpe  
 things the army having been withdrawn And often

ventum est in ěum lōcum, equitatu diviso  
 it came to this pass, the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captivi.  
 so much into [in] all directions. that the prisoners





ciatâ de Accone, qui fuerat princeps  
pronounced on Acco, who had been the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit supplicium, more  
of this counsel, he took [inflicted] punishment, after the custom

majorum.<sup>35</sup> Nonnulli veriti iudicium profugerunt,  
of our ancestors. Some afraid of a trial fled.

quum interdixisset aquâ atque igni quibus,  
when he had interdicted water and fire to them,

collocavit in hibernis duas legiones ad fines  
he stationed in winter quarters two legions on the frontiers

Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, reliquas  
of the Treviri, two among the Lingones, the remaining

sex Agendici in finibus Senonum, que  
six at Agendicum in the territories of the Senones and

frumento proviso exercitui, ut  
corn having been provided for the army. as

instituërat, profectus est in Italiam ad agendos  
he had resolved he departed for Italy to hold

conventus.  
the assemblies.

## SEVENTH BOOK

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Cæsar in the city. Cæsar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Cæsar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Cæsar. In spite of Cæsar's efforts the Ædni join the revolt. Cæsar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the siege of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Cæsar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general uprising of all Gaul now follow. Cæsar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the besieged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Cæsar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Cæsar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Cæsar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Gallîâ	quietâ,	Cæsar	ut	constituërat
Gaul	being at peace,	Cæsar	as	he had resolved
proficiscitur	in Italiam	ad agendos	conventus;	
proceeded	to Italy	to hold	the assemblies;	
ûbi	cognoscit	de cæde	P. Clodii,	que
there	he learned	of the murder	of P. Clodius,	and
factus	certior	de consulto	Senatûs,	
having been made	acquainted	with the decree	of the Senatc,	

ut omnes juniores Italiae conjurarent,  
that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,

instituit habere delectum totâ provinciâ. Eæ  
he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These

res celeriter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.  
things quickly are spread into Transalpine Gaul

Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,  
The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,

(quod res videbatur poscere,) Cæsarem  
(what the case seemed to demand.) (that) Cæsar

retineri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse  
was detained by the city commotions, nor could

venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi  
come to the army in such dissensions. Incited

hâc occasione, qui jam antè dolerent  
by this opportunity, those who even before lamented

se subjectos imperio Romani populi,  
(that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,

incipiunt inire consilia de bello liberiùs  
begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely

atque audaciùs. Principes Galliae,  
and more daringly The principal men of Gaul,

conciliis indictis inter se silvestribus  
councils having been convoked among themselves in woody

ac remotis locis, queruntur de morte  
and remote places, complain concerning the death

Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse  
of Aeco; they represent (that) this fate might

recidere ad ipsos; miserantur communem  
occur to themselves; they bewail the common

fortunam Galliae; deprecant omnibus pollicitationibus  
lot of Gaul; they demand by all promises

ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,  
and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,

et vindicent Galliam in libertatem  
and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom

periculo sui capitis.<sup>1</sup> Dicunt in primis  
at the peril of their lives. They say especially

ut rationem habendam ejus, ut  
 that care was to [must] be had of [for] this, that  
 Cæsar intercludatur ab exercitu, priusquàm eorum  
 Cæsar should be cut off from the army, before their  
 clandestina consilia efferantur. Id esse facile,  
 secret designs are reported. (That) this was easy.  
 quòd neque legiones, imperatore absente,  
 because neither the legions, the commander being absent,  
 audeant egrēdi ex hibernis, neque possit  
 dare to come forth from winter quarters. nor could  
 imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.  
 the commander arrive at the legions without a guard.  
 Postremò præstare interfici in acie,  
 Finally (that) it was better to be killed in the battle-line,  
 quàm non recuperare vetērem gloriām  
 than not to recover (their) ancient glory  
 belli que libertatem quam accepērint à  
 of [in] war and the liberty which they have received from  
 majoribus.  
 the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitatis, Carnutes profitentur  
 These things having been discussed, the Carnutes proclaim  
 se recusare nullum pericūlum causā  
 (that) they to [will] refuse no danger for the sake  
 commūnis salutis; pollicentur se principes  
 of the common safety; they promise (that) they the first  
 ex omnibus facturos bellum; et  
 from [of] all about to [would] make war; and  
 quoniam in præsentia possent non cavere  
 since at the present (time) they could not give security  
 inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,  
 among themselves by hostages, lest the matter be divulged,  
 petunt ut sanciat jurejurando ac fide,  
 they request that it be ratified by oath and pledge,  
 militaribus signis collatis, (quo  
 the military standards having been stacked together, (by which  
 more eorum gravissima cærimonia continetur  
 usage their most solemn ceremony is guarded [confirmed])

ne                    initio                    belli                    facto,  
lest            the commencement            of the war            having been made,  
deserantur            à reliquis.            Tunc,            Carnutibus  
they might be deserted            by            the others.            Then,            the Carnutes  
collaudatis,  
having been applauded,  
jurejurando            dato            ab  
the oath            having been given            by  
omnibus qui adērant,            tempore ejus  
all            who            were present,            (and)            the time            of [for] this  
rei            constituto,            disceditur<sup>2</sup>            ab  
movement            having been determined,            they departed            from  
concilio.  
the council.

3. Ubi ēa dies venit, Carnutes, Cotuato et  
When this day came, the Carnutes. Cotuatus and  
Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus,  
Conconnetodumnus as leaders, desperate men,  
concurrunt            Cenabum,            signo  
assembled hastily            at Cenabum [Orleans],            the signal  
dato,            que interficiunt Romanos cives,  
having been given,            and            kill            the Roman            citizens,  
qui constitērant ibi causā negotiandi, in  
who had settled there for the purpose of trading, among  
his C. Fufium Citam, honestum Romanum equitem,  
them C. Fufius Cita, an honorable Roman knight,  
qui præerat frumentariæ rei, jussu Cæsaris;  
who presided over the grain supply, by order of Cæsar;  
que diripiunt eorum bona. Fama celeriter  
and they plunder their property. The report quickly  
perfertur ad omnes civitates Galliæ. Nam ubi  
is spread to all the states of Gaul. For when  
major atque illustrior res incidit, significant  
a greater and more notable affair occurs, they indicate  
per agros que regiones clamore; alii  
(it) through the lands and territories by a shout; some  
deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proximis,  
in succession receive this, and transmit (it) to the nearest  
ut tunc accidit. Nam quæ gesta essent  
as then happened. For what (things) had been done



Cenabi sole oriente (abl. abs.),<sup>3</sup>  
 at Cenabum [Orleans] at sun rise,  
 audita sunt in finibus Arvernorum ante  
 are heard in the territories of the Arverni before  
 primam vigiliam<sup>4</sup> confectam, quod est spatium  
 the first watch is completed, which is a space  
 [distance] circiter centum et sexaginta millium  
 of about a hundred and sixty thousand  
 passuum.  
 paces.  
 4. Ibi simili ratione Vircingetorix, Arvernus,  
 There in like manner Vircingetorix, an Arvernian,  
 filius Celtilli, adolescens summæ potentiæ,  
 the son of Celtillus, a young man of the highest power,  
 (cujus pater obtinuërat principatum totius Galliæ,  
 (whose father had held the foremost place of all Gaul,  
 et ob eam causam, quòd appetebat regnum  
 and for this reason, that he was seeking sovereign  
 power interfectus erat ab civitate), suis clientibus  
 was put to death by the state), his clients  
 convocatis facile incendit eos. Ejus  
 having been called together he easily inflamed them. His  
 consilio cognito concurritur<sup>5</sup> ad arma.  
 design having been known they rush to arms.  
 Prohibetur ab Gobannitione suo patruo, que  
 He was prevented by Gobannitio his uncle, and  
 reliquis principibus, qui non existimabant  
 the other chiefs, who were not thinking (that)  
 hanc fortunam temptandam, expellitur  
 this fortune [hazard] ought to be attempted, he is expelled  
 ex oppido Gergoviâ. Tamen non  
 from the town (of) Gergovia. However he does not  
 desistit, atque in agris habet delectum  
 desist, and in the fields [country] holds a levy  
 egentium ac perditorum. Hâc manu coac-  
 of needy and desperate (men). This band having  
 to, quosunque ex civitate adit  
 been collected, whomever of the state he approaches

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut  
he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that

capiant arma causâ communis libertatis;  
they take arms for the sake of the common liberty:

que magnis copiis coactis, expellit ex  
and great forces having been collected, he expels from

civitate suos adversarios à quibus ejectus ert  
the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted

paulò antè. Appellatur rex ab suis;  
a little before. He is called king by his (followers):

dimittit legationes quoquoversùs; obtestatur ut  
he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that

manèant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi  
they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself

Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,  
the Senones. the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci. the Turones,

Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,  
the Aulerci. the Lemovici, the Andes. and all the rest,

qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur  
who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred

ad eum consensu omnium. Quâ potestate  
on him by the consent of all. Which [This] power

oblatâ, impërat obsides omnibus his  
having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these

civitatibus: jubet certum numërum militum  
states: he orders a fixed number of soldiers

celeriter adduci ad se; constituit quantum  
speedily brought to him; he decrees what number

armorum quæque civitas efficiat domi, que  
of arms each state should prepare at home, and

ante quod tempus; in primis studet equitatui.  
before what time: especially he attends to the cavalry.

Summæ diligentiaë addit summam severitatem  
To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity

imperii; magnitudine supplicii cogit  
of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces

dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commisso  
the hesitating. For, a greater crime having been committed,

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;  
 he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;

de leviore causâ, auribus desectis, aut  
 for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or

singulis oculis effosis, remittit  
 a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et  
 home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterrëant alios magnitudinæ pœnæ.  
 may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercitu coacto celeriter his  
 An army having been assembled quickly by these

supplicis, mittit Lucterium Cadureum hominem  
 punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audaciæ cum parte copiarum in  
 of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscitur in Bituriges.  
 the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad  
 On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide erant,) rogatum  
 the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint facilius  
 aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinere copias hostium. Ædui de consilio  
 to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad  
 of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatûs que peditatûs  
 the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui quum venissent ad flumen  
 to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Æduis,  
 Loire, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui,

morati paucos dies ibi, neque ausi  
 having delayed a few days there, nor having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renunciant  
 to cross the river, they return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam  
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus<sup>6</sup> cognoverint  
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned; to whom they had ascertained

id consilii fuisse, ut si transissent  
this plan to have [had] been, that if they crossed

flumen, ex unâ parte ipsi, alterâ  
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges] on the other

Arverni circumsisterent se. Ne fecerint  
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de eâ causâ, quam pronuntiârunt  
this from [for] this reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiâ, quòd nihil  
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non videtur esse ponendum  
is evident to us, it does not seem (best) to be put down

pro certo. Biturges eorum discessu statim  
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernīs.  
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nunciatis Cæsari, in Italiam,  
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

quum jam ille intelligeret urbanas res  
when already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute<sup>7</sup>  
[had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.  
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eò afficiebatur magnâ  
When he had arrived there he was affected with the great

difficultate, quâ ratione posset pervenire  
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he might reach

ad exercitum. Nam si arcesseret legiones in  
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicatura  
the province, he was understanding (that) they about to [must] fight

prælio in itinere, se absente; si ipse  
in battle on the march, he being absent; if he himself

contendēret ad exercitum, videbat, suam  
 should hasten to the army, it was seeming (that) his  
 salutem rectè committi ne iis,  
 safety properly to [could] be committed not to those,  
 quidem qui èo tempore viderentur  
 even who at this time were appearing (to be)  
 pacati.  
 peaceable.

7. Intērim Lucterius Cadureus missus  
 In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent  
 in Rutenos conciliat ěam civitatem Arvernīs.  
 to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arverni.  
 Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, accipit  
 Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabalii, he receives  
 obsides ab utrisque; et magnā manu co-  
 hostages from each one; and a large band having been  
 actā, contendit facere eruptionem in Provinciam  
 collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province  
 versus Narbonem. Quā re nunciatā,  
 toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,  
 Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus  
 Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all  
 consiliis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.  
 (other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.  
 Quum venisset eò, confirmat timentes, constituit  
 When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places  
 præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis  
 garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci  
 Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, que circum Narbonem, quæ  
 Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which  
 loca ěrant finitima hostibus; jubet partem copiarum  
 places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces  
 ex Provinciâ que supplementum, quod adduxerat  
 from the province and the recruits, which he had brought  
 ex Italiâ convenire in Helvios qui contingunt  
 from Italy to assemble among the Helvii who border on  
 fines Arvernorum.  
 the territories of the Arverni.



8. His rebus comparatis, Lucretius jam  
 These things having been arranged, Lucretius now  
 represso et remoto, quòd putabat  
 having been checked and removed, because he thought (it)  
 periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-  
 dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]  
 ficiscitur in Helvios. Etsi mons Cebenna,  
 marches into the Helvii Although mount Cevennes,  
 qui discludit Arvernos ab Helviis impediēbat  
 which separates the Arverni from the Helvii was barring  
 iter altissimâ nive durissîmo tempore  
 the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]  
 anni; tamen nive sex pēdum in altitudinem  
 of the year: however the snow six feet in height [depth]  
 discussâ, atque viis ita patefactis,  
 having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,  
 pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo  
 he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost  
 labore militum. Quibus oppressis,  
 labor of his soldiers. Who [They] (having been) astounded,  
 inopinantibus, quòd existimabant se  
 taken unawares, because they were thinking (that they) themselves  
 munitos Cebennâ ut muro, ac è  
 (were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this  
 tempore anni semitæ unquam patuerant  
 season of the year the paths never had lain open  
 homini ne singulari quidem, impērat  
 to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands  
 equitibus, ut vagentur quam latissimè  
 the cavalry. that they should roam as far  
 possent, et infērant quàm maximum  
 as they could, and should occasion the very greatest  
 terrorem hostibus. Hæc celeriter perferuntur  
 fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced  
 ad Vercingetorigem famâ ac nunciis; quem  
 to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom  
 omnes Arverni perterriti circumstant atque  
 all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat suis fortunis, neu  
 entreat that he look out for their property, nor  
 patiatur se diripi ab hostibus,  
 suffer themselves to be plundered by the enemy  
 præsertim quum videat omne bellum trans-  
 especially when he sees (that) all the war was trans-  
 latum ad se. Percibus quorum<sup>8</sup> per-  
 ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom having been  
 motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus  
 stirred he moves (his) camp from. the Bituriges  
 versus in Arvernos.  
 towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in his locis  
 But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places  
 quod<sup>9</sup> præceperat opinione, hæc  
 because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these  
 ventura usu de Vercingetorige,  
 (things) would come in use [fact] regarding Vercingetorix,  
 discedit ab exercitu per causam cogendi  
 he departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising  
 supplementi que equitatus; præficit Brutum,  
 recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus,  
 adolescentem, his copiis; monet hunc, ut  
 a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that  
 equites pervagentur quam latissimè in  
 the cavalry should range about as far as possible in  
 omnes partes, se daturum operam  
 all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care  
 absit ab castris ne longius  
 (that) he may be absent from the camp no longer (than)  
 triduo. His rebus constitutis, pervenit  
 three days. These things having been arranged, he arrived  
 Viennem maximis itineribus quam potest,  
 at Vienna [Vienne] by as great marches as he was able,  
 suis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentum  
 his (men) not expecting (him) There having found the fresh  
 equitatum, quem præmiserat è multis  
 [newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many

diebus antè itinère intermisso neque  
 days before the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno contendit per fines  
 by day nor by night he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ūbi dŭæ legiones  
 of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilii de  
 were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suâ salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurreret,  
 his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Quum pervenisset eò mittit  
 (it), by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliquas legiones, que cogit omnes in unum  
 to the other legions, and gathers all into one

lōcum, prius quàm possit nunciari  
 place, before (that) it was possible [could] (to) be announced

Arvernīs de ejus adventu. Hâc re  
 to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitâ, Vercingetorix rursus reducit  
 having been known, Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercitum in Bituriges, atque inde profectus  
 army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos  
 to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico prælio, Cæsar collocaverat  
 conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuērat Æduis; instituit oppugnare.  
 there, and had assigned to the Ædui; he resolved to assault (it).

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem  
 This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consilium,<sup>10</sup> si contin-  
 to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan, if he should

eret legiones in ūno loco reliquam partem  
 keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,  
 of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficēret, quòd videretur  
 all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in ěo  
 no protection about to [could] be placed in him  
 amicis; sin educeret maturiùs ex  
 for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from  
 hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariâ,  
 winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,  
 subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare  
 transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better  
 tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quàm tantâ  
 however to endure all difficulties, than so great  
 contumeliâ acceptâ, alienare voluntates  
 an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will  
 omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos  
 of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædúi  
 de supportando comæatu præmittit ad Boios,  
 about transporting provisions he sends before to the Boii,  
 qui doceant de sũo adventu, que  
 (those) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and  
 hortentur ut maneant in fide, atque  
 he exhorts (them) that they remain in alliance, and  
 sustineant impetum hostium magno anĩmo.  
 resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].  
 Dũabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius  
 Two legions, and the baggage of the entire  
 exercitũs relictis, Agendici, proficiscitur  
 army having been left, at Agendicum [Sens], he marches  
 ad Boios.  
 to the Boii.

11. Quum altĕro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum  
 When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum

oppidum Senonum, ne relinquĕret quem  
 [Beauns] a town of the Senones, lest he might leave any  
 hostem post se, institũit oppugnare,  
 enemy behind him, he resolved to attack (it), (and)  
 quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariâ; que  
 what he might use more easily the grain supply, and  
 bidũo circumvallavit id, tertio die legatis  
 in two days he invested it, on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppīdo de deditione,  
having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,

jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,  
he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,

sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,  
six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,

legatum, qui conficeret ěa. Ipse  
(his) lieutenant, who should execute these things. He himself

proficiscitur, ut facĕret iter quam primùm  
sets out, that he may make the march as soon as possible

Cenabum Carnutum; qui, nunciō de  
to Cenabum of the Carnutes; who, the information of

oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primùm  
the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]

allato, comparabant præsidĭum causâ  
having been brought, were preparing a garrison for the purpose

tuendi Cenabi, quod mitterent eò quĕm  
of defending Cenabum, which they might send there as

existimarent ěam rem ire ductum  
they thought this affair was to be drawn out

longiùs. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris  
longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp

positis ante oppĭdum, exclusus  
having been placed before the town, (being) prevented

tempore diei, differt oppugnationem in  
by the time of day, he defers the attack to

postĕrum; imperat militibus quæque  
the next (day); he demands from the soldiers whatever

sint usũ ad ěam rem; et quòd pons  
may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge

flumĭnis Ligĕris continebat oppĭdum Cenabum;  
of the river Loire was joining the town (of) Cenabum;

verĭtus ne profugĕrent ex oppĭdo noctu,  
having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,

jubet dŭas legiones excubare in armis.  
he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.

Cenabenses egressi ex oppĭdo silentio  
The people of Cenabum having departed from the town in silence



paulò ante mediam noctem cœperunt transire  
 a little before mid night began to cross  
 flumen. Quâ re nunciatâ per  
 the river. Which [This] thing having been announced by  
 exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis  
 the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire  
 intromittit legiones, quas jussêrat esse  
 sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be  
 expeditas, atque potitur oppido (abl.); perpaucis<sup>11</sup>  
 ready, and seizes the town; very few  
 ex numëro hostium desideratis quin  
 from [of] the number of the enemy having escaped but that  
 cuncti caperentur, quòd angustia (pl.) pontis  
 the whole were taken, because the narrowness of the bridge  
 atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.  
 and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.  
 Diripit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam  
 He pillages and burns the town, he gives the booty  
 militibus; transducit exercitum Ligerim, atque  
 to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and  
 pervenit in fines Biturigium.  
 arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi cognovit de adventu  
 Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsar, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur  
 of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches  
 obviâm Cæsari. Ille instituêrat oppugnare  
 to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege  
 Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum  
 Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated  
 in viam. Ex quo<sup>12</sup> oppido quum legati  
 on the road. From which town when ambassadors  
 venissent ad eum oratum ut ignosceret sibi,  
 had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,  
 que consuleret suæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficêret  
 and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish  
 reliquas res celeritate, quâ pleraque  
 the remaining affairs with the speed, by which the most

ĕrat consecutus, jubet arma proferri  
had been effected, he orders the arms to be brought forth

equos produci, obsides dari. Parte  
the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part

obsĭdum jam transditâ, quum reli-  
of the hostages now having been surrendered, while the other

qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis  
things were being executed, the centurions and a few

militum intromissis, qui conquirerent  
of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect

arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium est  
the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy was

visus procul, qui antecesserat agmen  
seen at a distance, which had preceded the army

Vercingetorigis; quem<sup>13</sup> atque simul oppidani  
of Vercingetorigis; which as soon as the townsmen

conspexerunt, atque venerunt in spem auxiliĭ  
had seen, and had come to the hope of aid,

clamore sublato cœperunt capere arma,  
a shout having been raised they began to take arms,

claudere portas, complere murum. Centuriones  
to shut the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The Centurions

in oppĭdo, quum intellexissent ex significatione  
in the town, when they had understood from the signals

Gallorum aliquid novi consilĭi iniri ab  
of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plans was formed by

ĭis, gladĭis districtis occupaverunt  
them. their swords having been drawn they took possession of

portas, que receperunt omnes sũos incolũmes.  
the gates, and received all their (men) safe.

13. Cæsar jubet equitatum educi ex castris,  
Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp,

que committit equestre prœlium. Sũis jam  
and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now

laborantibus submittit circĭter quadringentos  
hard pressed he sends about four hundred

Germanos equĭtes, quos ab initĭo instit-  
German horsemen, whom from the beginning he had

uērat habere cum se. Galli potuerunt  
determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could

non sustinere eorum impētum; atque conjecti  
not sustain their attack, and having been thrown

in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis  
into flight, betook themselves to the army, many

amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani  
having been lost. Who [These] having been routed, the townsmen

rursus perterriti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos  
again alarmed, led out to Cæsar those

comprehensos quorum operâ existimabant  
(having been) arrested by whose means they were thinking

plebem concitatom, que dederunt sese  
(that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves

ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar  
to him. Which things having been accomplished, Cæsar

profectus est ad oppidum Avaricum, quod  
marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which

erat maximum que munitissimum in finibus  
was the largest and best fortified in the territories

Biturigum, atque fertillissimâ regione agri,  
of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country,

quòd èo oppido recepto, confidebat  
because this town having been taken, he was confident

se redacturum civitatem Biturigum  
(that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges

in potestatem.  
into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis  
Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-  
at Vellaundunum, Cenabum, (and) Noviodunum, having been

ceptis convocat suos ad concilium; docet  
received calls his (followers) to a council; he shows

"bellum gerendum esse longè aliâ  
(that) "the war to [must] be carried on with a far different

ratione, atque sit gestum antea, huic rei  
plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani  
it must be attended by all means, that the Romans

prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu :  
should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions: (that)

id esse facile, quòd ipsi abundent equitatu,  
this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,

et quòd sublevèntur tempore anni ;  
and because they are assisted by the season of the year ;

pabulum posse non secari ; hostes  
(that) forage could not (to) be cut ; (that) the enemy

dispersos necessariò petere ex ædificiis ;  
dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings :

omnes hos posse quotidie deleri ab  
(that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by

equitibus. Præterea causâ salutis commoda  
the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages

familiaris rei (sing.) negligenda ;  
of private affairs to [must] be disregarded : (that)

oportere vicos atque ædificia incen-  
to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be

di, hoc est, spatio à Boiâ quoquoversùs,  
burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,

quòd videantur posse adire causâ  
where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose

pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetere copiam  
of foraging. Of these things there is at hand an abundance

ipsis, quòd, in quorum finibus bellum  
for themselves, because, in whose territories war

geratur, eorum opibus sublevèntur ;  
may be waged, by their means they would be assisted ; (that)

Romanos aut non laturos<sup>14</sup> inopiam,  
the Romans either not to be about to [would not] bear privation,

aut progressuros longiùs à  
or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from

castris cum magno pericùlo ; neque inter-  
the camp with great danger ; nor to be [was it] any

esse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exũant  
difference, if they kill them or strip away

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit  
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterea, oportere  
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab  
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni pericūlo munitione et naturâ loci;  
all danger by fortifications and by the nature of the place;

neu sint suis receptacula ad  
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis  
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copiam comœatûs que prædam.  
for taking away an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc videantur gravia aut acerba, debere (inf.)  
If these (things) seemed severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multò gravius  
to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

libros conjuges abstrahi in  
their) children (and) wives to [should] be dragged into

servitatem, ipsos interfici; quæ  
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidere victis.  
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hæc sententiâ probatâ consensu  
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum  
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.  
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ  
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen  
although all were bearing with great grief, yet

proponabant sibi hoc solaci.  
they were placing before themselves this (as) a consolation,

confidebant quòd se, victoriâ prope  
they were trusting that they, the victory being nearly



exploratâ, celeriter recuperaturos amissa.  
 assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilio de Avarico,  
 It was deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi  
 (whether) it was pleasing, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt

an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt  
 or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fell

ad pedes omnibus Gallis,  
 at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (that)

ne cogerentur succendere suis  
 they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manibus pulcherrimam urbem propè totius Galliaë,  
 hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidio et ornamento civitati;  
 which was both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state:

dicunt se defensuros facile  
 they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturâ loci, quòd circumdata propè  
 by the nature of the place, because (it was) surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude; habèat  
 on all sides by the river and by a marsh; (that) it had

ũnum et perangustum aditum. Venia  
 one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primò dissuadente,  
 is given to those petitioning, Vercingetorix at first opposing,

post concedente et ipsorum precibus et  
 afterwards conceding both because of their entreaties and

misericiadiâ volgi. Idonei defensores  
 because of compassion to [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppido.  
 are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequitur Cæsarem minoribus  
 Vercingetorix follows near Cæsar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit locum castris munitum  
 marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus que silvis, longè ab Avarico quindécim  
 by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millia passūm. Ibi cognoscebat per certos  
 thousand paces There he was learning by faithful  
 exploratores in singūla tempōra (pl.) diēi quæ  
 scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things  
 agerentur (pl) ad Avaricum; et imperabat  
 were done at Avaricum and he was commanding  
 quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras  
 what he wished to be done: he watched all our  
 pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum  
 foragings and corn-raids and when  
 necessariō procedērent longiūs, adoriebatur  
 they had necessarily proceeded rather far, he was attacking  
 dispersos, que afficiebat magno incommodo  
 (them) dispersed and was inflicting great injury.  
 (dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris  
 although (this) was obviated by our (men)  
 quantum potērat provideri ratione, ut  
 as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight that  
 irētur (pass. sing.)<sup>15</sup> incertis temporibus que  
 they should go at uncertain times and  
 diversis itineribus.  
 by different routes

17. Castris positis ad ěam partem  
 The camp having been pitched at this part  
 oppidi, quæ intermissa à flumīne et  
 of the town, which having been left by the river and  
 palude, ut diximus supra, habebat angustum  
 marsh, as we have said above, was having a narrow  
 aditum, Cæsar cœpit apparare aggerem, agĕre  
 approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound, to move  
 vinĕas, constitūere dūas turres; nam  
 the shelters (and) to construct two towers, for  
 natura lōci prohibebat circumvallare.  
 the nature of the place was preventing to blockade [investment].

Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Ædūos de  
 He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about  
 frumentariâ re; altĕri quorum, quōd agebant  
 the corn supply, the latter of whom, because they acted

nullo studio, adjuvabant non multum; alteri non  
with no zeal, were assisting not much the others not

magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et  
with great means because the state was small and

infirmi, consumpserunt celeriter quod habuerunt.  
weak they consumed quickly what they had.

Exerçitu affecto summam difficultate  
The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentarie rei, tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentiâ  
of provisions, by the poverty of the Boii, by the negligence

Æduorum, incendiis ædificiorum, usque  
of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo<sup>16</sup> ut milites caruerint frumento  
to this [so] that the soldiers wanted corn (for)

complures dies, et pecore adacto è  
many days, and cattle having been driven from

longinquioribus vicis, sustentarent extremam  
the more distant villages, they satisfied the extreme

famem; tamen nulla vox audita est ab iis  
hunger; yet not a word was heard from them

indigna majestate Romani populi et  
unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victoriis. Quin etiam quum Cæsar  
former victories. Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singulas legiones in opere, et diceret  
addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent  
(that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

iopiam acerbius; universi petebant ab  
the want too severely; all to a man were begging from [of]

eo ne faceret id; "se sic  
him that he would not do this; "they themselves so

meruisse complures annos, illo imperante,  
to have [had] served very many years, he commanding,

ut acciperent nullam ignominiam nunquam  
that they should suffer no dishonor never

discederent, re infecta; se  
had they withdrawn, the thing (having been) unaccomplished; they

laturus hoc loco ignominia, si  
 about to [would] bear this (as) an occasion of dishonor, if  
 relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-  
 they should abandon the siege commenced, to be [it  
 stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quàm  
 was] preferable to endure all hardships than (that)  
 non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui  
 they should not avenge the Roman citizens, who  
 interissent perfidiâ Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc  
 had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These  
 eadem mandabant centurionibus que  
 same (things) they were consigning to the centurions and  
 tribunis, ut per eos deferrentur  
 tribunes, that through them they might be communicated  
 ad Cæsarem.  
 to Cæsar.

18. Quum turres jam appropinquassent muro,  
 When the towers had already approached the wall,  
 Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,  
 Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,  
 pabulo consumpto, movisse  
 the forage having been consumed, to have [had] moved (his)  
 castra propius Avaricum, atque ipsum, cum  
 camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he, with  
 equitatu que expeditis, qui consuissent  
 the cavalry and the light armed, who were accustomed  
 præliari inter equites, causâ insidiarum  
 to fight among the horsemen, for the purpose of ambushades  
 profectum eò, quò arbitrabatur  
 to have [had] marched thither, where he was thinking (that)  
 nostros venturos pabulum postero  
 our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following  
 die. Quibus rebus cognitis profectus  
 day. Which [These] things having been known having set out  
 silentio mediâ nocte pervēnit ad castra hostium  
 in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy  
 manè. Illi, adventu Cæsaris celeriter  
 early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdidērunt  
 having been learned through scouts, concealed

carros que sūa impedimenta in arctiores silvas,  
 the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,

instruxērunt omnes copias in edito  
 (and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated

atque aperto lōco. Quā re nūnciatā,  
 and open place. Which thing having been announced,

Cæsar celerīter jussit sarcinas conferri,  
 Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,

arma expediri.  
 (and) the arms to be got ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infīme.  
 There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficilis atque impedita palus cingebat hunc  
 A difficult and impassable swamp was surrounding this

ex ferè omnibus partibus, non latior  
 on nearly all sides, not wider than

quingenta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus  
 fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges

interruptis, Galli continebant se,  
 having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves,

fiducia loci; que distributi generatim  
 in confidence of the place, and, arranged in tribes

in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada  
 according to their states, they were holding all the shallow

ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic  
 and passes of this swamp by trusty gnards; thus

parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur  
 prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt

perrumpere eam paludem, premerent,  
 to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),

ex superiore lōco, hæsitantes; ut  
 from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that

qui viderent propinquitatem lōci,  
 those who should see the nearness of the position,

existimarent paratos ad dimicandum  
 would think (that) they were prepared for fighting



prope æquo Marte; qui perspicērent  
 almost on equal terms; (but) those who perceived  
 iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscērent  
 the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)  
 sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar  
 they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar  
 edocet milītes indignantes, quòd hostes  
 shows the soldiers indignant, because the enemy  
 possent ferre sūm conspectum, tantulo spatio  
 could endure their sight, so small a space  
 interjecto, et exposcentes signum  
 (having been) interposed, and earnestly demanding the signal  
 prælii, quanto detrimento, et morte  
 of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death  
 quot fortium virorum sit necesse  
 of how many brave men it would be necessary  
 constare victoriam; quos<sup>17</sup> quum vidēret sic  
 to assure the victory; whom since he saw so  
 paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum pericūlum  
 prepared in mind, that they refused no danger  
 pro sūâ laude, se debere condemnari summæ  
 for his glory, he ought to be condemned for the greatest  
 iniquitatis, nisi habēat eorum vitam cariorem  
 injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer  
 sūâ salute. Consolatus milītes sic,  
 than his safety Having consoled the soldiers thus,  
 reducit in castra eodem die; instituit  
 he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook  
 administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad  
 to perform the other things, which were belonging to  
 oppugnationem oppidi.  
 the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, quum redisset ad suos  
 Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus prodicionis, quòd movisset castra  
 was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp  
 propiūs Romanos, quòd discessisset cum omni  
 nearer to the Romans, because he had departed with all

equitatu; quòd relinquisset tantas copias sine  
the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without

imperio; quòd ejus discessu Romani venissent  
a command; because on his departure the Romans had come

tantâ opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia  
with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all

hæc potuisse non accidere fortuito, aut  
this could not (to) happen accidentally, or

sine consilio; illum malle<sup>18</sup> habere regnum  
without design; (that) he to prefer to have the sovereignty

Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quàm ipsorum  
of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their

beneficio. Accusatus tali modo, respondit  
favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied

ad hæc "Quod movisset castra, factum  
to these (things) "That he had moved the camp, it was done

inopiâ pabuli, ipsis etiam hortantibus, quòd  
by want of forage, they themselves even urging, that

accessisset propius Romanos, persuasum  
he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced

opportunitate loci, qui defenderet, se ipsum  
by the advantage of the place, which would protect, its own self

munitione; verò operam equitum  
by the defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen

debuisset (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri loco,  
ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,

et fuisse utilem illic, quòd  
and they to have been [were] useful there, where

profecti sint; se consultò discedentem  
they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing

tradidisse summam imperii nulli, ne  
to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest

is impelleretur ad dimicandum studio multi-  
he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the

tudinis; cui rei, videret omnes studere,  
multitude; to which thing, it seemed all to be [was] eager,

propter mollitiem<sup>19</sup> animi, quòd possent  
on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutiùs ferre laborem. Si Romani  
 no longer endure labor. If the Romans  
 intervenerint casu gratiam habendam  
 had come up by chance, that, thanks must be given  
 fortunæ, si vocati indicio alicujus, huic,<sup>20</sup>  
 to fortune, if invited by the information of any one to him,  
 quòd et potuērnt cognoscere eorum paucitatem  
 because they could both (to) perceive their small number  
 ex superiore loco, et despiciere  
 from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise  
 virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpiter  
 the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely  
 recepērint se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)  
 had betaken themselves into camp. He desires  
 nullum imperium à Cæsare per proditorem,  
 no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,  
 quòd posset habere victoriâ, quæ esset  
 because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was  
 jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin  
 now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but  
 etiam remittere ipsis, si videantur tribuere  
 even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer  
 honorem sibi magis, quàm accipere (inf.)  
 honor on him rather, than (that) they had received  
 salutem ab se." Inquit, "ut intelligatis  
 safety from himself." He said, "in order that you may know  
 hæc pronunciari since è à me, audite  
 these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear  
 Romanos milites." Producit servos quos  
 the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom  
 excepērat in pabulatione, paucis diebus antè,  
 he had captured in foraging, a few days before,  
 et excruciaverat et fame que vinculis.  
 and had tortured both by hunger and chains.  
 Hi edocti jam antè, quæ pronunciarent  
 They having been taught already before, what they should declare  
 interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,  
 (when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers

adductos fame et inopiâ  
(and) (having been) led by hunger and want

exisse clam ex castris si possent  
to have [had] gone out secretly from camp if they were able

reperire quid frumenti aut pecõris in  
[could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in

agris; omnem exercitum premi  
the fields; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed

simili inopiâ; nec vires cujusquam jam  
by a like want: nor (does) the strength of any one now

sufficere, nec posse ferre laborem  
(to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor

opëris. Itaque imperatorem statuisset, si  
of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if

profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppidi,  
he accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,

deducere exercitum triduo "Hæc beneficia,"  
to withdraw (his) army in three days "These benefits,"

inquit Vercingetorix, "habetis à me, quem  
said Vercingetorix, "you have from me. whom

insimulatis prodicionis, cujus opërâ videtis tantum  
you accuse of treason by whose means you see so great

victorem exercitum pænè consumptum fame,  
a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,

sine vestro sanguine; quem, turpiter recipientem  
without your blood, which, disgracefully betaking

se ex hâc fugâ, provisum est à me, ne  
itself on this flight, it had been provided by me, not

qua civitas recipiat suis finibus."  
any state shall receive in its territories."

21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat  
All the multitude shout and rattle

armis suo more, quod consueverunt  
with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed

facere in ão cujus orationem approbant,  
to do for him whose speech they were approving,

"Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec  
"Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest general, nor

dubitandum de ejus fide, nec  
must it be doubted concerning his faithfulness, nor

posse bellum administrari majore  
to be possible [could] the war (to) be carried on with greater

ratione." Statuunt ut decem millia hominum  
judgement." They decree that ten thousand men

delecta ex omnibus copiis submittantur in  
selected from all the forces should be sent into

oppidum; nec censent communem salutem  
the town; nor do they think the general safety

committendum Biturigibus solis, quod  
to [must] be committed to the Bituriges alone, because

intelligebant summam victoriæ  
they were understanding (that) the completeness of the victory

constare pænè in eo, si retinuissent  
would depend almost upon this, if they should hold

oppidum.  
the town.

22. Consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant  
The plans of every kind of the Gauls were opposing

singulari virtuti nostrorum militum, ut est (sing.)  
the uncommon bravery of our soldiers, as they are

genus summæ sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad  
a nation of the greatest ingenuity, and very apt for [at]

imitandi atque efficienda, quæ traduntur  
imitating and making (things), which are imparted

ab quoque. Nam avertebant falces laqueis,  
by any one. For they were turning the hooks with nooses,

quos<sup>21</sup> quum destinaverant, reducebant introrsus  
which when they had caught, they were hauling within

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,  
by engines, and they were undermining the mound by tunnels,

eò scientiùs, quod apud eos sunt magnæ  
the more skilfully, because among them are great

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum  
iron mines, and all kinds of tunnels are known

atque usitatum. Autem contabulaverant totum  
and employed. Moreover they had fortified the entire



murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant  
 wall on all parts with towers, and had covered

has coriis: tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis  
 these with hides: also in (their) frequent daily and nightly

eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,  
 sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,

aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et  
 or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work, and

adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,  
 they were equaling the height of our towers,

quantum agger quotidianus expresserat has,  
 as much as the mound daily raised them,

malis suarum turrium commissis; et  
 the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and

morabantur apertos cuniculos præustâ et  
 they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and

præacutâ materiâ, et fervefactâ pice, et saxis  
 very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones

maximi ponderis, que prohibebant  
 of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)

appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.  
 approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est ferè forma omnibus Gallicis  
 Moreover this is generally the form of all the Gallic

muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,  
 walls. Straight beams continuous in length,

binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter  
 two feet distant at equal intervals between

se<sup>22</sup> collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur  
 themselves are placed on the ground. These are made fast

introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.  
 within, and are covered with much mound-filling.

Autem ãa intervalla, quæ diximus  
 But those intervals, which we have mentioned.

effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis  
 are filled up in front with great stones. These

collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo  
 having been placed and united together, another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum  
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingant inter  
may be observed, nor the beams may touch among

se,<sup>23</sup> sed intermissæ paribus spatiis, singulæ  
themselves, but are separated by equal spaces, each

contineantur (pl.) artè singulis interjectis saxis:  
kept in place closely by the several interposed stones

sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum  
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Quum hoc  
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only this

opus est non deforme in speciem que varietatem  
work is not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos  
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,  
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam, opportunitatem,  
and defence of cities great advantage,

quòd et lapis defendit ab incendio, et  
because both the stone protects from fire, and

materia ab ariete, quæ  
the wood-work from the battering-ram, which (having been)

revincta introrsùs trabibus plerumque perpetuis  
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,  
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.  
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impeditâ tot iis  
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, quum milites tardarentur tōto  
[such] things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduis imbribus, tamen  
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,  
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem  
 and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound  
 trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta  
 three hundred and twenty feet wide, (and) eighty  
 pedes altum. Quum is pænè contingeret  
 feet high. When this (mound) had nearly touched  
 murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus  
 the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work  
 consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, quod ne  
 by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that no  
 tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paulo  
 time at all should be lost from the work a little  
 ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum  
 before the third watch, it was observed (that)  
 aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succenderant  
 the mound (to) smoked, which the enemy had fired  
 cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato  
 by a mine; and at the same time a shout having been raised  
 toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab  
 on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on  
 utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant  
 each side of the towers. Some from a distance were throwing  
 faces atque aridam materiem de muro in  
 torches and dry material from the wall on  
 aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,  
 the mound, others were pouring pitch and other things,  
 quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset  
 by which the fire might be encouraged, so that a plan could  
 vix iniri, quò primum occurreretur,<sup>24</sup> aut  
 scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or  
 cui rei auxilium ferretur;  
 to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;  
 tamen quòd, instituto Cæsar, duæ legiones  
 however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions  
 semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis  
 always were watching before the camp, and many at allotted  
 temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut  
 times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducèrent  
 some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back  
 turres que interscindèrent aggerem; verò  
 the towers and cut off the mound, and indeed  
 omnis multitudo concurrent ex castris ad  
 (that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to  
 restinguendum.  
 extinguish (the fire).

25. Quum pugnaretur<sup>25</sup> in omnibus locis,  
 When it was fought in all places,  
 reliquâ parte noctis jam consumptâ, que  
 the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and  
 spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus(dat.),  
 the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,  
 magis eò quòd videbant pluteos turrium  
 the more so because they were seeing the coverings of the towers  
 deustos, animadvertabant apertos nec  
 burnt off, (and) were observing (that we) unprotected not  
 facilè adire ad auxiliandum, que ipsi  
 easily to go [approached] for aiding, and they  
 recentes semper succedèrent defessis (dat.),  
 fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,  
 que arbitrentur omnem salutem Galliæ  
 and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul  
 positam<sup>26</sup> in illo vestigio temporis, accidit  
 (was) placed in that instant of time, there happened  
 nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum  
 to us observing (that) which seemed (to be) worthy  
 memoriâ existimavimus non prætermittendum.  
 (of) memory we have thought to [it must] not be passed over.

Quidam Gallum ante portam oppidi, qui è  
 A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from  
 regione turris projiciebat glebas sevi ac  
 the locality of the tower was throwing lumps of tallow and  
 picis in ignem, transditas per manus (pl.);  
 pitch into the fire, passed along by hand,

transjectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que  
 having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus concidit; unus ex proximis  
struck lifeless fell, one from [of] the nearest

transgressus hunc jacentem fungebatur illo  
having stepped over him lying prostrate, was discharging that

eodem manere; eâdem ratione altero exani-  
same duty; in the same manner the other having been

mate ictu scorpionis, tertius successit,  
killed by a stroke of the cross-bow, a third succeeded,

et quartus tertio; nec ille locus relictus est  
and a fourth to the third; nor that place was left

vacuus à propugnatoribus, priùs quàm aggere  
vacant by the defenders, before (that) the mound

restincto atque hostibus submotis  
(having been) extinguished and the enemy having been repulsed

omni parte, finis factus est pugnandi.  
on every side, an end was made of the fighting.

26. Galli experti omnia, quod nulla res  
The Gauls having tried all things, because no thing

successerat, postero die ceperunt consilium profugere  
had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee

ex oppido, Vercingetorige hortante et jubente.  
from the town, Vercingetorix advising and commanding.

Sperabant, conati id silentio noctis  
They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese effecturos non magnâ  
(that) they about to [would] accomplish (it) with no great

jacturâ suorum, propterea quòd castra  
loss of their (men), because (that) the camp

Vercingetorigis aberant neque longè ab oppido,  
of Vercingetorix was distant not far from the town,

et perpetua palus, quæ intercedebat, tardabat<sup>27</sup>  
and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos ad insequendum. Que jam  
the Romans for [in] following. And already

apparabant facere hoc noctu, quum matres  
they were preparing to do this by night, when the mothers

familias repentè procurrerunt in publicum,  
of families [matrons] suddenly ran out into public,



que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum  
 and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their  
 petierunt omnibus precibus, ne  
 (husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not  
 dederent se et communes liberos hostibus  
 give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy  
 ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas  
 for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness  
 virium (pl.) impediret ad capiendam fugam.  
 of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.  
 Ubi viderunt eos perstare (inf.) in  
 When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)  
 sententiâ, quòd plerumque in summo periculo  
 design, because generally in the greatest danger  
 timor recipit non misericordiam, cæperunt conclamare,  
 fear admits not mercy, they began to cry out,  
 et significare de fugâ Romanis;  
 and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans,  
 quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viæ  
 by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the roads  
 præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt  
 should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted  
 consilio.  
 from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postëro die turri pro-  
 Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been  
 motâ, que operibus directis, quæ  
 moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which  
 instituërat facëre, magno imbri coorto,  
 he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,  
 arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilem ad  
 thought this time not unsuited for  
 capiendum consilium, quòd videbat custodias  
 carrying out the plan, because he was seeing the guards  
 in muro dispositas paulò incautiùs; que  
 on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and  
 jussit suos versari in opere langui-  
 he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather

diùs, et ostendit quid vellet fieri.  
sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done.

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto  
Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando perciperent fructum  
within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia  
of victory for such great labors, he offers rewards

his, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit  
to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subito evolaverunt ex  
the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complerunt murum.  
all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novâ re,  
The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,  
[action], (having been) driven from the wall and towers,

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus  
they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

locis, hâc animo, ut si ex quâ parte venire-  
places, with this idea, that if on any side (any one) should

tur<sup>28</sup> contra obviam depugnarent acie  
come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructâ. Ubi viderunt neminem demittere  
drawn up. When they saw (that) no one lowered

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-  
himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, veriti ne omnino  
spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis  
the hope of flight might be taken away, (their) arms

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes  
having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ibi pars,  
of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

quum ipsi premerent se angusto exitu  
as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est à militibus, pars  
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers, (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec  
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studeret prædæ.  
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,  
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore opëris perpecerunt non  
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.  
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni ðo numero, qui fuit circiter  
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo  
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex  
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;  
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multâ, excepit  
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

sic ex fugâ silentio (veritus ne qua seditio  
thus from the flight in silence (having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et  
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericiðiâ volgi) ut suis familiaribus, que  
from the compassion of the throng) that his friends, and

principibus civitatum, dispositis procul  
the chiefs of the states, having been located at a distance

in viâ curaret disparandos que  
on the road he took care (that) they should be seperated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ<sup>29</sup> pars castris  
be conducted to their (own people). which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.  
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,  
On the following day a council having been called,

consolatus que cohortatus est "ne  
 he consoled and exhorted, "they should not be

admodum demitterent se animo, neve perturbarentur  
 too much cast down in mind, nor troubled

incommodo: Romanos non vicisse virtute  
 by (their) loss; (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery

neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et  
 nor in a battle-line, but by a certain skill and

scientiâ oppugnationis, cujus rei ipsi fuerint  
 by the science of siege, of which thing they were

imperiti; errare, si qui expectent in bello  
 unskilled; (those) err, if they expect in war

omnes eventus rerum secundos; nunquam  
 all results of affairs (to be) prosperous; never

placuisse sibi Avaricum defendi,  
 had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,

ejus rei haberet ipsos testes; sed  
 of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but

factum imprudentiâ Biturigum et  
 to have been (it was) done by the imprudence of the Bituriges and

niminâ obsequentiâ reliquorum, uti hoc  
 by the too great complianee of the rest, that this

incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum  
 disaster was received; however he would remedy

id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates  
 this quickly by greater advantages For the states

quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, has suâ  
 which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his

diligentiâ adjuncturum, atque unum consilium totius  
 exertion would be united, and one counsel of all

Galliæ effecturum, cujus consenui (dat.) orbis  
 Gaul would be effected. whose union the whole

terrarum quidem possit ne obsistere;  
 world indeed would be able [could] not (to) oppose,

que se habere prope jam effectum id.  
 and he to have [had] nearly already effected this.

Interëa esse æquum impet-  
 In the mean time to be [it was] just (that) to [it should]

rari ab iis causâ communis salutis,  
 be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,  
 ut instituèrent munire castra, quo  
 that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that  
 possent faciliùs sustinere  
 they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist  
 repentinos impetus hostium.”  
 the sudden attacks of the enemy.”

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quòd  
 This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because  
 ipse non defecerat animo, tanto incommodo  
 he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss  
 accepto, neque abdidērat se in occultum,  
 having been received, neither had he hid himself in secret,  
 neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis: que  
 nor fled the sight of the multitude: and  
 existimabatur providere et præsentire, plus  
 he was thought to foresee and to forecast, more  
 animo quòd, re integrâ, con-  
 in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he had  
 suērat primo Avaricum incendendum,  
 decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt,  
 pòst deserendum. Itaque ut adversæ  
 afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse  
 res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;  
 affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;  
 sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo  
 so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss  
 accepto, augebatur in dies:  
 having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day  
 simul vinebant in, spem, ejus  
 at the same time they were coming into, the hope of his  
 affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que  
 assertion, of uniting the other states, and  
 primùm Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire  
 first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify  
 castra; et sic homines insueti laboris  
 their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor



confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia  
 were encouraged in mind that they sought (that) all  
 quæ imperarentur patiēda sibi.  
 (things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minùs animo  
 Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind  
 quam pollicitus est, ut adjungeret reliquas  
 than he had promised, that he might attach the other  
 civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis  
 states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents  
 que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoneos homines  
 and promises He selected suitable men  
 huic rei, aut subdolâ oratione aut amicitia  
 for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship  
 quorum quisque posset facillime capi.  
 of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugerant Avarico expugnato,  
 Those who had escaped, Avaricum having been stormed,  
 curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul  
 he takes care should be armed and clothed At the same time  
 ut diminutæ copiæ redintegrarentur, imperat  
 that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders  
 certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et  
 a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and  
 ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;  
 before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;  
 que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat  
 and he orders all the archers, of whom there was  
 permagnus numerus in Galliâ, conquiri, et mitti  
 a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent  
 ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat  
 to him. By these means, this which he had lost

Avarici celeriter expletur Interim  
 at Avaricum was speedily replaced In the mean time  
 Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,  
 Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,  
 cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,  
 whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervenit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,  
 came to him, with a great number of his cavalry,  
 et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniâ.  
 and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avarici,  
 Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,  
 que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et  
 and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and  
 reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore  
 of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor  
 atque inopiâ. Hieme jam prope confectâ,  
 and want. The winter having been now nearly ended,  
 quum tempore ipso anni vacaretur ad  
 when by the season itself of the year he was at leisure for  
 gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci  
 carrying on war, and he had determined to march  
 ad hostem, sive elicere eum ex paludibus  
 against the enemy. either to entice him from the marshes  
 que silvis, sive posset premere obsidione,  
 and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,  
 legati principes Æduorum veniunt ad eum  
 ambassadors chiefs of the Ædui come to him  
 oratum ut maxime necessario tempore  
 to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time  
 subveniat civitati; "rem esse in summo  
 he should assist the state, "their affairs to be [are] in extreme  
 periculo; quòd quum singuli magistratus cre-  
 danger; that whereas single magistrates had been  
 ari antiquitùs, atque consuèssent obtinere  
 appointed of old, and were accustomed to possess  
 regiam potestatem annum; duo gerant magistratum,  
 a kingly power for one year, two hold the magistracy,  
 et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse  
 and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed  
 legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictotivam  
 by the laws. Of these the one was Convictotivus  
 florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum  
 a distinguished and illustrious young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimâ familiâ, atque ipsum hominem  
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiæ, et magnæ cognationis, cujus  
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum  
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis;  
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas  
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas<sup>30</sup> cujusque eorum: quod si controversia  
partisans of each of them: that if the dispute

alatur diutiùs, fõre uti pars civitatis  
is formented longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat  
would collide with a part; (that) this may not happen

positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.  
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum  
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

descedere à bello atque hoste; tamen non  
to depart from the war and the enemy; yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuëssent oriri  
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus; ne tanta civitas et tam  
from dissensions; lest so great a state and so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper  
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornâssent omnibus rebus, descendëret  
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma; atque ãa pars quæ  
to violence and to arms, and this part which

confidëret minùs sibi accerseret auxilia à  
might confide least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige; existimavit huic rēi præ-  
Vercingetorige; he thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quòd legibus Æduorum,  
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædui,

iis qui obtinērent summum magistratum  
 to these who possessed the chief magistracy  
 non liceret excedere ex finibus; ne  
 it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest  
 videretur deminuisse quid de eorum  
 he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their  
 jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in  
 authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to  
 Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et  
 the Ædui, and he summoned all the senate, and (those)  
 intra quos controversia esset, ad se  
 among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him  
 Decetiam. Quum propè omnis civitas  
 at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state  
 convenisset eò, que doceretur fratrem  
 had assembled there. and he was informed (that) a brother  
 renunciatum à fratre, paucis clàm vocatis,  
 had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,  
 alio lōco, alio tempore, atque  
 in another place, (and) at another time, than  
 oportuērit; quum leges non solùm vetarent  
 was proper, when the laws not only were forbidding  
 duos ex unâ familiâ, utroque vivo, creari  
 two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen  
 magistratus, sed etiam prohibērent esse in  
 magistrates, but also were forbidding (them) to be in  
 senatu: coëgit Cotum deponere magistratum;  
 the senate, he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy  
 jussit Convictolitavem, qui esset creatus per  
 he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through  
 sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus  
 the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy  
 intermissis, obtinere potestatem.  
 having lapsed. to hold the power [office].

34. Hôc decreto interposito, cohortatus  
 This decree having been delivered, he exhorted

Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum  
 the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies

ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-  
and dissensions, and all things having been

sis, servirent huic bello, que expectarent  
laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect

œa præmia, quæ meruissent, ab se, Galliâ  
those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul

devictâ, que mitterent omnem  
having been conquered, and (that) they should send all

equitatum, et decem millia peditum celeriter  
the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily

sibi, quæ disponeret in præsidiis causâ  
to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake

rêi frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas  
of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two

partes; dedit quatuor legiones Labieno ducendas  
parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led

in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in  
into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into

Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen  
the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river

Elaver: attribuit partem equitatûs illi,  
Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)

reliquit partem sibi. Quâ re cognitâ,  
he left a part for himself. Which thing having been known,

Vercingetorix, omnibus potibus ejus fluminis  
Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river

interruptis, cœpit facere iter ab  
having been demolished, began to make his march on

alterâ parte fluminis.  
the other side of the river.

35. Quum uterque exercitus exisset in conspectu  
When each army led out in view

que utrimque ponebant castra ferè è  
and on each side they were pitching a camp almost over

regione castris. Exploratoribus dispositis,  
against a camp. Scouts having been stationed,

necubi Romani, transducerent copias,  
(so) that in no place the Romans, could lead across the forces



ponte effecto; res erat  
a bridge having been built; (this) thing [condition] was

Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-  
to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should

iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,  
be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,

quòd Elaver soleat non transiri vado  
because the Allier is wont not to be crossed by fording

ferè ante autumnum. Itaque ne id  
(till) nearly before autumn. Therefore lest this

accidèret, castris positis silvestri lōco  
might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place

è regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-  
opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-

getorix curaverat rescindendos, postëro die  
getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day

restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;  
he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;

misit, ut consuevèrat reliquas copias  
he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces

cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis  
with all the baggage, each fourth

cohortibus demptis, uti numërus legionum  
cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions

videretur constare. His jussis progredi  
should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance

quàm longissimè possent, quum jam ex  
as far (as) they could, when at last from

tempore diei caperet conjecturam per-  
the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they

ventum in castra, cœpit reficere pontem  
had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge

iisdem publicis inferior pars quarum remanebat  
on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining

integra. Opère celeriter effecto, que  
entire. The work quickly having been completed and

legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco  
the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.  
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vereingetorix, re cognitâ, ne  
Vereingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,  
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus  
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervenit Gergoviam, ex ão lãco,  
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prælio  
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto ão die, situ urbis  
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in  
having been reconnoitred, which (having been) placed on

altissimo monte, habebat omnes aditus  
a very high mountain, was having all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit  
difficult, he despaired of an assault, he determined

non agendum<sup>31</sup> de obsessione  
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

præius quàm expedisset rem frumentariam. At  
before (that) he had secured a gram supply. But

Vereingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,  
Vereingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum  
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus  
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis; atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi  
intervals, and all the hills of this range

occupatis quâ poterat despici,  
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem: que jubebat  
he was presenting a formidable appearance, and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat  
the chiefs of these states whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad  
 for himself for taking counsel, to come to  
 se quotidie primâ luce seu quid  
 him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything  
 videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-  
 might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be  
 trandum; neque intermittebat ferè ullum diem,  
 performed; nor was he omitting scarcely any day,  
 quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis  
 but that he was trying what (of) spirit and (of) courage  
 esset in quoque suorum equestri prælio,  
 might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,  
 sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis è  
 the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill  
 regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis  
 opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain  
 egregiè munitus, atque circumcisus ex omni parte  
 excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side  
 (quem si nostri tenerent, videbantur  
 (which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)  
 prohibitori hostes et<sup>32</sup> ex magnâ parte  
 to prevent the enemy both in great part (from)  
 aquæ (gen.), et liberâ pabulatione); sed is  
 water, and from free foraging); but this  
 lœcus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis  
 place was held by them with a garrison not very  
 firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris  
 strong, however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp  
 silento noctis, priùs quàm subsidium posset  
 in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could  
 venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,  
 come from the town. the garrison having been dislodged,  
 potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,  
 having seized the place. he stationed two legions there,  
 que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenûm pedum  
 and led a double trench (of) twelve feet  
 à majoribus castris ad minora, ut  
 (wide) from the greater camp to the lesser. (so) that

etiã singuli                      posset commeare      tutò      ab  
 even      a single (soldier)      could                      pass                      safely      from [on]

repentino incursu      hostium.  
 the sudden      attack      of the enemy

37. Dum                      hæc                      geruntur      ad      Gergoviam,  
       While                      these things                      are passing                      at                      Gergovia,

Convictolitis,      Æduus,                      cui                      demonstravimus  
       Convictolitis,                      the Æduan,                      to whom                      we have shown

magistratum abjudicatum      à      Cæsare      sollicitatus  
 the magistracy      was adjudged      by      Cæsar      having been solicited

pecuniã      ab      Arvernīs      colloquitur      cum      quibusdam  
 with money      by      the Arverni                      confers                      with                      certain

adolescentibus quorum Litavicus erat princeps, atque  
       young men                      of whom      Litavicus      was                      the chief, and

ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimã familiã,  
       his brothers,                      young men      born of most illustrious      family,

communicat præmium cum his, que hortatur eos  
       he shares                      the money      with      them, and      exhorts      them

ut      meminerint                      se                      liberos, et natos  
 that      they should remember (that) they (were)      free,                      and      born

imperio:      "esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ  
 for empire;      "it was      alone                      the state                      of the Ædui                      which

distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas  
       retards                      the most certain                      victory                      of the Gauls,                      the rest

contineri ejus auctoritate, quã                      trans-  
 were restrained      by its                      authority                      which      having been brought

ductã, non fõre lõcum Romanis consistendi  
 over      there      would not be      a place      for the Romans                      to stand on

in Galliã, se esse affectum nonnullo beneficio  
 in      Gaul,      he      was      affected      by a considerable                      benefit

Cæsaris tamen sic ut obtinerit justissimam  
 of Cæsar      however      so      that      he had obtained                      a most just

causam apud ẽum; sed                      tribuere (inf.) plus  
       cause      through      him,      but      (he)      assigns                      more

communi libertati.      Enim cur Ædui  
 to (their) common      liberty                      For      why      should the Ædui

veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure  
       come      to      Cæsar                      as arbiter                      about                      their      rights

et de legibus potiùs quàm Romani ad  
 and about their laws rather than the Romans to  
 Æduos?" Adolescentibus deductis  
 the Ædui?" The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratûs, et præmio,  
 speedily, both by the speech of the magistrate, and the bribe,

quum profiterentur, se vel fore principes  
 when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebat,ur,  
 of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,

quòd confidebant civitatem non posse  
 because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temerè ad suscipiendum bellum.  
 induced rashly for [to] undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis  
 it was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed to those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,  
 ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curarat ducenda Æa, que ejus  
 and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurrent ad Cæsarem; constituunt  
 brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar, they determine

quâ ratione placeat agi reliqua.  
 in what manner it may be well to perform the rest.

38. Litavicus, exercitu, accepto quum  
 Litavicus, the army, having been received when

abesset circiter triginta millia passuum ab  
 he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergoviâ, subito convocatis militibus,  
 Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrymans inquit, "Quo milites proficiscimur?"  
 weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?"

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit.  
 all our knights, all the nobility have perished,

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis  
 Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati proditionis interfecti sunt ab  
 having been accused of treason have been killed by



Romanis causâ indictâ. Cognoscite hæc  
 the Romans the case not having been called. Know this  
 ab iis, qui fugerunt ex ipsâ cæde. Nam  
 from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For  
 ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis  
 I (my) brothers and all my relations  
 interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ  
 having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what  
 gesta sunt." Ii producuntur, quos ille edocuerat,  
 has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught  
 quæ vellet dici, atque eadem, quæ Litavicus  
 what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus  
 pronunciaverat, exponunt multitudini: "omnes  
 had announced, they explain to the multitude: "all  
 equites Æduorum interfectos, quod dicerentur  
 the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said  
 collocti cum Arvernibus; ipsos occultasse se  
 to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves  
 inter multitudinem militum, atque profugisse ex  
 among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from  
 mediâ cæde." Ædui exclamant, et  
 the midst (of the) massacre." The Ædui exclaim, and  
 obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,  
 conjure Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,  
 "Quasi verò," inquit ille, "res sit  
 "As if indeed," said he, "the thing were (a matter)  
 consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendere  
 of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten  
 Gergoviam et conjungere nosmet cum Arvernibus?  
 to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?  
 An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinore  
 Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime  
 admissis, Romani jam concurrant ad  
 having been committed, the Romans now gather for  
 interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi  
 slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit  
 in nobis persequamur eorum mortem, qui  
 in us let us follow [avenge] their death, who

interierunt indignissimè, atque interficiamus hos  
 have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these

latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui erant  
 robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were

unà fiduciâ ejus præsidii. Continuò diripit  
 with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes

magnum numërum frumenti que commeatus;  
 a great quantity of corn and provisions;

interficit ipsos crudeliter excruciatos;  
 he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);

dimittit nuncios totâ civitate Æduorum; permovet  
 he sends messengers in all the state of the Ædui, he excites

(them) with the same mendacio de cæde  
 falsehood about the massacre

equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili  
 of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like

ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas  
 manner, as he had done, they should avenge their

injurias.  
 injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo lōco,  
 Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,

et summæ potentiæ domi, et unà Viridomarus,  
 and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,

pari ætate et gratiâ, sed dispari genëre,  
 of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage,

quem Cæsar perduxerat ad summam dignitatem  
 whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity

ex humili lōco, traditum sibi  
 from an humble station, he having been recommended to him

ab Divitiaco, convenërant in numëro equitum,  
 by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen,

evocati nominatim ab eo. Erat  
 (having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was

contentio his inter se de  
 a contest (with) these (two) among themselves concerning

principatu; et in illâ controversiâ magistratum  
 rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates

alter pugnauerat pro Convictolitae alter pro  
 the one had contended for Convictrolitais the other for

Coto summis opibus. Ex his Eporedorix,  
 Cotus with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,

consilio Litavici cognito defert rem  
 the designs of Litavicus having been learned announced the thing

ad Cæsarem ferè mediâ nocte; orat  
 to Cæsar about mid night; he begs (that)

ne patiatur civitatem pravis consiliis  
 he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels

adolescentium deficere ab amicitia Romani  
 of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman

populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia  
 people, which he foresaw would be, if so many thousands

hominum conjunxerint se cum hostibus,  
 of men should have united themselves with the enemy,

quorum salutem neque propinqui  
 whose safety neither (their) relations (could)

negligere neque posset civitas aestimare levi  
 neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight

momento.  
 importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magna sollicitudine  
 Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety

hoc nuncio, quod semper præcipuè  
 by this intelligence, because he had always particularly

indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullâ debitatione  
 favored the state of the Ædui, no delay

interpositâ, educit ex castris quatuor  
 having been interposed, led forth from the camp four

expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec  
 light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor

fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda  
 was there an interval at such a time for contracting

castra, quòd res videbatur posita  
 the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]

in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum  
 on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

cum duabus legionibus præsidio castris ;  
with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp ;

quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendi,  
when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,

reperit profugisse paulo antè ad hostes.  
he finds (that) they had fled a little before to the enemy.

Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur  
Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled

labore itinèris necessario tempore, omnibus  
by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all

(being) cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque  
most eager, having proceeded twenty five

millia passum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,  
thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui,

equitatu immisso, moratur atque  
the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and

impedit eorum iter; que interdicit omnibus,  
impedes their march; and he forbade all,

ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem  
that they should not kill any one. He orders Eporedorix

et Viridomarus, quos ille existimabant interfectos,  
and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,

versari inter equites, que appellare suos.  
to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their

Iis cognitis, et fraude  
(countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud

Litavici perspectâ, Ædui incipiunt  
of Litavicus having been perceived, the Ædui began

tendere manus et significare deditionem, et  
to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and

projectis armis deprecari mortem.  
having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.

Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,  
Litavicus fled to Gergovia, with his clients,

quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserere  
with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert

patronos, etiam in extremâ fortunâ.  
(their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nunciis missis ad civitatem  
Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state

Æduorum, qui docerent conservatos suo  
of the Ædui, who should show (that they) had been saved by his

beneficio, quos potuisset interficere jure belli,  
favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,

que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui  
and three hours of the night having been given to the army

ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.  
for rest, he moves the camp toward Gergovia.

Ferè medio itinere equites, missi à Fabio,  
About the middle (of the) march horsemen sent by Fabius,

exponunt in quanto periculo res fuerit;  
reveal in how great danger the affair shall have been

demonstrant castra oppugnata summis  
[was]; they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great

copiis, quum integri crebrò succederunt  
forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded

defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo  
the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual

labore, quibus (dat.)<sup>33</sup> propter magnitudinem  
labor, by whom on account of the size

castrorum perpetuò permanendum esset  
of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]

vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos  
on the rampart (by) the same. (that) many were wounded

multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis generis  
by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind

telorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta  
of weapons, for resisting these the hurling engines

fuisse magno usui; Fabium eorum dicesu,  
were (of) great use, (that) Fabius on their departure,

duabus portis relictis obstruere  
two gates having been left (open) was blocking up

cæteras, que addere pluteos vallo, et se  
the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he

parare ad similem casum in posterum diem.  
was preparing for a like fate on the next day.



Iis rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervenit in  
 These things having been learned. Cæsar arrived at  
 castra ante ortum solis summo studio  
 the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion  
 militum.  
 of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,  
 While these things are going on at Gergovia,

Ædúi, primis nunciis a Litavico accep-  
 the Ædúi, the first messages from Litavicus having been  
 tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad  
 received, leave to themselves no time for  
 cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia  
 ascertaining. Avarice impels some, passion  
 et temeritas alios, quæ est maximè innata  
 and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural  
 illi genëri hominum, ut habëant levem  
 to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight  
 auditionem pro re compertâ. Deripiunt bona  
 hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods  
 Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-  
 of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)  
 hunt in servitutum. Convictolitavis adjuvat  
 away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances  
 proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad  
 the ruined condition, and drives the people to  
 furorem, ut facinõre admisso  
 madness, that an enormity having been committed,  
 pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.  
 it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.  
 Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium  
 They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristium  
 tribunum militum facientem iter ad  
 a tribute of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)  
 legionem, fide datâ; cogunt ños  
 legion, a pledge having been given; they force those  
 facëre idem, qui constiterant ibi causâ  
 to do the same, who had sojourned there for the purpose

negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos in  
of trading. Having continually attacked these on (their)

itinēre, exuunt omnibus impedimentis;  
journey, they strip (them) of all (their) baggage;

obsident repugnantes diem que noctes (pl.);  
they besiege (those) opposing day and night.

multos utrimque interfectis, concitant majorem  
many on both sides having been slain they summon a greater

multitudinem ad arma.  
multitude to arms.

43. Intērim nuntiis allatis, omnes  
Meantime news having been brought, (that) all

eorum milites teneri in potestate Cæsaris,  
of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,

concurrunt ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil  
they gather to Aristium. they show (that) nothing

factum publico consilio; decernunt quæstionem  
(was) done by public design; they decree an investigation

de bonis direptis; publicant bona  
concerning the goods plundered, they confiscate the goods

Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad  
of Litavicus and (his) brothers, they send ambassadors to

Cæsarem gratiâ purgandi sui. Hæc,  
Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,

faciunt gratiâ recuperandorum suorum;  
they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);

sed contaminati facinore et capti compendio  
but implicated in the crime and taken by the income

ex direptis bonis, quod hæc res pertinebat  
from the plundered goods, because this matter was relating

ad multos et exterriti timore pœnæ,  
to many and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,

incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello  
they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war

que sollicitant legationibus reliquas civitates.  
and incite with embassies the remaining states.

Quæ<sup>34</sup> tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam  
Which things although Cæsar was knowing, yet 34

mitissime potuit appellat legatos "Nihil  
 mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors "In no wise  
 se judicare graviùs de civitate propter  
 he judges more severely concerning the state on account of  
 inscientiam que levitatem volgi, neque  
 the ignorance and fickleness of the common people. nor  
 deminuere de sua benevolentia in Æduos."  
 does he abate from his good will toward the Ædui."

Ipse expectans majorem motum Galliæ,  
 He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,  
 ne circumsteteretur ab omnibus civitatibus,  
 lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discederet à  
 was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviâ ac rursus contraheret omnem  
 Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata à timore  
 army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugæ.  
 of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44. Facultas gerendæ rei bene visa est  
 An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidere cogitanti hæc. Nam quum  
 to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causâ perspicendi  
 he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur  
 the work. he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus  
 by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni præ multitudine.  
 days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus quærit causam ex perfugis, quorum  
 Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numerus quotidie confluebat ad eum.  
 a great number daily were pouring in, to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Cæsar ipse  
 It was agreed by all, which [as] Cæsar himself

cognovĕrat jam per exploratores, dorsum  
 had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back  
 ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre  
 [summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody  
 et angustum, quâ esset aditus ad altĕram  
 and narrow where was a passage to the other  
 partem oppidi, illos timere vehementer  
 part of the town, (that) they feared exceedingly  
 huic lōco; viderentur jam sentire nec alĭter,  
 for this place, they appeared now to feel not otherwise,  
 uno colle occupato ab Romanis, si  
 one hill having been occupied by the Romans, if  
 amisissent altĕrum, quin circumvallati  
 they should lose the other, (but) that they would be surrounded  
 pæne, atque interclusi omni exitu et pabulatione;  
 nearly, and cut off from all egress and foraging;  
 omnes evocatos à Vercingetorige ad muniendum  
 all were called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying  
 hunc lōcum.  
 this place.

45. Hac re cognitâ, Cæsar mittit  
 This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends  
 complures turmas equitum ĕd de mediâ  
 several troops of horsemen thither at mid  
 nocte; imperat ĭis, ut pervagentur  
 night, he commands them, that they should range about  
 in omnibus lōcis paulò tumultuosius. Primâ  
 in all places somewhat more tumultuously [noisily] At the first  
 luce jubet magnum numĕrum  
 light [early dawn] he orders a great quantity  
 impedimentorum produci ex castris, que  
 of baggage to be brought forth from the camp, and  
 mulorum, que stramenta detrahi ĭis, que  
 of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and  
 muliones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus  
 the muleteers with helmets to go round the hills  
 specie ac simulatione equitum. His  
 in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latiùs  
 he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely  
 causâ ostentationis. Jubet omnes  
 for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all  
 petere easdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc  
 to seek the same places by a long circuit. These  
 videbatur procul ex oppido, ut erat  
 things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was  
 despectus à Gergoviâ in castra; neque, tanto  
 a view from Gergovia into the camp, nor, at such  
 spatio, poterat explorari quid certi  
 a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty  
 esset. Mittit unam legionem eodem jugo, et  
 it might be. He sends one legion on the same hill, and  
 constituit progressam paulum, inferiore  
 he stations (it) (having been) advanced a little in a lower  
 loco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio  
 place, and hides (it) in the woods The suspicion (of)  
 Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiæ munitionum  
 the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications  
 transducuntur illò. Cæsar conspicatus  
 are brought over thither Cæsar having perceived (that)  
 castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum  
 the camp of the enemy was deserted. the insignias of his  
 tectis, que militaribus signis  
 (men) having been covered, and the military ensigns  
 occultatis, transducit milites ex  
 having been concealed, he leads out (his) soldiers from  
 majoribus castris in minora raras, ne animad-  
 the larger camp into the smaller in squads, lest they should  
 verterentur ex oppido; que ostendit  
 be observed from the town, and he shows [explains]  
 legatis, quos præfecerat singulis legionibus,  
 to the lieutenants whom he had appointed to each legion.  
 quid vellet fieri in primis monet, ut  
 what he wishes to be done, especially he admonishes that  
 contineant milites, ne progrediantur  
 they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed



longiùs, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.  
too far, by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder.

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas  
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

lōci habeat hoc posse vitari  
of the place may have, (that) this could be avoided

celerite unâ, rem occasionis, non  
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

præli. His rebus expositis, dat signum,  
of battle These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, eodem tempore, ab dextrâ  
and sends the Ædui, at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.  
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-  
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio  
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensûs, rectâ regione, si nullus anfractus  
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic  
should intervene. Whatever may have been added to this

circuitûs ad molliendum clivum, id augebat  
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent], this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum  
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, ferè à  
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut  
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, qui tardaret  
the nature of the mountain was allowing, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio  
the attack of our men, and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem  
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris  
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps

densissimis. Milites, signo dato,  
 very close. The soldiers, the signal having been given,  
 celeriter perveniunt ad munitionem, que  
 quickly arrived at (thus) fortification, and  
 transgressi eam, potiuntur trinīs  
 having passed over it, take possession (of) three (separate)  
 castris. Ac tanta fuit celeritas in capiendis  
 camps. And so great was the speed in capturing  
 castris, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum,  
 the camps, that Teutomatus, king of the Nitiobriges,  
 oppressus subito in tabernaculo, ut  
 having been surprised suddenly in (his) tent, as  
 conquieverat meridie, vix eripere se  
 he went to rest at noon, scarcely saved himself  
 ex manibus prædantium militum, superiore  
 from the hands of the plundering soldiers, the upper  
 parte corpōris nudatâ, equo  
 part of (his) body (having been) naked, (and his) horse  
 vulnerato.  
 (having been) wounded,

47. Cæsar consecutus id quod proposuerat  
 Cæsar having attained that which he had proposed  
 animo, jussit receptui cani, que  
 in mind, ordered the retreat to be sounded, and (the soldiers)  
 decimæ legionis, quâ erat tum comitatus,  
 of the tenth legion, by which he was then accompanied,  
 consistere signa. At milites reliquarum  
 stood [halted] at the standards. But the soldiers of the other  
 legionum, non exaudito sono tubæ, quod  
 legions, not having heard the sound of the trumpet, because  
 vallis satis magna intercedebat, tamen  
 a valley sufficiently [quite] large was intervening, however  
 retinebantur à tribunis militum que  
 were kept back by the tribunes of the soldiers and  
 legatis, ut præceptum erat à Cæsar.  
 by the lieutenants, as (it) had been commanded by Cæsar.  
 Sed elati spe celeris victoriæ et fugâ  
 But elated by the hope of a speedy victory and by the flight

hostium, que secundis præliis superiorum  
of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former

temporum existimabant nihil adeò arduum  
times they are thinking (that) nothing (was) so difficult

sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;  
for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;

neque fecerunt finem sequendi, priùs  
nor did they make an end of following, before

quàm appropinquârunt muro que portis oppidi.  
(that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.

Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus  
But then a shout having arisen from all parts

urbis, qui aberant longiùs perterriti  
of the town, those who were distant farther frightened

repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes  
by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy

esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex  
to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from

oppido. Matres familiâs jactabant  
the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw

vestem que argentum de muro, et  
(their) clothes and silver from the wall, and

prominentes nudo pectore, passis manibus  
bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands

obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcèrent sibi; neu  
they implored the Romans, that they should spare them; nor

sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinerèrent ne  
as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not

mulieribus quidem atque infantibus. Nonnullæ  
the women even and children. Some

demissæ de muris per manus,  
having let themselves down from the wall by their hands

transdebant sese militibus. L. Fabius  
were delivering themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius

centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat  
a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared

dixisse eo die inter suos, se  
to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,  
 was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,  
 ut quisquam adscenderet murum priùs,  
 that any one should mount the wall before (himself),  
 nactus tres suos manipulares atque  
 having taken three (of) his company and  
 sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum ;  
 having been raised up by them he mounted the wall ;  
 ipse rursus exceptans extulit eos in murum,  
 he in turn taking up drew them onto the wall,  
 singulos.  
 one at a time.

48. Interim ñi, qui convenērant ad altēram  
 In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other  
 partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causâ  
 part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose  
 munitionis, primo clamōre exaudito, inde  
 of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward  
 etiã incitati crebris nunciis, oppidum  
 also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town  
 teneri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,  
 was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,  
 contenderunt ěo magno concursu. Ut quisque  
 they hastened there in a great throng. As each  
 ěorum primus venērat consistebat sub muro,  
 of them first came he was halting under the wall,  
 que augebãt numerum suorum pugnantium.  
 and was increasing the number of their (men) fighting.  
 Quum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,  
 When a great multitude of these had assembled,  
 matres familiãs quæ paulò antè  
 the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before  
 tendebant manus de muro Romanis,  
 were holding (their) hands from the wall to the Romans.  
 cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico mōre  
 began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner  
 ostentare passum capillum, que proferre  
 to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio erat æqua  
 the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec loco nec numero (sing.) ; simul  
 for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers ; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ,  
 fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight,

non facillè sustinebat recentes atque integros.  
 they were not easily withstanding (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cùm videret pugnari  
 Cæsar when he saw (it) to be [was] fought

iniquo loco, que copias hostium  
 in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augeri, præmetuens suis mittit ad  
 to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextum legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio  
 T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educeret  
 to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constitueret sub  
 the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium ;  
 the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy ;

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos loco,  
 that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place,

terreret hostes quò insequerentur minùs  
 he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

liberè. Ipse progressus paulùm ex hoc  
 freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat  
 place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.  
 the issue of the battle.

50 Quum pugnatur<sup>35</sup> accerimè comminus,  
 While it was fought most violently hand to hand,

hostes confiderent loco et numero  
 the enemy confided in the place and (their) number

nostri virtute ; Ædui sunt subito visi, ab  
 our men in (their) courage ; the Ædui were suddenly seen, by



nostris           aperto      latère, quos Cæsar miserat  
 our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent  
 ab dextrâ parte      alio      ascensu,      causâ  
 from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose  
 destinendæ manus.<sup>36</sup>      Hi vehementer perterruerunt  
 of cutting off the force      They very much alarmed  
 nostros      similitudine      armorum;      ac      tametsi  
 our men      by the similarity      of (their) arms,      and      although  
 animadvertabantur      dextris humeris      exertis,  
 they were observed      with the right shoulder      uncovered,  
 quod consueverat      esse      insigne      pacatis,  
 which was accustomed to be      the sign      (of those) in peace,  
 tamen milites existimabant      id ipsum  
 however the soldiers were thinking      (that) this same  
     factum ab hostibus      causâ      fallendi      sui.  
 (was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving them-  
 Eodem tempore centurio, L. Fabius, que  
 At the same time the centurion, L. Fabius, and  
     qui adscendērant murum unâ,  
 (those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),  
     circumventi      atque      interfecti, præcipitabantur  
 having been surrounded and slain.      were thrown  
 de muro. M. Petronius, centurio ejusdem  
 from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same  
 legionis, quum conatus esset excindere portas,  
 legion. when he had attempted to cut down the gates,  
 oppressus à multitudine, ac desperans  
 overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety  
     sibi,      jam      vulneribus      acceptis,      inquit  
 for himself, already wounds having been received, said  
 suis manipularibus qui secuti erant illum.  
 to his comrades who had followed him.  
 "Quoniam possum non servare me unâ vobiscum,  
 "Since I can not save myself together with you.  
 quidem certè prospiciam vestræ salutis, quos,  
 indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,  
 I, adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in  
 I, led by the desire of glory, have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datâ consulite  
 danger, you, an opportunity having been given. consult

vobis." Simul irrupit in medios  
 for yourselves " At the same time he threw himself into the midst

hostes, que duobus interfectis, submovit  
 of the) enemy. and two having been killed, he drove back

reliquos paulùm à portâ. Suis conantibus  
 the rest a little from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring

auxiliari inquit, "Frustra conamini subvenire meâ  
 to assist he said. "In vain you try to save my

vitæ quem sanguis que vires jam deficiunt,  
 life whom blood and strength now fail,

proinde abite hinc, dum est facultas,  
 therefore go from here, while there is the chance,

que recipite vos ad legionem." Pugnans ita  
 and get [betake] yourselves to the legion." Fighting thus

concidit pòst paulùm, ac fuit salutis<sup>37</sup>  
 he fell after a little, and was (for) a safety

suis.

to his (men).

51. Quum nostri premerentur undique,  
 As our (men) were pressed on every side,

quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,  
 forty six centurions having been lost,

dejecti sunt lōco. Sed decima legio,  
 they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,

quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulò æquiore  
 which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level

lōco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantiùs.  
 place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.

Cohortes decimæ tertię legionis, rursus exceperunt  
 The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported

hanc,<sup>38</sup> quæ eductæ ex minoribus castris,  
 this, that having been led from the smaller camp,

cum T. Sextio, legato, cepērant superiorem  
 with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher

lōcum. Ubi legiones primùm attigerunt planitiem  
 ground. When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt,                    signis                    infestis                    contra  
 they halted                    the standards                    having been turned                    against  
 hostes.                    Vercingetorix                    reduxit suos                    ab  
 the enemy.                    Vercingetorix                    led back his (men)                    from  
 radicibus                    collis                    intra                    munitiones.                    Eo  
 the foot                    of the hill                    within                    the fortifications.                    On this  
 die                    paulò                    minùs                    septingentis                    milites  
 day                    a little                    less                    (than)                    seven hundred                    soldiers  
 desiderati sunt.  
 were missing.

52. Postëro die, Cæsar, concione                    advocata,  
 On the next day, Cæsar, a council                    having been called,  
 reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,  
 censured the rashness and avarice of the soldiers,  
 quòd ipsi judicavissent sibi, quò videretur  
 because they had judged for themselves, where it seemed  
 procedendum, aut quid agendum,  
 (that they) to [must] go or what to [must] be done,  
 neque,                    signo                    recipiendi                    dato,  
 neither.                    the signal                    for halting                    having been given,  
 constitissent,                    neque                    potuissent                    retineri à  
 did they halt,                    nor                    could they                    be restrained by  
 tribunis militum que legatis.                    Exposuit  
 the tribunes of the soldiers and by the lieutenants                    He showed  
 quid iniquitas loci posset,  
 what the disadvantage of position would be able (to effect),  
 quid ipse sensisset ad Avaricum, quum,  
 what (he) himself had thought at Avaricum.                    when,  
 hostibus deprehensis,                    sine duce et  
 the enemy having been surprised                    without a leader and  
 sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,  
 without cavalry, he had given up a certain victory.  
 ne acciperet modò parvum detrimentum in  
 lest he might receive only a small injury in  
 contentione,                    propter iniquitatem loci  
 the contest,                    on account of the disadvantage of the place.  
 Quantopëre admiraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,  
 As much as he admired their greatness of soul.

quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo  
 whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height  
 montis, non murus oppidi potuisset  
 of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could  
 tardare, reprehendere tantopere licentiam que  
 retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and  
 arrogantiam, quòd existimarent se sentire  
 presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood  
 plus quàm imperatorem de victoriâ atque  
 more than (their) commander about victory and  
 exitu rerum; se desiderare in milite nec  
 the issue of affairs, (saying that) he desired in a soldier no  
 minùs modestiam et continentiam, quàm virtutem  
 less moderation and submission, than valor  
 atque magnitudinem animi.”  
 and greatness of soul.”

53. Hac concione, habitâ et ad extremum  
 This council. having been held and at the end

militibus confirmatis oratione, ne  
 the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)  
 permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu  
 should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor  
 tribuèrent id virtuti hostium, quod  
 should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy which  
 iniquitas loci attulisset; cogitans  
 the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking  
 eadem de profectioe, quæ senserat  
 the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt  
 antè, eduxit legiones ex castris, que  
 before. he led forth the legions from the camp, and  
 constituit aciem idoneo loco. — Quum  
 drew up the battle-line in a favorable place. When  
 Vercingetorix nihilo magis descenderet in æquum  
 Vercingetorix no more would descend into level  
 locum, levi equestri prælio facto,  
 ground a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,  
 atque ò secundo, reduxit exercitum  
 and this (being) favorable. he led back (his) army

in castra. Quum fecisset hoc idem postero  
 into the camp When he had done this same thing the next  
 die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam  
 day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening

Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos  
 the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging

animos militum, movit castra in  
 the minds of (his) soldiers. he moves (his) camp into

Æduos. Hostibus ne tum quidem insecutis,  
 the Ædui. The enemy not then even having followed,

tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen  
 on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river

Elaver, atque transduxit exercitum.  
 Allier, and led over (his) army

54. Ibi appellatus à Viridomaro atque  
 There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and

Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicus, cum  
 Eporedorix the Æduans. he learns (that) Litavicus, with

omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;  
 all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Ædui,

et esse opus ipsos antecedere  
 and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before

ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam  
 for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already

multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum  
 in many things was having the unfaithfulness of the Ædui

perspectam atque existimabat disessu  
 clearly understood and he was thinking (that) by the departure

horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;  
 of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened;

tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne  
 however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest

videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare  
 he might appear either to impose a wrong. or to give

aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,  
 some suspicion of fear. To them departing,

breviter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos  
 he briefly states his services to the Ædui, whom



accepisset et quàm humiles, compulsos in  
 he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into  
 oppida, multatos agris, omnibus copïis  
 their towns. deprived of their lands, all (their) means  
 ereptis, stipendio imposito,  
 having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)  
 obsidibus extortis cum summâ contumeliâ,  
 hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,  
 in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem  
 to what fortune, and to what greatness  
 deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in  
 he had raised (them). that they had not only returned to (their)  
 pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse  
 former state but they seemed to have surpassed  
 dignitatem et gratiam omnium temporum. His  
 the dignity and influence of all times. This  
 mandatis datis, dimisit eos ab  
 charge having been given. he dismisses them from

se.

his presence.

55. Novidunum erat oppidum Æduorum  
 Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui  
 positum opportuno loco ad ripas Ligeris.  
 situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.  
 Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Gallæ,  
 Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul.  
 frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem  
 the corn, the public money, a great part  
 suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitûs.  
 of his baggage, and (that) of the army.  
 Misërat huc magnum numërum equorum  
 He had sent hither a great number of horses  
 coëmptorum in Italiâ atque Hispaniâ, causâ  
 bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose  
 hujus belli. Quum Eporedorix que Viridomarus  
 of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus  
 venissent eo, et cognovissent de statu  
 had arrived there, and had learned about the condition.

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab  
 [attitude] of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by

Ædûis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ  
 the Ædûi in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest

auctoritatis apud Æos, Convictolitavem  
 importance among them, (that) Convictolitavis

magistratum que magnam partem senatûs  
 the magistrate and a great part of the senate

convenisse ad Æum, legatos publicè  
 had gone to him, (that) ambassadors were openly

missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandâ pace  
 sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace

et amicitîâ, existimaverunt tantum commodum  
 and alliance, they thought so great an advantage

non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni  
 must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum

interfectis, que qui convenërant èò  
 having been killed, and those who had assembled there

causâ negotiandi, aut itinëris, partiti sunt  
 for the sake of trading, or travel, they divided

pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt  
 the money and the horses among themselves; they took care

obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte  
 (that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte

ad magistratum, oppidum, quòd judicabant  
 to the magistrate, the town, because they thought (it)

posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne  
 could not be held by them. they burned, lest

esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt  
 it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away

subitò navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-  
 suddenly in ships what they could of corn. they

perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi  
 destroyed the rest in the river and by fire, they

cœperunt copëre copias ex finitimis regionibus,  
 began to collect forces from the neighboring districts.

disponere præsidia que custodias ad ripas  
 to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Legeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus locis  
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causâ injiciendi timōris, si aut possent  
for the purpose of exciting alarm, if either they could

excludere Romanos re frumentariâ, aut adductos  
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or driven

inopiâ, expellere ex Provinciâ;  
by want, could expel (them) from the province; (this)

adjuvabat eos multum ad quam spem, quod  
was assisting them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur  
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vador.  
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit  
Which things having been known, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum,<sup>39</sup> si esset periclitandum  
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret prius  
in building the bridges so that he might fight before

quam majores copiæ coactæ eo Nam ut,  
(that) greater forces were collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, converteret iter  
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciam, existimabat id ne tum  
into the Province he was thinking (that) this not then

quidem necessariò faciendum, quum infamia  
even of necessity to [must] be done, not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons  
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediabat (sing.);  
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads were preventing;

tum maxime quod cupiebat vehementer  
but also especially because he was desiring very much

adungi Labieno, atque iis legionibus quas  
to be united with Labienus, and these legions which

miserat unâ. Itaque admodum magnis  
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus diurnis atque nocturnis, confectis  
 marches by day and by night, having been made

pervenit ad Ligerim, contra opinionem omnium;  
 he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the opinion of all;

que vado invento per equites, opportuno  
 and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable

pro necessitate rei; ut brachia modo, atque  
 for the urgency of the case. that the arms only and

humeri possent esse liberi ab aquâ ad  
 the shoulders might be free from the water for

sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito  
 supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed

qui refringeret vim fluminis, atque  
 (that) they might break the force of the river, and

hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,  
 the enemy (having been) confounded at first sight

transduxit exercitum incolumen que nactus  
 he led over the army safe and having found

frumentum in agris, et copiam pecoris,  
 corn in the fields. and abundance of cattle,

exercitu repleto iis rebus, instituit  
 the army having been supplied with those things, he determines

facere iter in Senones.  
 to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,  
 While these things are transacted under Cæsar,

Labienus, eo supplemento, quod nuper venerat  
 Labienus, this contingent [addition], that had lately come

ex Italiâ relicto Agendici, ut  
 from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens]. that

esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur  
 it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches

cum quatuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est  
 with four legions to Lutetia [Paris] This is

oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulâ fluminis  
 a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river

Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab  
 Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostibus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finitimis  
the enemy, great forces assembled from the neighboring

civitatibus. Summa imperii transditur Camulogeno  
states The supreme command is given to Camulogenus

Aulerco; qui propè confectus ætate,  
the Aulercan; who (though) nearly worn out with age,

tamen evocatus est ad ěum honorem propter  
yet was called to this honor on account of (his)

singularem scientiam militaris rĕi. Is, quum  
singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when

animadvertisset, esse perpetuam paludem  
he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh

quæ influeret in Sequanam, atque magnopere  
which opened into the Seine, and greatly

impediret omnem illum lōcum, consedit hic, que  
obstructed all that place, encamped there, and

instituit prohibere nostros transitu.  
resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primò conabatur agĕre vineas,  
Labienus at first was endeavoring to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque  
to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and

munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id  
to open a road. After he observed (that) this

conferi difficiliùs, egressus  
would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

è castris silentio tertiâ vigiliâ, pervenit  
from (his) camp in silence on the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,<sup>40</sup> ěodem itinĕre, quo  
at Metiosedum [Melun] by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum  
he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulâ Sequanæ, ut paulò antè diximus  
on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circĭter quinquaginta navibus depre-  
(was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, quer conjunctis celerite, atque  
seized, and (having been) joined together quickly, and



militibus impositis ãò, et oppidanis  
 soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town

perterritis novitate rēi, magna  
 (having been) alarmed by the novelty of the thing a great

pars quorum erat evocata ad bellum,  
 part of whom had been called away to the war,

potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte  
 he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge

refecto, quem hostes resciderant  
 having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed

superioribus diebus, transducit exercitum, et  
 on the preceding days he leads over (his) army. and

cœpit facere iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam.  
 began to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.

Hostes, re cognitâ ab iis qui  
 The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who

profugerant à Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam  
 had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia

incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;  
 to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;

ipsi profecti palude, considunt in  
 they themselves having left the marsh, place themselves on

ripis Sequanæ è regione Lutetiæ contra  
 the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite

castra Labieni.  
 the camp of Labienus.

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse à  
 Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from

Gergoviâ; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione  
 Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt

Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que  
 of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul and

Galli in colloquis confirmabant Cæsarem  
 the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar

interclusum itinere et Ligere,  
 cut off from (his) route and from the Loire (and)

coactum inopiâ frumenti, contendisse in  
 forced by the want of corn, had marched into

Provinciam. Autem Bellovaci, defectione Æduorum  
 the province But the Bellovaci the defection of the Ædui  
 cognitâ, qui antè ěrant per se  
 having been learned. who before were of themselves  
 infideles, cœperunt cogĕre manus, atque apertè  
 unfaithful. began to collect forces. and openly  
 parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantâ  
 to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great  
 commutatione rerum intelligebat longè aliud  
 a change of affairs thought (that) a far different  
 consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat  
 plan to [must] be taken by him. than he had considered  
 antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquireret  
 before. Nor now was he thinking. that he should acquire  
 aliquid, que lacesseret hostes prœlio, sed ut  
 anything. and should attack the enemy in battle. but that  
 reduceret exercitum incolumen Agenticum.  
 he should lead back (his) army safe to Agenticum.  
 Namque ex altĕrâ parte Bellovaci, quæ civitas  
 For on the one side the Bellovaci. which state  
 habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliâ,  
 had the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul,  
 instabant; altĕram Camulogenus tenebat  
 were pressing. the other (side) Camulogenus was holding  
 parato atque instructo exercitu; tum  
 with an organized and equipped army, also  
 maximum flumen distinebat legiones  
 a very large river was separating the legions (having been)  
 interclusas à præsidio atque impedimentis.  
 cut off from the garrison and baggage.  
 Tantis difficultatibus subitò objectis,  
 Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented.  
 videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute<sup>41</sup>  
 he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength  
 animi.  
 of mind.

60. Itaque sub vespĕrum, concilio con-  
 Therefore towards evening, a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que  
called; he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and

industriè administrarent ěa quæ  
industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which

imperasset; naves, quas deduxerat à  
he should command; the ships, which he had brought from

Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et  
Metiosedum, he assigns each one to Roman knights; and

jubet, primâ vigiliâ confectâ,  
orders (them), the first watch having been completed,

progredi quatuor millia passũum secundo flumine,  
to proceed four thousand paces down the river,

silentio, que ibi se expectari. Relinquit  
in silence, and (that) there he was to be awaited. He leaves

quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minimè  
five cohorts, which he considered to be least

firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;  
sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;

imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis  
he commands the remaining five of the same legion

proficisci de mediâ nocte cum omnibus impedimentis  
to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage

adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etiam  
up the river with a great din. Also

conquirunt lintres; has mittit in eandem partem,  
he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,

incitatus magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulò  
driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little

pòst, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,  
after, having marched out in silence with three legions,

petit ěum locum, quò jusserat naves  
seeks this place, where he had ordered the ships

appelli.

to be brought.

61. Quum esset ventum<sup>42</sup> ěo, exploratores  
When it was come [he came] there, ☐ the scouts

hostium, ut dispositi ěrant omni parte  
of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

flumīnis, inopinantes, quòd magna tempestas  
 of the river. not expecting, because a great storm

subitò cōorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;  
 had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celeriter transmittitur,  
 the infantry and cavalry are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos  
 the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præfeceret ěi negotio. Ferè uno  
 had appointed for ths affair. Nearly at one [the same]

tempore sub lucem nunciatur hostibus,  
 time about daylight it was announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter  
 (that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans beyond

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire  
 custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumīne, que sonitum remorum  
 up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in ěadem parte, et paulò  
 was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milītes transportari navibus. Quibus rebus  
 below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quòd existimabant legiones  
 having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus locis, atque omnes perturbatos  
 were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed

defectione Æduorum parare fugam,  
 by the defection of the Ædu were preparing for flight,

quoque distribuerunt suas copias in tres partes.  
 they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto à regione castrorum,  
 For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvâ manu missâ versùs Metiosedum,  
 and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progredetur tantum quantum naves pro-  
 which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessissent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.  
 proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primâ luce et omnes nostri  
 At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)  
 transportati ĕrant, et acies hostium cernebatur.  
 had been transported, and the army of the enemy was discerned

Labienus cohortatus milites ut tenĕrent  
 [seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold  
 memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, et tot  
 the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many  
 secundissimorum præliorum, atque existimarent  
 very successful battles, and that they should think  
 Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-  
 (that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so  
 ero superâssent hostes adesse; dat signum  
 often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal  
 præli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi  
 of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where  
 septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,  
 the seventh legion stood, the enemy are repulsed,  
 atque conjiciuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,  
 and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),  
 quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum  
 which place the twelfth legion was holding, when  
 primi ordĭnes hostium concidissent transfixi  
 the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed  
 pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrimè, nec  
 by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor  
 quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux  
 was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general  
 ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,  
 himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his  
 atque cohortabatur ĕos. At exitu  
 (men), and was encouraging them. But the issue  
 victoriæ etiam nunc incerto, quum  
 of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when  
 nunciatum esset tribunis septimæ legionis,  
 it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,  
 quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt  
 what was transpiring on the left wing, they displayed



legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt  
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne ěo tempore quidem quisquam cessit  
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

lōco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que  
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit ěandem  
slain, Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At ĩi qui relictī ěrant præsidio  
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent  
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

prælium commissum, ierunt subsidio  
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque  
to their [people], and took [occupied], the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinere impetum nostrorum militum  
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum: sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,  
(when) conquerors; so mingled with their own (men) retreating,

quos silvæ que montes non texerunt  
those whom the woods and the mountains, did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-  
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ũbi  
been completed, Labienus returned to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitūs relicta ěrant; inde  
the baggage of all the army had been left, thence

pervenit ad Cæsarem cum omnibus copiis.  
he came to Cæsar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Ēduorum cognitā, bellum  
The revolt of the Ēdui having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes  
is increased. embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum  
directions they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratiā, auctoritate, pecuniā.  
they may avail by favor by authority, (or) by money.

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat  
 Having got the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited  
 apud eos, territant dubitantes supplicio  
 with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment  
 horum. Ædui petunt â Vercingetorige ut  
 of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that  
 veniat ad se, que communicet rationes  
 he come to them, and communicate the plans  
 gerendi belli. Re impetratâ,  
 of carrying on the war. This thing having been obtained,  
 contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur  
 they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned  
 ipsis et, re deductâ in controversiam,  
 to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,  
 concilium totius Galliæ indicitur Bibracte.  
 a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.  
 Frequentes undique conveniunt eodem; res  
 Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter  
 permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum  
 is consigned to the votes of the multitude, all to one  
 probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.  
 [a man] approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.  
 Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab  
 The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from  
 hoc concilio; illi quòd sequebantur  
 this council; those [two first] because they were following  
 amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quòd  
 [observing] the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because  
 longiùs aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;  
 they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;  
 quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto  
 which was the reason why they were absent in the whole  
 bello, et mitterent auxilia neutris. Ædui  
 war, and were sending auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui  
 ferunt magno dolore se dejectos  
 bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived  
 principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,  
 of the leadership; they lament the change of fortune,

et . requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;  
and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves ;

neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent  
nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare

separare suum consilium ab reliquis.  
to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ  
Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest

spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.  
expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis  
He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other

civitatibus. Denique constituit diem eï rēi;  
states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter ;

huc jubet omnes equites, número  
here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celeriter. Dicit  
of fifteen [ thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fore contentum peditatu quem  
(that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit antè; neque temptaturum fortunam, neque  
he had before ; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;<sup>43</sup> sed, quoniam abundet  
would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibere  
in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; mōdò  
the Romans from corn and forage ; provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua  
they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; quâ  
corn, and burn (their) houses, by which

jacturâ familiaris rēi videant se  
loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetuum imperium que libertatem. His  
obtain perpetual empire and freedom, These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que  
things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem  
 the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten  
 millia peditum; huc addit octingentos  
 thousand (of) infantry: to this he adds eight hundred  
 equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,  
 horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorigis,  
 que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.  
 and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.  
 Ex alterâ parte mittit Gabalos que proximos  
 On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest  
 pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,  
 cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii, likewise the Ruteni,  
 que Caduceos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum  
 and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ  
 Arecomicorum. Nihilominus sollicitat Allobroges  
 Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges  
 clandestinis nunciis que legationibus, quorum mentes  
 by secret messages and embassies, whose minds  
 sperabat nondum resedisse à  
 he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from  
 superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,  
 the former war. To their leaders he promises money,  
 autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.  
 but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia  
 Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection

viginti et duarum cohortium provisa erant, quæ  
 of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which

coacta ex Provinciâ ipsâ ab L. Cæsare,  
 having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,

legato opponebantur ad omnes partes.  
 (his) lieutenant were opposing at [on] all sides.

Helvii, suâ sponte congressi prælio cum  
 The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with

finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,  
 their neighbors. are defeated. and C. Valerius Donaturus,

filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus  
 the son of Caburus, a chief of the state, and many

aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida  
 others having been killed, they are driven into the towns

que muros. Allobrogēs crebris præsiidiis  
 and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos  
 having been placed at [along] the Rhone, defend their

fines cum magnâ curâ et diligentîâ. Cæsar,  
 frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quòd intelligebat hostes esse  
 because he was perceiving (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus  
 superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullâ re  
 having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect[

ex Provinciâ atque Italiâ, mittit trans Rhenum  
 from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad eas civitates, quas pacaverat  
 into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que accessit equites ab his,  
 in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consueverant  
 and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

præliari inter eos. Eorum adventu, quòd  
 to battle among them. On their coming, because

utebantur equis minùs idoneis, sumit equos  
 they used horses less suitable, he takes horses

à tribunis militum, sed ut  
 (not only) from the tribunes of the soldiers, but also

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit  
 from the Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.

to the Germans.

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiæ  
 Mean time while these things are transpiring, the forces

ex Arvernīs, que equites, qui imperati erant  
 from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demanded

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum  
 of all of Gaul, assemble. A great number of these



coacto, quum Cæsar faceret iter in  
 having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into  
 Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,  
 the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,  
 quò posset faciliùs ferre subsidium Provinciæ,  
 so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,  
 Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circiter decem  
 Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten  
 millia passuum ab Romanis; que præfectis  
 thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders  
 equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat  
 of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)  
 tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugere in  
 the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into  
 Provinciam, que excedere Galliâ; id esse satis  
 the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough  
 sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;  
 for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;  
 profici parum ad pacem atque otium  
 (but it) profited little for the peace and repose  
 reliqui temporis; enim majoribus copiis  
 of the remaining time; for greater forces  
 coactis reversuros neque facturos  
 having been collected they would return nor would they make  
 finem bellandi; proinde adoriantur  
 an end of waring; therefore let them attack (them)  
 impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium  
 encumbered on the march. If the infantry bring assistance  
 suis, atque morentur eo, iter posse  
 to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could  
 non confici; sin, id quod magis  
 not be performed; but, this which the rather [the more]  
 confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,  
 he trusts would be, the baggage having been abandoned,  
 consulant suæ salutis, iri spoliatum  
 if they may consult their safety, they would be deprived  
 et usu necessariorum rerum, et dignitate.  
 both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

Nam de equitibus hostium, ne ipsos  
For concerning the cavalry of the enemy, not they

quidem debere dubitare, quin nemo eorum  
even ought to doubt, (but) that no one of them

audeat mōdò progredi extra agmen.  
would dare even to advance beyond the marching-line.

Quo faciant id majore animo, se habiturum  
That they may do this with greater spirit, he would hold

omnes copias pro castras, et futurum  
all (his) forces before the camp, and would be

terrori hostibus. Equites conclamant  
(for) a terror to the enemy. The cavalry shout (that)

oportere confirmari sanctissimo jurejurando,  
it was proper to confirm (this) by a most sacred oath,

ne recipiatur tecto, habeat aditum  
that he should not be received under a roof, (nor) have access

ne ad liberos ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem,  
either to [children or to parents, or to wife,

qui non bis perequitâsset per agmen  
who had not twice ridden through the army

hostium.  
of the enemy.

67. Re probatâ, atque omnibus  
The thing having been approved, and all

adactis ad jusjurandum, postëro die  
having been bound to an oath, on the next day

equitatu distributo in tres partes, duæ  
the cavalry having been divided into three parts, two

ostendunt se à duobus lateribus; una cœpit  
show themselves on the two flanks; one began

impedire iter à primo agmine. Quâ  
to impede the march on the first line [the front]. Which

re nunciatâ, Cæsar quoque jubet suum  
thing having been announced, Cæsar also orders his

equitatum divisum tripartitò ire contra hostem.  
cavalry divided into three parts to go against the enemy.

Pugnatur (pass. sing.) unâ in omnibus partibus.  
They fought together on all sides.

Agmen constitit. Impedimenta recipiuntur  
 The marching-column halted. The baggage is received  
 inter legiones. Si in quâ parte nostri  
 among the legions. If in any part our (men)  
 videbantur laborare, aut premi graviùs, èdò  
 were seeming to labor, or be pressed more severely, there  
 Cæsar jubebat signa inferri, que  
 Cæsar was ordering the standards to be borne, and  
 aciem converti; quæ res et tardabat  
 the battle-line to be turned; which thing both was retarding  
 hostes ad insequendum, et confirmabat  
 the enemy for [from] following, and was encouraging  
 nostros spe auxili. Tandem Germani  
 our (men) with the hope of aid. At length the Germans  
 ab dextro latère, nacti summum jugum  
 on the right wing, having gained the top of the hill  
 depellunt hostes lōco; persequuntur  
 force the enemy from the place; they pursue  
 fugientes usque ad flumen, ũbi Vercingetorix  
 (them) fleeing even to the river, where Vercingetorix  
 consedërat cum pedestribus copiis, que interficiunt  
 had halted with the foot forces, and they kill  
 complures. Quâ re animadversâ, reliqui  
 very many. Which thing having been observed, the rest  
 veriti, ne circumvenirentur, mandant se  
 afraid, lest they might be surrounded, consign themselves  
 fugæ. Cædes fit omnibus lōcis. Tres  
 to flight. Slaughter is made in all parts. Three  
 nobilissîmi Ædui capti perducuntur ad Cæsarem;  
 most noble Æduans captured are led back to Cæsar;  
 Cotus præfectus equitum, qui habuerat  
 Cotus the commander of the cavalry, who had held  
 controversiam cum Convictolitave proximis comitiis;  
 the contest with Convictolitavis in the late elections;  
 et Cavarillus, qui, post defectionem Litavici  
 and Cavarillus, who, after the revolt of Litavicus  
 præfuerat pedestribus copiis, et Eporedorix,  
 had commanded the foot forces, and Eporedorix,

quo duce, ante adventum Cæsaris, Ædui  
with whom as leader, before the arrival of Cæsar, the Ædui

contendērant bello cum Sequanis.  
had fought in the war with the Sequani.

68. Omni equitatu fugato, Vercingetorix  
All the cavalry having been routed, Vercingetorix

reduxit suas copias ut collocaverat pro  
led back his forces as he had placed (them) before

castris; que protinus cœpit facere iter  
the camp; and immediately began to make (his) march

Alesiam,<sup>44</sup> quod est oppidum Mandubiorum; que  
to Alesia, which is a town of the Mandubii; and

jussit impedimenta celeriter educi ex castris,  
ordered the baggage quickly to be brought from the camp,

et subsequi se. Cæsar, impedimentis  
and to follow closely after him. Cæsar, the baggage

deductis in proximum collem, que duabus  
having been conducted to the next hill, and two

legionibus relictis præsidio, secutus,  
legions having been left for [as] a guard, having followed,

quantum tempus diēi passum est, circiter tribus  
as far as the time of day allowed, about three

millibus hostium ex novissimo agmine inter-  
thousand of the enemy in the rear line having been

fectis, altëro die fecit castra ad  
slain, on the next day makes [pitches] camp at

Alesiam. Perspecto situ urbis, que  
Alesia. Having reconnoitered the situation of the town, and

hostibus perterritis, quòd erant pulsi  
the enemy (having been) terrified, because they were beaten

equitatu, quâ parte exercitûs maximè  
by the cavalry, in which part [branch] of the army especially

confidebant; adhortatus milites ad laborem,  
they were confiding; having exhorted the soldiers to the labor,

instituit circumvallare Alesiam.  
he determined to invest Alesia.

69. Oppidum ipsum erat in summo colle,  
The town itself was on the top (of) a hill,

lōco admodum edito, ut videretur non posse ex-  
 the place very high, so that it seemed it could not (to)  
 pugnari nisi obsidione. Duo flumina ex  
 be captured unless by a blockade. Two rivers on  
 duabus partibus subleuant radices cujus collis.  
 two sides were washing the foot of this hill.  
 Ante oppidum planities patebat circiter trium  
 Before the town a plain was extending about three  
 millia passuum in longitudinem. Ex omnibus  
 thousand paces [miles] in length On all  
 reliquis partibus, colles, mediocri spatia  
 the remaining sides, hills, a moderate distance  
 (having been) interjecto pari fastigio  
 interposed with equal elevation [degree]  
 altitudinis cingebant oppidum. Sub muro,  
 of height were encircling the town. Under the wall.  
 pars collis, quæ spectabat ad orientem,  
 the part of the hill, which was looking to the east,  
 omnem hunc lōcum copiae Gallorum compleverant,  
 all this place the forces of the Gauls had filled,  
 que præduxerant fossam, et maceriam  
 and had led [thrown] around a ditch, and a cement wall  
 sex pedum in altitudinem. Circuitus ejus  
 six feet in height. The circuit of this  
 munitionis, quæ instituebatur ab Romanis  
 fortification, which was undertaken by the Romans  
 tenebat undecim millia passuum. Castra  
 was extending eleven thousand paces [miles]. The camp  
 posita erant opportunis lōcis; que ibi viginti  
 was placed in favorable positions; and there twenty  
 tria castella facta, in quibus interdum stationes  
 three fortresses were made, in which by day guards  
 disponebantur, ne qua irruptio fieret subitò.  
 were placed, lest any sally might be made suddenly.  
 Hæc eadem tenebantur noctu excubitoribus,  
 These same were held [occupied] at night by pickets,  
 ac firmis præsidiis.  
 and strong posts.



70. Opère instituto, equestre prælium  
 The work having been undertaken, a cavalry battle  
 fit in ã planitie, quam, demonstravimus  
 took place on this plain, which, we have shown  
 suprâ, patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem,  
 above, extends three thousand paces in length,  
 intermissam collibus. Contenditur (pass. sing.)  
 limited by the hills. They contended  
 summâ vi ab utrisque. Cæsar  
 with the highest [utmost] vigor by [on] both sides. Cæsar  
 submittit Germanos nostris laborantibus, que  
 sends the Germans to our men hard pressed, and  
 constituit legiones pro castris, ne qua irruptio  
 draws up the legions before the camp, lest any sally  
 subitò fiat peditatu hostium. Præsidio  
 suddenly should be made by the infantry of the enemy. The protection  
 legionum addito, animus augetur nostris;  
 of the legions having been added. courage is increased in our men;  
 hostes coniecti in fugam, ipsi impediunt  
 the enemy thrown into flight, they impede  
 se multitudine; atque coartantur angustioribus  
 themselves by their mass; and are crowded in the narrower  
 portis relictis. Germani sequuntur  
 gates left (open). The Germans follow (them)  
 acriùs usque ad munitiones; maga cædes  
 more vigorously even to the fortifications; a great slaughter  
 fit; nonnulli, equis relictis, conantur  
 is made; some, the horses having been abandoned, endeavor  
 transire fossam, et transcendere maceriam.  
 to cross over the ditch, and climb the cement wall.  
 Cæsar jubet legiones, quas constituerat  
 Cæsar orders the legions, which he had drawn up  
 pro vallo promoveri paulùm. Galli,  
 before the rampart to be moved forward a little. The Gauls  
 qui ãrant intra munitiones, non minùs  
 who were within the fortifications, no less  
 perturbantur; existimantes veniri  
 were terrified; thinking (our men) were coming

confestim · ad se, conclamant ad arma. Nonnulli  
quickly to them, they call to arms. Some

perterriti irrumpunt in oppidum. Vercingetorix  
panic stricken burst into the town. Vercingetorix

jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur.  
orders the gates to be closed, lest the camp should be left bare.

Multis interfectis, compluribus equis  
Many having been slain, (and) very many horses

captis, Germani recipiunt sese.  
having been captured, the Germans return [retire].

71. Vercingetorix capit consilium dimittere à  
Vercingetorix adopts the plan to send away from

se omnem equitatum noctu, priusquam munitiones  
him all the cavalry by night, before the fortifications

perficiantur ab Romanis. Mandat discedentibus,  
should be finished by the Romans. He commands them departing,

ut, quisque eorum adeat suam civitatem, que  
that, each one of them should go to their own state, and

cogant ad bellum omnes, qui per  
(that) they should assemble for the war all, who by

ætatem possint ferre arma. Proponit sua  
their age might be able to bear arms. He states his

merita in illos, que obtestatur, ut habeant  
services toward them, and implores, that they should have

rationem suæ salutis, neu dedant se hostibus  
a regard for his safety, nor deliver him to the enemy

in cruciatum, meritum optime de  
for torture, having merited so well concerning

communi libertate; qui<sup>45</sup> si fuerint indiligentiores,  
the common liberty; who if they should be somewhat remiss,

demonstrat octoginta millia delecta hominum  
he shows (that) eighty thousand chosen men

interitura cum se; ratione inita,  
would perish with him. a calculation having been entered [made],

se habere frumentum exiguè triginta dierum, sed  
he had corn scarcely of [for] thirty days, but

posse tolerare etiã paulò longiùs parcendo.  
he could endure even a little longer by sparing.

His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum  
 These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry

silentio, secundâ vigiliâ, quâ nostrum opus  
 in silence, in the second watch, where our work

intermissum; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad  
 ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to

se; constituit pœnam capitis<sup>46</sup> iis,  
 himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,

qui non paruerint; distribuit pecus, cujus  
 who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which

magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,  
 a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,

virum; instituit frumentum metiri  
 man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured

parcè et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,  
 sparingly and by little; he receives all the forces,

quas collocaverat pro oppido, in oppidum.  
 which he had placed before the town, into the town.

His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,  
 In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,

et administrare bellum.  
 and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis  
 Which things having been known from deserters

et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc genera (pl.)  
 and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind

munitionis. Duxit fossam viginti pedum  
 of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet

latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum  
 broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom

pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.  
 might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.

Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis  
 He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred

pedibus ab eâ fossâ; id hoc consilio  
 feet from this ditch; this with this design

(quoniam tantum spatium necessariò esset complexus,  
 (since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facilè cingeretur  
 (that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded

coronâ militum), ne aut multitudo hostium  
 by a circle of soldiers), lest either a mass of the enemy

advolaret ad munitiones de improviso noctu,  
 should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,

aut interdiu possent conjicere tela in  
 or by day they might be able to throw weapons against

nostros destinatos operi. Hòc spatio inter-  
 our men assigned to the work. This space having been

misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,  
 left, he forms two trenches fifteen feet wide,

eadem altitudine; interiorem quarum  
 with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)

campestribus ac demissis locis, complevit aquâ  
 in level and low ground, he fills with water

derivatâ ex flumine. Post eas extruxit  
 led from the river. Behind these he constructed

aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic  
 a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this

adjecit loriam que pinnas, grandibus cervis  
 he added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns

eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)  
 projecting at the junction of the parapet

atque aggeris, qui tardarent ascensum  
 and the mound, which might hinder the ascent

hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ  
 of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which

distarent inter se<sup>47</sup> octoginta pedes.  
 were distant among themselves eighty feet.

73. Erat necesse eodem tempore et  
 It was necessary at the same time both

materiari, et frumentari, et tantas  
 to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great

munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-  
 fortifications to [should] be made, our forces having been

inutis, quæ progrediebantur longius ab  
 diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castris ; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur  
 the camp ; and the Gauls sometimes were endeavoring

tentar nostra opĕra, atque facĕre eruptionem  
 to attack our works, and to make a sally

ex oppĭdo summâ vi pluribus portis.  
 from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates.

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus  
 Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quò munitiones possent  
 be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numĕro militum. Itaque truncis  
 be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,  
 of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque  
 and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis ; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ  
 sharpened ; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et  
 were cut. Here these stakes were put down, and

revincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,  
 fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines  
 they were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

ĕrant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,  
 were united, and intertwined among themselves,

quò ipsi qui<sup>48</sup> intraverant, induebant se  
 where they who might enter, were impaling themselves

acutissimis vallis ; appellabant hos cippos.  
 on very sharp stakes ; they were calling these cippi [boundary

posts]. Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,  
 Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, scrobes, in altitudinem  
 arranged in quineunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore  
 of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigĭo ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine  
 surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness



feminis, ab summo præacuti et præusti,  
of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,

demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quatuor  
were set in; so that not more (than) four

digitis eminent ex terrâ. Simul  
inches might project from the ground. At the same time

causâ confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli<sup>49</sup>  
for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each

pedes (pl.) ab infimo solo terrâ  
foot from the lowest ground with earth

exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis integebatur  
were trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered

viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.  
with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.

Octoni ordines hujus generis ducti, distabant  
Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant

ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine  
three feet among themselves. This, from the likeness

floris, appellabant liliam. Ante hæc taleæ,  
to the flower, they were calling a lily. Before these, stakes,

pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ  
a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]

infodiebantur in terram: que, mediocribus  
were sunk into the ground; and, moderate

spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus  
spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all

locis, quos nominabant stimulos.  
places, which they were calling spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus  
These things having been completed, having followed

regiones æquissimas, pro naturâ loci quàm  
localities the most level, for the nature of the place that [as]

potuit, complexus quatuordecim millia  
he could, (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand

passuum, perfecit pares munitiones ejusdem  
paces, he completed like fortifications of the same

generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem  
kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent  
 enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could

circumfundī ne magna<sup>50</sup> multitudine, quidem (si  
 be surrounded not by a great multitude, even (if

accidat ita, discessu<sup>51</sup> ejus).  
 it should happen so, by the departure of it [its, the cavalry's

departure]. Neu cogentur egredi ex  
 Nor (that) they should be forced to go from

castris cum periculo, jubet omnes habere pabulum  
 the camp with danger, he orders all to have forage

convectum que frumentum triginta dierum.  
 collected and corn for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,  
 While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,

Galli, concilio principum indicto,  
 the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked,

statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui  
 ordain, (that) not all should be called out who

possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),  
 could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),

sed certum num̄rum imperandum cuique  
 but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each

civitati; ne, tantâ confusâ multitudine  
 state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude

possent nec moderari, nec discernere suos  
 they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)

nec habere rationem frumentandi. Imp̄rant  
 nor have the means of provisioning They demand

triginta quinque millia Æduis atque  
 thirty five thousand from the Ædui and

eorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,  
 their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,

Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem num̄rum  
 the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number

Arvernīs, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,  
 from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,

Gabalīs, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt  
 the Gabali, (and) the Vellavii, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum: Senonibus,  
 to be under the command of the Arverni. from the Senones,  
 Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,  
 the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni,  
 Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;  
 the Carnutes, twelve thousand; the Bellovaci, ten;  
 totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et  
 the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and  
 Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena  
 the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helvetii; six  
 Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,  
 from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,  
 Nervii, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia  
 the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand  
 Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;  
 from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates;  
 quatuor Velioctassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis  
 four ;from the Velioctassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci  
 Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.  
 Eburovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.  
 Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt  
 Ten from all the states, which border on  
 Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur  
 the Ocean, and that by their custom are called  
 Armoricæ, in quo numero sunt Coriosolites,  
 Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,  
 Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,  
 the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti,  
 Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non  
 Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not  
 contulerunt suum numerum; quòd dixerunt  
 contribute their number; because they said (that)  
 se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo  
 they would carry on war with the Romans by their own  
 nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos  
 name and will, nor would they obey  
 imperio cujusquam. Rogati à Commius,  
 the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

pro ejus hospitio, tamen miserunt  
 on account of his tie of hospitality, however they sent  
 duo millia.  
 two thousand.

76. Cæsar, ita ut antea demonstravimus, erat usus  
 Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used

fideli atque utili opërâ hujus Commius,  
 the faithful and helpful service, of this Commius,

superioribus annis in Britannîâ; pro quibus meritis  
 in former years in Britain; for which deserts

jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,  
 he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),

reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat  
 had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred

ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio  
 on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity

universæ Galliæ vindicandæ libertatis, et  
 of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and

recuperandæ (their) pristinæ laudis belli, ut  
 of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that

moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriâ  
 they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory

amicitiæ, que omnes incumberent in id  
 of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this

bellum et animo et opibus; octo  
 war with both mind [thought] and means; eight

millibus equitum, et circiter ducentis et  
 thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and

quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.  
 forty thousand infantry having been collected.

Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que  
 These were reviewed in the country of the Ædui; and

numërus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;  
 the number was secured; commanders were appointed;

summa imperii transditur Commius Atrebatî,  
 the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,

Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Æduis,  
 Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrinus Vercingetorix.  
 Vercassivellauns the Arvernian, cousin-german to Vercingetorix.  
 Iis delecti ex civitatibus  
 To them (those) selected from the states  
 attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.  
 are assigned, by whose counsel the war should be conducted.  
 Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni  
 All set out to Alesia eager and full  
 fiducia. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,  
 of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,  
 arbitraretur ad aspectum mōdō tantæ  
 supposed that the sight even of so great  
 multitudinis posse sustineri, præsertim ancipiti  
 a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold  
 prælio; quum pugnaretur<sup>52</sup> eruptione ex  
 battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from  
 oppido, et foris tantæ copiæ equitatûs que  
 the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and  
 peditatûs cerneretur.  
 infantry should be discerned.

77. At ïi qui obsidebantur Alesia, die  
 But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day  
 præterita, quâ expectaverant auxilia suorum,  
 having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),  
 omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid  
 all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what  
 geretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,  
 was passing among the Ædui, a council having been assembled,  
 consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum,  
 they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.  
 Ac variis sententiis dictis, quarum pars  
 And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part  
 censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum  
 were recommending a surrender, a part a sally while  
 vires (pl.) suppeterent. Oratio Critognati  
 (their) strength was sufficing. The speech of Critognatus  
 videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus  
 it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its



singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus  
singular and infamous cruelty. He, born

summo lōco in Arvernīs, et habitus  
of the highest family among the Arverni, and possessed

magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil  
of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing

de sententiâ eorum, qui appellant  
concerning the opinion of those, who call

turpissimam servitutem nomīne deditōnis:  
the basest slavery by the name of surrender:

censeo hos neque habendos lōco  
I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place

civium, neque adhibendos ad  
[role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to

concilium. Res est mihi cum iis, qui  
the counsel. The business is for me with those, who

probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu  
sanction a sally; in the advice of whom with the consent

vestrum omnium memoria pristinæ virtutis  
of you all the memory of the old-time valor

videtur residere. Ista est mollities animi non  
seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not

virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.  
courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.

Qui ultro offerant se morti facilius  
(Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily

reperiuntur, quàm qui patienter ferant dolorem.  
are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.

Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam tantum  
And I would approve this opinion, so much

apud me dignitas potest), si viderem  
with me honor is able [avails]), if I could see (that)

nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ  
no loss would be made except of our

vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiendo consilio,  
lives. But in taking [forming] plans,

respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus  
let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millibus hominum  
 to our assistance. Eighty thousand men  
 interfectis, uno loco, quid animi existimatis  
 having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think  
 fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si  
 (this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if  
 cogentur decertare prælio pænè in  
 they may be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)  
 cadaveribus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro  
 dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your  
 auxilio, qui causâ vestræ salutis neglexerint  
 aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded  
 suum periculum, nec vestrâ stultitiâ ac  
 their own peril, nor by your folly and  
 temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternere  
 recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate  
 omnem Galliam, ac addicere perpetuæ servituti.  
 all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.  
 An quòd non venèrint ad diem  
 Why because they may not have come at [on] the day  
 dubitatis de eorum fide que constantia? Quid  
 do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What  
 ergo? Putatis Romanos exerceri quotidie  
 then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily  
 in illis ulterioribus munitiõibus ne causâ  
 in those outer fortifications only for the purpose  
 animi?<sup>53</sup> Si potestis non confirmari nun-  
 of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the  
 tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,  
 messages of those, all access having been prevented  
 utimini iis testibus eorum adventum  
 use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival  
 appropinquare exterriti timõre cujus re  
 draws near alarmed by the fear of this thing  
 versantur diem que noctem in opère. Quid  
 they are busied day and night in the works. What  
 ergo est mēi consilii? Facere quod nostri  
 therefore is my advice? To do what our

majores fecerunt nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum  
 forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri

que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac  
 and Teutones, who driven into towns, and

subacti simili inopiâ, toleraverunt vitam corporibus  
 forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies

eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,  
 of those, who by age seemed useless for war,

neque transdiderunt se hostibus. Si  
 nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If

haberemus non exemplum cujus rēi, tamen  
 we had not the example of this thing, yet

judicarem pulcherrimum causâ libertatis  
 I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty

institui, et prodi posteris. Nam  
 to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For

quid fuit simile illi bello?<sup>54</sup> Galliâ  
 what was it like that war? Gaul (having been)

depopulatâ, que magnâ calamitate illatâ,  
 depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,

Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque  
 the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and

petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,  
 sought other lands; they left us the rights.

leges, agros libertatem. Verò Romani  
 the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans

quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi  
 what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except

adducti invidiâ, considere in agris que  
 induced by greed, to settle in the fields and

civitatibus horum, quos cognoverunt famâ  
 states of these (those) whom they have learned by report

(are) nobiles que potentes bello, atque his  
 noble and powerful in war, and on these

injungere æternam servitutem? Neque enim  
 impose perpetual slavery? Nor even

unquam gesserunt bella aliâ conditione. Quodd  
 have they ever waged war on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ěa quæ geruntur in  
if you know not those things which are carried on in:

longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,  
distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,

quæ redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus  
which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws

commutatis, subjecta securi-  
(having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-

bus premitur perpetuâ servitute!"  
tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut  
The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that

qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello  
(those) who by sickness, or age are useless for war

excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,  
should leave the town, and all things should be tried,

prius quàm descendant ad sententiam  
before (that) they descend to the recommendation

Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, is res  
of Critognatus; however to use his advice, if the case

cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potiùs quàm  
compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)

conditionem deditiois aut pacis subeundam.  
a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured.

Mandubii, qui recepĕrant ěos oppido coguntur  
The Mandubii, who had received them in the town were forced

exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi  
to depart with the children and wives. These

quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,  
when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans,

fientes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-  
weeping were praying with all entreaties, that having been

tos in servitatem, juvarent cibo.  
received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food.

Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,  
These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart,

prohibebat recipi.  
was refusing to be received.

79. Interea Comius, et reliqui duces,  
 In the mean time Commius, and the other leaders,  
 quibus summa imperii permissa erant, perveniunt  
 to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive  
 ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore  
 at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer  
 colle occupato, consistunt non longiùs  
 hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)  
 mille passibus à nostris munitionibus. Postero  
 a thousand paces from our fortifications. The next  
 die, equitatu e ducto ex castris,  
 day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,  
 complent omnem eam planitiem, quam demonstravimus  
 they fill all this plain, which we have shown  
 patere tria millia passuum in longitudinem;  
 to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length;  
 que constituunt pedestres copias paulum ab eò  
 and they station the foot soldiers a little from this  
 loco, abditas in superioribus locis (pl.). Erat  
 place, removed on higher ground. There was  
 despectus ex oppido Alesiâ in campum.  
 a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.  
 His auxiliis visis, concurritur,  
 These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together  
 gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi  
 congratulations are made among them, and the souls  
 omnium excitantur ad lætitiàm. Itaque, copiis  
 of all are excited to joy Therefore, (their) forces  
 productis ante oppidum, consistunt et  
 having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and  
 integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent  
 cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)  
 aggere, que comparant se ad eruptionem,  
 with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally,  
 atque omnes casus.  
 and all chances.

80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad  
 Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at



utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus  
 both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need  
 veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,  
 came, each might know and keep his own place,  
 jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et  
 orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and  
 committi prælium. Erat despectus ex omnibus  
 to join battle. There was a view from all  
 castris, quæ undique tenebant summum  
 the camp, which everywhere was holding the highest  
 jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti  
 ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers absorbed  
 exspectabant eventum pugnae. Galli  
 were anticipating the issue of the battle. The Gauls  
 interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,  
 had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,  
 que expeditos levis armaturæ,<sup>55</sup> qui succurrent  
 and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor  
 auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinerent  
 by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold  
 impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures  
 the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)  
 vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant  
 wounded unexpectedly by these were withdrawing  
 prælio. Quum Galli confidèrent suos  
 from the battle. When the Gauls were trusting (that) their  
 esse superiores pugna, et vidèrent  
 (men) were superior in the fight, and were seeing  
 nostros premi multitudine; ex om-  
 our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng, from [on]  
 nibus partibus, et ïi qui continebantur  
 all parts [sides], both those who were retained  
 munitionibus, et ïi qui convenerant ad  
 within the fortifications, and those who had come for  
 auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore  
 aid, were encouraging the souls of their men by a shout  
 et ululatu. Quòd res gerebatur in conspectu  
 and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum rectè ac<sup>56</sup>  
of all, neither (a thing) done rightly [nobly] and [nor]

turpiter potèrat celari, et cupiditas laudis,  
shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise.

et timor ignominiaè excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad  
and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to

virtutem. Quum pugnaretur à meridie  
valor. When it was [they] fought from noon

propè ad occasum solis dubiâ victoriâ,  
nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,

Germani in unâ parte confertis turmis fecerunt  
the Germans on one side in compact troops made

impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.  
an attack on the enemy, and routed them.

Quibus conjectis in fugam,  
Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,

sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item  
the archers were surrounded and slain. Also

ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti  
in other quarters our men followed (those)

cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt  
retreating even to the camp, (and) gave

non facultatem colligendi sui. At  
no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But

ïi, qui processerant ab Alesia, victoriâ  
those, who had come from Alesia, the victory

propè desperatâ, receperunt se  
nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves

mœsti, in oppidum.  
sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hœc spatio  
One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numëro cratium, scalarum, harpagonum  
a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediâ nocte, silentio,  
having been made, the Gauls, at mid night, (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad  
having marched from (their) camp approach to

**campestres**                      **munitiones.**                      **Subito**                      **clamore**  
the field [outside]                      fortifications.                      A sudden                      shout  
  
**sublato,**                      **quâ**                      **significatione,**                      **qui**  
having been raised,                      by which                      signal,                      (those)                      who  
**obsidebantur**                      **in oppido,**                      **possent cognoscere**                      **de**  
were besieged                      in the town,                      might                      know                      of  
  
**suo adventu,**                      **projicere**                      **crates**                      **deturbare**  
their arrival,                      (they) (to) throw out                      the hurdles,                      force  
  
**nostros de vallo fundis,**                      **sugittis**                      **lapidibus,**  
our men from the rampart by slings,                      arrows (and)                      stones,  
  
**que administrare reliqua**                      **quæ pertinent ad**  
and (to) perform                      the other things which belong to  
  
**oppugnationem.**                      **Eodem**                      **tempore,**                      **clamore**  
an assault.                      At the same                      time,                      the shout  
  
**exaudito,**                      **Vercingetorix**                      **dat signum**                      **suis**  
having been heard,                      Vercingetorix                      gives the signal                      to his men  
  
**tubâ,**                      **atque educit**                      **ex oppido.**  
by the trumpet,                      and leads (them forth)                      from the town  
  
**Nostri, ut superioribus diebus,**                      **suas locus**  
Our men, as on the former days,                      his place (having  
  
**attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;**  
been) assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications;  
  
**perterrant Gallos fundis libralibus<sup>57</sup> que**  
they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and  
  
**sudibus, quas disposuerant in opère, ac**  
stakes, which they had placed in the works, and  
  
**glandibus. Prospectu**                      **adempto tenebris,**  
by lead bullets                      The view (having been) prevented by darkness,  
  
**multa vulnera accipiuntur utrimque, complura**  
many wounds are received on both sides,                      numerous  
  
**tela conjiciuntur tormentis. At M. Antonius,<sup>58</sup>**  
weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,  
  
**et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus hæc partes**  
and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts  
  
**obveniant ad defendendum, ex quâ**  
had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]  
  
**parte intellexerunt nostros premi,**  
side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed,

submittebant    iis    auxilio    deductos    ex  
 they sent    to them    for [as] aid    (those) drawn [led] out    from  
 ulterioribus    castellis.  
 the more remote    fortresses.

82. Dum    Galli    aberant    longiùs    ab  
 While    the Gauls    were distant    rather far    from  
 munitione,    proficiebant,    plus    multitudine  
 the fortifications,    they were accomplishing,    more    by the multitude  
 telorum;    posteaquàm    successerunt    propiùs,  
 [mass]    of weapons;    after    they approached    nearer,  
 aut    ipsi    inopinantes    induebant    se    stimulis,  
 either    they    unawares    were impaling    themselves    on the spurs,  
 aut    delapsi    in    scrobes    transfodiebantur,    aut  
 or    having fallen    into    the pits    were transfixed,    or  
 interibant    transjecti    muralibus    pilis    ex  
 were perishing    pierced    by the wall    javelins (thrown) from  
 vallo    et    turribus.    Multis    vulneribus    accep-  
 the rampart    and    towers.    Many    wounds    having  
 tis    undique,    nullâ    munitione    perruptâ,  
 been received    on all sides,    no    fortification    having been forced,  
 quum    lux    appeteret,    veriti    ne  
 when    (day) light    was approaching,    having feared    lest  
 circumvenirentur    ab    aperto    latère,    eruptione  
 they might be surrounded    on    the exposed    flank,    by a sally  
 ex    superioribus    castris,    receperunt    se    ad    suos.  
 from    the higher    camp,    they retreated    to    their (people).

At    interiores,    dum    proferunt    ea  
 But    those within    (the town),    while    they bring out    these things  
 quæ    præparata    erant    Vercingetorige    ad  
 which    had been    prepared    by Vercingetorix    for  
 eruptionem,    explent    priores    fossas;    morati  
 the sally,    fill up    the first    ditches;    having been delayed  
 diutius    in    administrandis    iis    rebus,    cogno-  
 rather long    in    performing    these    things,    they  
 verunt    suos    discessisse    priùs    quàm  
 learned    (that)    their men    had withdrawn    before    (that)  
 appropinquant    munitiõibus.    Ita,    re  
 they had got near    (to)    the fortifications.    Thus,    the thing

infectâ, reverterunt in  
 [design] having been unaccomplished, they returned into  
 oppidum.  
 the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno  
 The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great  
 detremento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent  
 loss, consult what they should do. They admit

peritos locorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab  
 (those) acquainted with the locality. They learn from

his situs superiorum castrorum que  
 these the position of the higher camp and

munitiones. Erat collis à septentrionibus,  
 the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,

quem<sup>59</sup> quia non potuerant circumplecti opere,  
 which because they could not enclose in the works,

propter magnitudinem circuitûs, nostri pænè  
 on account of the greatness of the circuit, our men almost

necessariò fecerunt castra iniquo loco,  
 necessarily pitched (their) camp in an unfavorable place,

et leniter declivi. C. Antistius Reginus, et  
 and gently descending. C. Antistius Reginus, and

C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc  
 C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this

cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitis  
 with two legions. The country having been explored

per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt  
 by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select

sexaginta millia ex omni numero earum  
 sixty thousand from all the number of those

civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem  
 states. which have the greatest reputation

virtutis; occultè constituunt inter se, quid,  
 of [for] bravery; secretly they arrange among themselves, what,

que quo pacto placet agi.  
 and in what manner it pleases (them) to be done [to take action].

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur  
 They determine the time of advancing when it may seem



esse meridies. Præficiunt iis copias  
to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunus Arvernum, unum ex  
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quatuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille  
the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primâ vigiliâ itinere  
having departed from the camp on the first watch the march

confecto propè sub lucem, occultavit  
having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites  
himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficere sese ex nocturno labore. Quum  
to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam meridies videretur appropinquare, contendit  
now noon was seeming to draw near, he marched

ad hæc castra, quæ demonstravimus suprâ, que  
to this camp, which we have mentioned above, and

eodem tempore equitatus cœperunt accedere  
at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestras munitiones, et reliquæ  
to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendere sese pro castris.  
forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex  
Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesia, egreditur ex oppido, profert  
the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, he brings forth

è castris longurios, musculos, falces, que  
from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causâ eruptionis.  
other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur<sup>60</sup> uno tempore, omnibus locis, atque  
It was fought at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minimè  
all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurritur. Manus Romanorum  
strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinctur tantis munitionibus ne facilè  
is extended in so great fortifications that not easily

occurrit pluribus locis. Clamor, qui exstitit  
it opposed in many places. The din, that arose

post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multùm ad  
in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for

terrendo nostros, quòd vident suum  
alarming our men, because they see (that) their

periculum consistere in virtute alienâ. Enim  
peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For

plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant  
generally all things which are absent alarm

mentes hominum vehementiùs.  
the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum locum, cognoscit  
Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns

quid geratur in quâque parte, submittit  
what is done in every part, he sends (a'nd)

laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,  
(to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each,

illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat  
(that) that was the one time, in which it was fitting

maximè contendi.<sup>61</sup> Galli, nisi  
to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless

perfregèrint munitiones, desperant de omni  
they break through the fortifications, despair of all

salute. Romani, si obtinuèrint rem  
safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]

expectant finem omnium laborum. Maximè  
expect an end of all (their) labor. Especially

laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quòd  
it was [they] struggled at the higher fortifications, where

demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.  
we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.

Exiguum fastigium loci ad declivitatem,  
The small elevation of the place with the slope,

habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiiciunt tela,  
has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factâ, subeunt, integri  
 others a testudo having been made advance, fresh men

succedunt defatigatis invicem. Agger conjectus  
 relieved the wearied by turns. The materials thrown

ab universis in munitionem, et dat (sing.)  
 by all against the fortifications, both give

adscensum Gallis, et contegit (sing.) quæ  
 an ascent to the Gauls, and cover what

Romani occultaverant in terram. Nec jam  
 the Romans had concealed in the ground. Neither now

arma, nec vires suppetunt nostris.  
 arms, nor strength suffice for our men.

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit  
 These things having been known. Cæsar sends

Labienum cum sex cohortibus laborantibus  
 Labienus with six cohorts (to those) struggling

subsidio. Imperat, si possit non  
 for [as] aid He commands (him), if he could not

sustinere, cohortibus deductis, pugnaret  
 withstand, the cohorts having been drawn [led] out. he should fight

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessariò.  
 in a sally; not [nor] do this, unless necessarily.

Ipsè adit reliquos; cohortatur ne  
 He goes to the rest; he exhorts (them) that they should not

succumbant labori; docet fructum omnium  
 succumb to the work; he shows (that) the fruit of all

superiorum dimicationum consistere in ðo  
 (their) former battles depended on this

die atque horâ. Interiores campestribus  
 day and hour Those within [The besieged] the level

lõcis desperatis, propter magnitudinem  
 places having been despaired of, on account of the size

munitionum, tentant lõca prærupta ex  
 of the fortifications, attempt the places steep in

adscensu; hũc conferunt ða quæ para-  
 ascent; here they bring those things which they had

vërant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus  
 prepared, they drive back the defenders from the towers

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggere  
 by the multitude of weapons; they fill up the trenches with earth  
 et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt  
 and fascines they prepare an approach; they tear down  
 vallum ac lorïcam falcibus.  
 the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primò mittit Brutum, adolescentem,  
 Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,  
 cum sex cohortibus, pòst Fabium legatum cum  
 with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with  
 septem aliis. Postremò ipse, quum pugnaretur<sup>62</sup>  
 seven others. At length he himself, when it is fought  
 vehementiùs, adducit intergos subsidio.  
 more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prælio restituto, ac hostibus repul-  
 The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been  
 sis, contendit èd quò miserat Labienum;  
 repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quatuor cohortes ex proximo castello;  
 he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem  
 he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri  
 to go around the other fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquam  
 the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinere  
 neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus  
 the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proximis  
 having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præsiidiis, sors obtulit; fecit certiore Cæsarem,  
 posts, chance offered; he informs Cæsar,

per nuncios quid existimet faciendum. Cæsar  
 by messengers what he thought must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prælio.  
 hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colore\*  
 His arrival having been known from the color  
 vestitûs, (quo insigni consueverat uti  
 of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use  
 in prœliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus  
 in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts  
 visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de  
 having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from  
 superioribus locis hæc declivia et devexa  
 the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)  
 cernebantur, hostes committunt prœlium. Clamore  
 were beheld, the enemy join battle. A shout  
 sublato utrinque, clamor rursus excipit  
 having been raised on both sides, a shout is again received  
 ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.  
 [heard] from the rampart and all the fortifications.  
 Nostri pilis omissis, gerunt  
 Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on  
 rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repente cernitur  
 the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen  
 post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant;  
 in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;  
 hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt  
 the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet  
 fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius  
 (those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius  
 dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;  
 general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;  
 Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus  
 Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive  
 in fugâ; septuaginta quatuor militaria signa  
 in flight; seventy four military standards  
 referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto  
 are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great  
 numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati  
 a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld  
 ex oppido cædem et fugam suorum,  
 from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people),  
 \* white.



salute desperatâ, reducunt copias  
 safety having been despaired of, they lead back (their) forces

à munitionibus. Hâc re auditâ  
 from the fortifications. This action having been heard

fuga protinus fit, ex castris Gallorum;  
 a flight immediately is made, from the camp of the Gauls;

quod nisi milites fuissent defessi  
 as to [regarding] which [this] unless the soldiers had been fatigued

crebris subsidiis ac labore totius  
 by the frequent reinforcements and by the labor of the whole

diei, omnes copiæ hostium potuissent deleri.  
 day, all the forces of the enemy would have been destroyed.

De mediâ nocte, equitatus missus consequitur  
 About mid night, the cavalry having been sent overtakes

novissimum agmen. Magnus numerus capitur,  
 the rear line. A great number are taken,

atque interficitur; reliqui discedunt ex fugâ  
 and killed; the rest escape from the flight [rout]

in civitates.  
 into their states.

89. Postero die, concilio convocato,  
 On the next day, a council having been called,

Vercingetorix demonstrat se suscepisse  
 Vercingetorix shows (that) he had undertaken

bellum non causâ suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed  
 the war not for the sake of his own necessity, but

communis libertatis, et quoniam sit  
 of (their) common liberty, and because it must

cedendum fortunæ, offere se illis  
 be yielded to fortune, (that he) offered himself to them

ad utramque rem, seu velint  
 for either thing [alternative], whether they wished

satisfacere Romanis suâ morte, seu tradere  
 to satisfy the Romans by his death, or to surrender

vivum. Legati mittuntur ad Cæsarem  
 (him) alive. Ambassadors are sent to Cæsar

de his rebus. Jubet arma  
 concerning these things. He orders (their) arms

tradi, principes roduci. Ipse  
to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He

consedit in munitione pro castris; èdò  
seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there

principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;  
the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered

arma projiciuntur. Æduis atque Arvernīs  
the arms are thrown down. The Ædui and Arverni

reservatis, si per eos posset recuperare  
having been reserved, if through them he could gain over

civitates; ex reliquis captivis distribuit  
(their) states; from the remaining captives he distributed

singula capita toto exercitu nomīne  
one each in the whole army under the name

prædæ.  
of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur  
These things having been accomplished, he marches

in Æduos; recipit civitatem. Èdò  
into the Ædui; he receives the state. Thither

legati ab Arvernīs missi pollicentur  
ambassadors from the Arverni having been sent they promise

se facturos, quæ imperaret. Imperat  
(that) they would do, what he might command. He orders

magnum numerum obsīdum. Mittit legiones in  
a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into

hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia  
winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand

captivorum Æduis que Arvernīs. Jubet  
(of) prisoners to the Ædui and Arverni. He orders

T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum  
T. Labienus to march into the Sequani with

duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit  
two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns

M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium  
M. Sempronius Rutilus; He places C. Fabius

et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum  
(and) L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus two	legionibus, legions,	ne lest	accipiant they might receive	quam any
calamitatem injury	à from	finitimis the neighboring	Bellovacis. Bellovaci.	Mittit He sends
C. Antistium C. Antistius	Reginum Reginus	in among	Ambivaretos, the Ambivareti,	
T. Sextium T. Sextius	in among	Bituriges, the Bituriges,	C. Caninum C. Caninus	Rebilum Rebilus
in among	Rutenos, the Ruteni,	cum with	legionibus a legion	singulis; each,
collocat he stations				
Q. Tullium Q. Tullius	Ciceronem, Cicero,	et and	P. Sulpicium P. Sulpicius	Cabiloni at Cabilo
et and	Matiscone Matisco	ad on [near]	Ararim the (river) Saone	in among
				the Ædúi
causâ for the purpose	frumentariæ rei; of the corn supply,	ipse he himself	constituit determines	
hiemare to winter	Bibracte. at Bibracte.	His These	rebus things	cognitis having been learned
litteris by letters	Cæsarís of Cæsar	Romæ, at Rome,	supplicatio a thanksgiving	viginti of twenty
dierum days	indicitur. is decreed.			

## NOTES

## FIRST BOOK

PAGE 1—1 Latin order: - *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgæ*, Lit., Gaul is all divided into parts three; of which one inhabit Belgæ.

PAGE 2—2 *eorum* i. e. the Germans. *eorum* in the next sentence refers to the Celts or Gauls, *tertiam*, above. 3 Meaning, on the same side of the river, i. e. west side. 4 The country slopes to the north.

PAGE 3—5 Dative after verb of persuading, used as direct object. 6 on one side, the Rhine a river very wide and very deep—on the other side the Jura (St. Cloude) a very lofty mountain—on the third side by Lake Geneva and the river Rhone.

PAGE 4—7 Other text: - *qua ex parte*, and for this reason. 8 they were considering that they had narrow territories in consideration of the multitude of men, the glory of war and their bravery. 9 to make as great sowings as possible. 10 they decided two years' time would be sufficient to them for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 5—11 Orgetorix is chosen for executing these things. 12 Whose father had held sway among the Sequani many years.

PAGE 6—13 he assures (them) that he himself is about to secure the kingdom for them with his resources and his army 14 they hope that they may be able to get possession of all Gaul. 15 and brought together to the same place all his clients and debt bondsmen of whom he was having a great number; through whom he rescued himself from pleading his cause.

PAGE 7—16 nor is suspicion wanting as the Helvetians think, that he had committed suicide 17 they might be more prepared for undergoing all dangers.

PAGE 8—18 Literally, and they vote in the Boii, admitted to themselves, as their (*sibi*) allies. In English a double verb construction would be used, not the participle they take the Boii into their own number (*ad se*) and vote them in as allies. 19 They were thinking that they (*sese*) either would persuade the Allobroges because they were seeming to be not yet in good feeling toward the Roman people, or would compel by force to suffer them to go through their territories.

PAGE 9—20 by journeys as great as he was able.

PAGE 10—21 to ask that it may be allowed them to do this with his good will [permission] 22 Because Cæsar was holding in memory that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain (supply *esse* with *occisum*) and his army had been routed (supply *esse*) by the Helvetians and sent under the yoke, he was considering that it must not be granted, nor was he thinking that men of hostile spirit, an opportunity of making a way through the province having been given, would refrain from injury and damage. 23 that he himself was about to take a day for deliberating,—

PAGE 11—24 nineteen thousand paces i. e. nineteen Roman miles about seventeen and one half English miles. The work actually represented five short spans the remaining distance being naturally protected somewhat by bluffs and ravines 25 he denies that according to the custom and example of the Roman people he is able to grant a way to any through the province; and if they attempt to employ force he shows that he would prevent them (supply *esse* with *prohibiturum*) 26 Lit. :- ships having been joined and rafts having been made i. e. when ships had been joined together and rafts made,— 27 where the depth of the river was least.

PAGE 12—28 because he had taken in marriage,— 29 and induced by a desire (lit., greed) for the throne, he was zealous for a revolution and was wishing to have as many states as possible attached to him by his beneficence.

PAGE 13—30 and where the route was the nearest into farther Gaul,—

PAGE 14—31 and were ravaging their lands. 32 their children led off into captivity,—

PAGE 15—33 now that their fields are devastated they are



not easily checking the violence of the enemy from the towns **34** and show that there is nothing left to them besides the soil of the land.

PAGE 16—**35** When Cæsar had been informed by scouts that the Helvetians had already led over this river three parts of their forces but that the fourth part had been left,— —

PAGE 17—**36** he takes care that a bridge should be made on the Saone **37** when they were understanding that he had done in one day,— —

PAGE 21—**37a** and from the Ædui and from their allies

PAGE 22—**38** Meantime Cæsar daily demands from the Ædui the grain — *Flagitare* is a historical infinitive used as a finite tense **39** The emphasized word or phrase stands between *ne* and *quidem* and *quidem* throws its force back upon the emphasized term. **40** The Ædui put him off from day to day (and) say that it is being gathered, that it is being brought, that it is at hand.—*ducere* and *dicere* are historical infinitives.

PAGE 23—**41** their chiefs have been called together — — **42** especially when in a great degree (lit., from a great part) he induced by their prayers had undertaken the war. **43** that there are some whose authority avails very much among the common people.

PAGE 25—**44** he had both increased his family estate i. e. his clanship, and provided great means for — —

PAGE 26—**45** and for the sake of this power he had married his mother among the Bituriges to a man there, most noble and most powerful, he himself had a wife from the Helvetians, he had given his sister on his mother's side and his kinswomen in marriage into other states. That he favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance, that he hates (*odisse*, perfect with present sense) Cæsar and the Romans by his own right (lit., name) because his power had been diminished by their arrival **45a** He favors and wishes well to the Helvetians on account of this alliance; also he hated Cæsar and the Romans on his own account (lit., from his own name) because his power (lit, the power of him) had been diminished by their arrival (lit., by the arrival of them), and Divitiacus, his brother, restored into the ancient place of favor and honor: if anything may happen to the Romans, he

entertains the highest hope of obtaining the Kingdom through the Helvetians. **46** he entertains the highest hope of obtaining the throne through the Helvetians if anything happens to the Romans. **47** he not only despairs of the throne.

PAGE 27—**48** since the most certain facts were substantiating these suspicions — — **49** he was deeming that there was enough cause why (wherefore) either he himself should punish him (lit., attend to him) or should order the state to punish him.

PAGE 28—**50** that he himself knows that these things are true nor does anyone take more grief from this thing than himself

PAGE 29—**51** which means and strength he was using not only for diminishing his (Divitiacus') influence but almost for his destruction. **52** from which thing it would come to pass that — —

PAGE 30—**53** he warns him to avoid all suspicions — — **54** he says that he himself forgives the past (offences) for (the sake of) his brother Divitiacus.

PAGE 31—**55** It was reported that it was easy. **56** At early dawn when the mountain summit (lit., highest) is held by Titus Labienus — —

PAGE 33—**57** This movement (lit., thing) is reported to the enemy by fugitives from Lucius Æmilius, captain of the Gallic horse, — — **58** or because they were trusting that our men could be cut off from the grain supply.

PAGE 35—**59** It was a great disadvantage to the Gauls in the battle.....nor since the left hand was hampered to fight conveniently enough.....and to fight with unprotected person (i. e., the body unshielded, lit., naked).

PAGE 36—**60** having assailed our men upon the march on (the exposed flank began) to surround (them). **61** So the fighting continued in a doubtful battle long and fiercely. **62** no one could see a routed enemy.

PAGE 37—**63** When the fighting had continued a long time our men got possession of the baggage and the camp. **64** and if they (lit., if who) should assist them he would hold them in the same light (or, position - *locus*) as (*quo*) the Helvetians.

PAGE 38—**65** Some texts have: *legatos de ditione ad eum miserunt* -sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender.

PAGE 39—66 they were thinking that their flight would be either concealed or overlooked altogether,— — 67 When Cæsar discovered (other readings: *resciit*) this (lit., which) he ordered those through whose territories they had gone — 68 if they were wishing to be exculpated toward himself i. e. in his eyes. 69 When they were brought back he held them in the class of enemies i. e. they were either sold into slavery or more probably put to death. 70 because he was unwilling that this place whence the Helvetians had departed should be unoccupied

PAGE 40—71 and they afterwards received them into an equal estate of law and liberty as were they themselves.

PAGE 41—72 ambassadors of almost all Gaul, chiefs of the states, assembled for congratulating Cæsar.

PAGE 43—73 Divitiacus the Æduan spoke for these (saying that) there are two factions of all Gaul, that the Æduans hold the chieftaincy of one, of the other the Averni.

PAGE 44—74 The Ædui and their clients time and again have contended— — 75 nor would refuse that they should be forever under their sway and empire (lit., sway and empire of them)

PAGE 45—76 because Ariovistus king of the Germans had settled in their territories (lit., borders)— — 77 We would compare the worse with the better and would say in English: for neither is the German land to be mentioned with the Gallic— —

PAGE 46—78 if anything is not done at his nod and will— — 79 his demands (lit., commands) cannot be endured longer. Unless there may be some aid in Cæsar or the Roman people, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls— — 80 there is no doubt (lit., he not to doubt).

PAGE 47—81 This speech having been delivered by Divitiacus — —

PAGE 49—82 That the Germans moreover were accustomed little by little to cross the Rhine and that a great multitude of them came into Gaul, he was seeing was a perilous thing to the Roman people, nor was he judging that wild and barbarous men, when they had occupied all Gaul as the Cimbri and Teutones had done, would restrain themselves before— — 83 he was thinking he must meet these things (lit., which things) as early as possible

PAGE 50—84 had taken upon himself so many airs (so great insolence) that it seemed he must not be borne. 85 if anything was needful to him from Cæsar, he would have come to him 86 nor could he gather an army into one place without great provisions and trouble, moreover it seemed wonderful to himself — —

PAGE 51—87 that he should, though invited, be averse to come into a conference nor should think that he must not speak nor learn concerning a common matter, these are the things which he was demanding from him, that — — 88 that it should be granted to the Sequani that it should be allowed with his consent to return to them (the Ædui) those whom they were holding — —

PAGE 53—89 if he was not dictating to the Roman people in what manner it should use its right, it was not proper that he himself should be hindered by the Roman people in his right 90 he himself would not return the hostages to the Ædui, nor would he bring war with damage upon them nor upon their allies if they would abide by that (lit., remain in that) which had been agreed upon and would pay (lit., weigh out) the tribute yearly, if they would not do this the fraternal name of the Roman people would be far away from them.

PAGE 54—91 were ravaging their territories, they could not purchase peace of Ariovistus when even hostages had been given 92 judged that he must hasten, lest if the new hand —.

PAGE 55—93 it could be less easily opposed 94 when he had gone a three days' course — — 95 that Ariovistus with all his troops was hastening to seize Vesontio (lit., for occupying Vesontio) 96 which were of use for war 97 for prolonging the war.

PAGE 56—98 so that the foot (lit., roots) of this mountain touches the bank of the river on either hand (lit., each part. i. e. the entire intervening space) 99 hither Cæsar hastens by forced marches day and night. 100 for the sake of grain and provisions 101 that they themselves having oftentimes encountered them were not able to bear even their looks, and — —

PAGE 57—102 one of whom for one cause, another for another having reported what he was declaring was necessary to



him for setting out, was asking that it might be allowed him to depart with his consent — — **103** to avoid the suspicion of fear, were remaining. **104** (Those) of them who were wishing that they might be thought less fearful were saying that they did not dread the enemy but feared the straits of the way ....or the matter of corn that it could not be transported conveniently enough.

PAGE 58—**105** that the soldiers would not be obedient to the command nor would bear the standard on account of fear. **106** because they were thinking it should be inquired or considered into what part

PAGE 59—**107** Indeed he himself was persuaded that when his demands were known and the fairness of the conditions perceived he would reject neither — — **108** was seeming to have deserved not less praise than the commander himself. (Supply *esse* with *meritus*). **109** in the slave uprising — —. Many of the slaves were German captives taken by Marius **110** From which it can be judged how much good firmness was having in itself....by this (trickery) (.....) not even he himself expected our army could be taken.

PAGE 61—**111** upon the pretence of the grain supply and the straits of the ways did this officiously **112** These things were his care. **113** that it is said (translate *dicantur* as if singular) that they are not going to be obedient to the command and are not going to bear the standard, he himself is disturbed in nowise by this thing, for he knew that to whomsoever an army has been disobedient at the command — —

PAGE 62—**114** his own integrity in his life throughout — —

PAGE 63—**115** and the highest alertness and eagerness for waging war was incited **116** and assured (him) that it was most prepared for waging war. **117** Their apology (lit., satisfaction) having been received and the way having been reconnoitered by Divitiacus **118** he was informed — —

PAGE 64—**119** and he was thinking he could do this without danger. Cæsar did not reject the terms. **120** and thought he had now returned to reason **121** it would transpire (fore) that he would cease from his obstinacy

PAGE 65—**122** in another manner he himself would not come.



PAGE 66—123 now he enrolls it among the horse (lit., to the horse) i. e. makes them “*equites*,” horsemen or knights. 124 When they had come there.

PAGE 67—125 were existing between them and the Ædui.

PAGE 69—126 that he himself had not inflicted war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon himself 127 he himself did this for the sake of protecting himself and not of assailing the Gauls.

PAGE 70—128 that he did not come except as he was asked and that he did not wage war but had defended himself. 129 Never before this time had an army of the Roman people gone out of the borders of the province of Gaul.

PAGE 71—130 He ought to be suspicious (*susplicari*, passive voice) that while friendship is feigned, because Cæsar had an army in Gaul, he has it for the sake of crushing him. 131 that if he should kill him he himself would be doing a grateful thing — — 132 that he himself has this, an ascertained fact, from themselves through their messengers.

PAGE 72—133 allies who have deserved the best, nor does he himself judge that Gaul is rather the possession — — 134 but if it is proper that the most ancient time in detail (lit., each most ancient time) be regarded — —

PAGE 73—135 approached nearer the hillock and rode up to our men, threw stones and weapons against our men — — 136 yet he was thinking it must not be permitted that, the enemy having been repulsed, it could be said they had been tricked by himself treacherously (lit., contrary to faith) in a conference 137 the arrogance that Ariovistus had used in the conference and that he had interdicted — —

PAGE 74—138 It did not seem to Cæsar that there was a cause for conferring, and so much the more that — —

PAGE 75 139 and because the Germans had in him no cause of transgressing (lit., because there was not cause to the Germans of transgressing in him) — — 140 But when Ariovistus had beheld them — — (*Quos*, whom, translate, But . . . them).

PAGE 76—141 were brought (*supportaretur* is singular, the English idiom requires the plural number) 142 the opportunity might not be lacking to him 143 in cavalry battle

PAGE 77—144 if they must advance farther or retire more quickly anywhere.

PAGE 79—145 to assault the lesser camp. There was fighting sharply on both sides until towards evening 147 that they reported (*dicere*) thus: “it is not permitted (was,— the divine law, or fate) that the Germans shall conquer, if they should join in battle before the new moon.” 148 because he was less powerful in the mass (lit., multitude) of legionary soldiers as compared with the number of the enemy.

PAGE 80—149 *Cæsar* appointed lieutenants one each and a questor (quartermaster) for the several legions

PAGE 81—150 The javelins thrown aside the fighting went hand to hand with swords. 151 because he was more free to act (lit., more unencumbered) than those who were involved in the battle-line he sent as a reinforcement the third battle-line to our toiling men

PAGE 82—152 The term, woman, is inserted to show the gender of *una* and *Suera*.

PAGE 84—153 and the Ubii who dwell nearest the Rhine having pursued them panic-stricken — — To follow the English idiom render *quos* by a connective and relative as if it were *et quæ eos*.

## SECOND BOOK

PAGE 85—1 also he was informed by the letters of Labienus that all the Belgæ..... were conspiring..... and were giving hostages among themselves. That these were the causes of conspiring — —

PAGE 86—2 who were having means for mustering men. 3 he himself as soon as there was beginning to be plenty of forage came to the army.

PAGE 87—4 that they ascertain these things that are transpiring among the latter (lit., them) and inform him concerning these matters 5 then indeed he judged that he must not hesitate to set out to them (lit., that it must not be hesitated but that — —) 6 that they entrust themselves and their all to the good faith and power of the Roman people.

PAGE 88—7 that they could not intimidate (lit., restrain by

fear) even the Suessiones ..... from intriguing (lit., but that they should intrigue. Or, from conniving) with these.

PAGE 89—8 and that it was they alone who in the memory of our fathers when all Gaul was harassed, checked the Teutones and Cimbri from entering within their territories. 9 The Bellovaci were the most powerful among them.

PAGE 91—10 and having dismissed them (lit., followed, took leave of) generously in an address — 11 lest he must come to blows (lit., it must be combatted) at one time with so great a multitude

PAGE 92—12 he dismisses him from his presence (lit., from himself). 13 nor now were far distant.

PAGE 93—14 For when so great a multitude were hurling stones and weapons, there was an opportunity for no one of standing on the walls.

PAGE 95—15 favorable and suitable for drawing up the battle-line.

PAGE 96—16 *subsido*, lit. for a relief.

PAGE 97—17 *illis*, those (forces) i. e. the enemy. 18 *contendebatur*, lit. it was contended. 19 for carrying on the war. 20 and were cutting off our (men) from supplies. Other reading: -*que sustenebant nostros commeatu* - and were sustaining our (men) with provisions. 21 light armed Numidians

PAGE 98—22 There was sharp fighting in that place 23 when they understood that they had deceived themselves in the hope both of storming the town and of crossing the river, — 24 for defending those into whose borders — —

PAGE 99—25 were approaching the borders — — 26 It was not possible to persuade these to delay longer and not to bring aid to their (countrymen) 27 had not yet seen clearly 28 at daybreak

PAGE 100—29 to whom they came 30 as the period of the day permitted

PAGE 101—31 he was not able to storm it 32 although few were defending. 33 of use for storming

PAGE 102—34 they bring it to pass (lit., obtain) that they shall be preserved. 35 the chiefs of the state and two sons — — Cæsar received the Suessiones into surrender 36 and signify

by voice that they come into his protection and power and are not contending in arms against the Roman people.

PAGE 103—37 (saying) the Belovæi for all time had been in the confidence — — that they had been impelled by their chiefs who had said that the Ædui were reduced to slavery by Cæsar and bore all indignities and affronts; (saying) that they had both revolted from the Ædui and had waged war against the Roman people.

PAGE 104—38 support themselves if any wars have arisen

PAGE 105—39 there was no approach for merchants to them; that they suffered no wine and other things tending to luxury to be imported, because they judged their minds were enfeebled and their valor diminished by these things; that the men were fierce and of great valor — — that they chided and blamed the remaining Belgians — — that they affirmed that they would neither send ambassadors nor would receive any conditions of peace.

PAGE 106—40 Dative after *persuadeo*. 41 there might not be access for an army

PAGE 107—42 nor was there any difficulty when the first legion had come into camp 43 it would come to pass that the remaining legions would not dare to take stand in opposition.

PAGE 108—44 into which it was not possible not only to make entrance (pass. voice) but even to be seen through. 45 so that it was possible to get sight (pass. voice) within.

PAGE 109—46 For, because Cæsar was approaching the enemy according to his custom he was leading six legions light armed 47 nor were our (men) daring to follow those yielding farther than to the limit which the extended and open places were reaching; the six legions meantime — —

PAGE 110—48 and encouraged themselves

PAGE 111—49 those who had advanced rather far for the sake of mound material must be summoned

PAGE 112—50 for the sake of exhorting the soldiers 51 he gave the signal for joining battle 52 and so prepared the mind of the enemy for fighting that time failed not only for putting on the badges but even for donning the helmet and drawing off the coverings from the shields



PAGE 113—53 since some legions in one position others in another were resting the enemy in various places and as very dense hedges were interposing, as we have shown before, the view was intercepted and neither were sure reserves able to be placed nor what might be useful in each position before seen nor all the commands given by one (person)

PAGE 114—54 They did not hesitate to cross the river 55 the Veromandui having been routed with whom they had joined (battle). were fighting from the higher ground on the very banks of the river

PAGE 115—56 and some panicstricken were borne in one direction, others in another 57 they announced to the state that the Romans had been routed and overcome; that the enemy possessed their camp and baggage — With *pulsos, superatos* and *potitos* supply *esse*, after verbs of saying.

PAGE 117—58 and that they (the enemy) pressed on from either flank and that the case was in a crisis, and that there was no reinforcement which could be sent up

PAGE 118—59 Hope being infused in the soldiers by his coming and their spirit restored, since each one was desiring to do his best for himself in the sight of the General, even in his extreme dangers. the attack of the enemy was checked a little. 60 and should direct against the enemy the standards turned about — i. e. right and left face. 61 when some were bringing aid to some, others to others — —

PAGE 119—62 they left nothing undone for themselves as regards speed

PAGE 120—63 these dead bodies having been thrown down and heaped up 64 so that it ought to be considered that not without reason (i. e. with hope of success) men of so great valor — —

PAGE 121—65 and in recounting the calamity of the state they said that they themselves were reduced

PAGE 122—66 *esse* understood with *usus*. 67 Since this (town) on all sides *esse* in its circumference had very high rocks and outlooks, on one side a gently sloping approach was left not more than two hundred feet in width. This *quum*-clause explains *egregie munitum*.



PAGE 123—68 when sometimes they were waging war, at other time were repelling it when brought upon (them)

PAGE 124—69 But when they saw that it was moved and that it approached the walls

PAGE 125—70 they said that they give up themselves and all their possessions into their (the Romans') power; that they sought and begged one thing

PAGE 126—71 but that there was no condition of surrender except when the arms had been delivered; that he himself would do — —

PAGE 127—72 There was a rush thither from the nearest fortresses and the battle was fought by the enemy — —

### THIRD BOOK

PAGE 131—1 and this (which) village located in a valley a plain not large adjoining is hemmed in on all sides by very lofty mountains.

PAGE 133—2 and they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were endeavoring to occupy the peaks of the Alps 3 since neither the work of winter quarters nor the fortifications were fully completed nor was enough grain and other provisions secured, because, — —

PAGE 134—4 neither was it possible (*posset*, understood) for anyone to come to their aid 5 for arranging and executing these things which they had decreed 6 Historical infinitives denoting rapid action are translated like finite tenses. The same is true of *conjicere*, *repugnare*, *mittere*, *occurrere*, *ferre*, *superari*. 7 Our men at first repulse them bravely while their strength is fresh

PAGE 135—8 When now the fight was continuing unceasingly, — — 9 and as our men were becoming more faint, they began to, — —

PAGE 136—10 who, we have said, was spent with many wounds, — — 11 that there is one hope of safety

PAGE 137—12 nor of collecting themselves i. e. of recovering their senses 13 those (lit., these) who had come into the hope of getting possession of the camp, when they were

surrounded on every side. **14** nor suffered them to take stand even in the places that are higher, *quidem* emphasizes *in locis*. **15** and remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design and was seeing that he had met with other circumstances.

PAGE 138—**16** and so at the beginning of winter had set out into Illyricum **17** omit *mare* in translation.

PAGE 140—**18** they take oath among themselves through their chiefs that they would act in nothing (accusative of specification) except by common counsel and that they would bear, — —

PAGE 141—**19** ambassadors, a name, — — . . . had been detained by them and cast into chains. Supply *esse* with *retentos* and *conjectos*

PAGE 142 **20** Supply *esse* - that navigation was hindered **21** longer, or rather long, i. e. any length of time. **22** supplies of grain

PAGE 143—**23** These were the difficulties of waging the war lit., of war to be waged.

PAGE 144—**24** *esse* understood, forming the perfect passive infinitive after verbs of saying

PAGE 145—**25** Pluperfect of defective verb, *cæpi*, used with the force of the imperfect - they were beginning to despair

PAGE 146—**26** in order that they may be able the more easily to take the shoals and ebb-tides (lit., ebb of the tide); **27** for enduring any force and buffeting; the benches were made from beams a foot in width fastened together with iron nails of the thickness of a thumb.

PAGE 147—**28** and so great fury of the winds could (*posse*) not be withstood and so great masses of ships governed by sails conveniently enough **29** Some texts read *adigebatur*. - nor was a weapon easily shot at them.

PAGE 148—**30** nor could (*posse*) he inflict injury (*noceri*, passive voice) upon them, he decided that the fleet must be awaited. **31** about two hundred and twenty of their ships the best equipped and most provided with every kind of armament (lit., arms) — —

PAGE 149—**32** for they had understood that they could not inflict injury by the beak (prow). Lit., *hostes* understood is

subject of *posse*. 33 With a form not unlike that of wall-hooks. — —

PAGE 150—34 all advantage of their ships was lost at the same time i. e. all at once. 35 after the barbarians perceived that this was done

PAGE 151—36 and this condition (which thing) was especially favorable for completing the business 37 since the battle continued 38 in whom there was some counsel or dignity had gathered there; besides they had assembled in one place what ships had been everywhere

PAGE 152—39 under the hammer i. e. at auction

PAGE 153—40 an enthusiasm for fighting was [were] recalling, — —

PAGE 154—41 because he was thinking that a battle ought not to be undertaken by a lieutenant.....except on equal grounds or when some opportunity was given 42 to go over to the enemy 43 nor is it farther off than that on the next night Sabinus may lead out, — — and set out to Cæsar for the sake of bringing him aid. When this report was heard all shout that the opportunity for carrying on the business well must not be lost that it is the proper thing to go to camp.

PAGE 155—44 the want of food which had been provided by them without sufficient care. 45 Induced by these things they do not release Viridovix and the other leaders from the council before that it has been granted by them to take arms and to hasten to the camp

PAGE 156—46 at full speed, that as brief a period as possible might be given the Romans for assembling and arming themselves, and arrived out of breath. 47 It came to pass 48 and our soldiers with fresh strength having pursued them (*quos*, translated by and....them) encumbered slew a great number of them

PAGE 157—49 for undertaking wars, so their mind is soft and by no means sturdy [resistant] for bearing misfortunes.

PAGE 158—50 There was fighting long and sharply 51 that the security of the entire Aquitania was placed in their valor (Supply *esse* with *positam*)

PAGE 159—52 that it should be seen what they could

accomplish without the general, — — The clause: *quid possent.....duce* is subject of *perspici*, and the whole construction is the object of *caperent*. 53 and when they were bravely resisting, — — One of the many instances in which an ablative absolute may be rendered best in English by a subordinate clause.

PAGE 160—54 commit suicide 55 and the fighting there was violent

PAGE 161—56 however he obtained from Crassus to enjoy (English idiom, the enjoyment of) the same condition of surrender. 57 because they had learned that a town..... had been stormed (supply *esse*) in the few days in which (the Romans) had come there.

PAGE 162—58 he considered that he must not delay settling the issue (but that he should settle the issue) in battle. 59 that all thought the same thing, — —

PAGE 163—60 when the plan had been approved by their generals, although the troops of the Romans were drawn up, they were keeping themselves in camp. 61 that it was befitting them not to wait longer but that they should be off to the camp; having exhorted his men, all filled with eagerness, he hastens to the camp of the enemy.

PAGE 166—62 far into the night

PAGE 167—63 nor had ever sent ambassadors to him about peace. 64 and when Cæsar had arrived at the margin of these forests and had decided to fortify a camp nor meantime had an enemy been seen, — —

PAGE 168—65 therefore all their fields (lit., all the fields of them) having been laid waste (or, when all their fields had been laid waste and their villages and buildings burned,) — —

#### FOURTH BOOK

PAGE 171—1 from each of which they lead yearly a thousand armed men out of their territories. 2 but for the most part on milk and beef (lit., cattle) and are often (lit., much) in huntings; [in the chase]; and this condition (lit., which thing) — —



PAGE 173—**3** and fight on foot (lit., battle on the feet) **4** therefore however few they dare to approach (to) any number whatever of saddled horsemen. They do not permit wine to be imported — — **5** because they think that by this thing men are enfeebled for enduring labor and are effeminated. **6** are said to be unoccupied from the Suevi on one side; the Ubii come next in the other direction (lit., at the other part).

PAGE 175—**7** they arrived at the Rhine, the localities which the Memapii were inhabiting **8** they were checking the Germans from crossing over — — **9** they pretend that they are returning to their own habitations and countries — — **10** who have been informed of the departure of the Germans by spies

PAGE 176—**11** before (lit., before that) this part of the Memapii which was on this side of the Rhine was informed.

PAGE 177—**12** and very many answer fictions according to the wish of these. **13** lest he might encounter a severer war. Sometimes rendered: - a rather severe war **14** he learned that these things had been done which he suspected would be, that ambassadors had been sent by some states to the Germans and that they had been requested to depart (lit., that they should depart) from the Rhine — — Supply *esse* with *facta missas* and *invitados*. **15** and the Germans induced by this (*Qua*) hope — —

PAGE 178—**16** When he was distant a few days' journey from them — — **17** whose speech was as follows: (lit., these things). **18** nor yet do they refuse to contend in arms if they are attacked.

PAGE 181—**19** forming many great islands (lit., many and great) — —

PAGE 182—**20** if their chiefs and senate would give pledge (lit., give faith) by oath they were showing that they themselves would use those terms that were offered by Cæsar (lit., this condition, let him give them (themselves) a period of three days for accomplishing these things.

PAGE 183—**21** let them assemble hither on the next day as numerously as possible that he might learn concerning their demands (lit., the requests of them) **22** But as soon as (*ubi primum*. lit., when first) the enemy beheld our cavalry — —



Introduce the noun into the subordinate clause in English and supply a pronoun as *ii* or *illi*, as subject of *perturbaverunt*, the principal verb several lines below **23** some texts have *induciis*.

PAGE 185—**24** to whom he was judging no time at all should be given (lit., nothing of time) for taking counsel (lit., counsels). as well, (*simul*, correlative of *simul* below)

PAGE 186—**25** as it was said, for the sake of exonerating themselves **26** (contrary to what (lit., as) had been declared [said] and to what they themselves had sought — — **27** Cæsar rejoicing (lit., having rejoiced) ordered them when they were presented to him to be detained. Change the *quos* clause to the English idiom. The fate of these people is mention in the last few lines of Chapter 15.

PAGE 187—**28** *qui*, and they — — **29** time (lit., space) having been given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms **30** When their (lit., whose, or of whom) panic was indicated — —

PAGE 189—**31** of which (cause) this (that) was the most justifiable (lit., most just) **32** In addition also that portion of the cavalry — —

PAGE 190 **33** when Cæsar had sent messengers to them **34** if he should judge that it was not just that the Germans should cross the Rhine into Gaul, when he was unwilling, why should he demand that any of his empire or power should be across the Rhine.

PAGE 191—**35** since Ariovistus was routed and this last battle fought — — an ablative absolute denoting cause, it is best rendered in English by a subordinate clause

PAGE 192—**36** which having been separated and held fast in opposite directions — —

PAGE 193—**37** at the lower part of the river — — i. e. down stream.

PAGE 198—**38** the countries having been explored in so far as opportunity could (*potuit*, was able) be given to him — —

PAGE 199—**39** concerning the project of the former season (lit., time).

PAGE 200—**40** And when they were brought to him (lit., whom having been brought) he received them into alliance

PAGE 201—41 since this was executed by these (lit., by whom) a little more slowly [rather slowly] — —

PAGE 202—42 as the method of military affairs and especially as maritime movements (lit., thing) demand (as these (*quæ*) have a quick and unsteady motion).

PAGE 203—43 moreover the soldiers both must leap down at the same time from the ships and must take stand in the waves and must fight with the enemy — — (lit., it must be leaped down by the soldiers — —) 44 while they (*illi*, the enemy) — — 45 when Cæsar perceived this (which) — —

PAGE 205—46 there was sharp fighting by both sides.

PAGE 207—47 he said he would pardon their indiscretion (lit., ignorance)

PAGE 208—48 the fourth day after he had come into Britain (lit., it was come); when they were approaching to Britain — — 49 *quæ* translate as if *hæ*, these, subject of *complerentur*.

PAGE 209—50 (in which Cæsar had caused (lit., had provided, or taken care,) the army to be transported) — —

PAGE 210—51 and all things were lacking which were of use for repairing the ships and because it was evident to all that it was expedient to winter in Gaul (since) corn had not been provided in these places against the winter. 52 some texts have *ad ea faciendâ quæ Cæsar jussurat* for these (things) to be done which Cæsar had ordered i. e. for doing these things which Cæsar had ordered

PAGE 212—53 he brought it to pass that they could make a sailing (*navigari*, passive voice, lit., to be sailed) easily in the rest. Some texts read: *satis commode*, quite easily.

PAGE 213—54 and disorder the ranks generally by the very terror of the horses (lit., terror itself) — —

PAGE 214—55 and battle on foot (lit., on the feet)

PAGE 215—56 having thought the time unsuited for attacking the enemy, and for joining battle — — 57 a short time having passed (lit., having been interposed) 58 the rest (i. e. the Britains) who were in the fields departed. 59 how great an opportunity was presented (lit., given) for (of) making plunder and of freeing themselves forever — —

PAGE 217—60 he was thinking that the passage (lit., voyage) must not be incurred in winter (lit., exposed to win-

ter) with weak ships — — **61** when about three hundred soldiers had been landed from these (which) ships and were hartening into camp — — **65** if they were unwilling to be slain (lit., if they were unwilling themselves to be slain) — —

## FIFTH BOOK

PAGE 220—**1** that they should take care in the winter (that) ships as many as could be (lit., as they were able) should be built and the old repaired. He shows their size and form.

PAGE 221—**2** because he had learned that the waves became less great there on account of the frequent alterations of the tides. **3** for transporting cargos and a multitude of beasts of burden— —**4** and for this object (lit., for which thing) etc. *Res* is a very indefinite term and requires translation according to the connection. **5** He orders these (materials) which are of use for rigging ships, (lit., for ships to be rigged) to be brought from Spain. **6** he demands soldiers from the states. *Impero* takes the dative of the person and accusative of the thing.

PAGE 222—**7** he shows that he would proceed against the state with war.

PAGE 223—**8** nor were they far from (wanting much from) this condition of being possible (*possent*) to be launched (lit., led down) in a few days. **9** This state is by far the most powerful of all Gaul in cavalry

PAGE 224—**10** were striving with one another (lit., among themselves) concerning the chieftaincy. **11** he prepares war (*parare*, historical infinitive)

PAGE 225—**12** that he himself withdrew from his own people and had been unwilling to come to him for this reason in order that he might preserve the state more easily in its allegiance etc. **13** for what reason these things were said (i. e. his jealousy of Cingetorix).

PAGE 226—**14** and this thing (which thing) he was not only understanding should be done by himself because of his deserts but also he was judging that it concerned him greatly that the authority of this one (lit., the authority of him) should

prevail as much as possible among his own people, whose good will he had perceived was so excellent toward himself.

PAGE 227—15 had not been able, infinitive after *cognoscit*.

PAGE 228—16 Impossible to render exactly, lit.:— It was approaching hither that etc. It happened in addition that etc. 17 *suis* - his, i. e. Dumnorix's — — 18 After he saw that this was denied him persistently (lit., obstinately)

PAGE 229—19 (saying) that he was alarmed with the fear that not without reason it was done so that Gaul should be stripped of all the nobility etc. 20 he insinuated a pledge to the rest, demanded an oath etc. 21 because he was seeing that his madness had gone too far, he must look out (lit., it must be looked out) that (*ne*, lest) he should (*posset*) not injure himself and the state.

PAGE 230—22 he was taking pains (lit., giving work) etc. 23 and he orders that he be dragged back; if he shows violence (lit., makes violence) nor obeys, he orders that he be killed having considered that he would do nothing like a sane man since he had disregarded his commands in his presence.

PAGE 231—24 that he might take counsel in accordance with time and circumstances — — Plu. in English idiom for *re*.

PAGE 232—25 An approach was made to Britain by all the ships nearly at noon time. 26 Nor was an enemy seen in this place etc.

PAGE 234—27 and were preventing our men from penetrating within the fortifications.

PAGE 235—28 Some texts have the term *literis* in parenthesis as given here although quite probably it should be omitted.

PAGE 236—29 not the time of night even - *nocturnis* is emphasized by *quidem*.

PAGE 237—30 The chieftaincy of the command and of the managing of the war i. e. the leadership of the command and the chief management. 31 The interior part of Britian is inhabited by those who, it is handed down by memory, (by tradition) have been born in (i. e. are native to) the island itself. *Esse* is understood with *proditum*. The subject of *proditum esse* is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*.

PAGE 238—32 *examinatis*, lit., weighed.

PAGE 240—33 in *circuitu*, - all around. 34 and they have long hair.



PAGE 243—35 Add to this etc. See note 16 — — 36 and some were relieving some, others others in succession

PAGE 244—37 so that they were not keeping back from the standards and the legions. 38 neither did they give the opportunity of collecting themselves nor of halting.

PAGE 246—39 and by this fear was hindering them from roaming more widely. It followed (lit., was left) that Cæsar would not allow departure to be made (lit., it to be departed) too far from the marching-line of the legions and that injury should be inflicted upon the enemy (lit., it should be injured to the enemy in) by ravaging the fields and making conflagrations (lit., burnings) etc.

PAGE 248—40 many (of the enemy) etc.

PAGE 250—41 He prohibits and commands Cassivellaunus not to injure Mandubracius nor the Trinobantes. 42 *et*, omit in translating

PAGE 251—43 and (those) which Labienus had taken care to be made etc. 44 When Cæsar had awaited these (lit., which) etc.

PAGE 252—45 of these legions (lit., from which legions) he gave one etc.

PAGE 254—46 by whose management (lit., work) he may learn that Tasgetius had been killed. Meantime he was informed by all the lieutenants and quæstors to whom he had assigned legions that they had arrived in winter quarters and that the place was fortified for the winter quarters. This is an impersonal construction and impossible to translate literally (i. e. that it had been arrived into winter quarters etc.). In about fifteen days since they had come into winter quarters (lit., from which it was come etc.).

PAGE 257—47 that Gauls are not easily able to refuse Gauls, especially when a design was seeming best to be adopted (lit., entered into) concerning the restoring of the common liberties. 48 he advises Cæsar for his kindness, he beseeches Titurius for his hospitality — — 49 it is their plan (i. e. it is for them to decide) whether they etc.

PAGE 258—50 when he does this he (*sese*) both consults for the state because it will be relieved from winter quarters and returns a favor to Cæsar for his good offices (lit., merits, or services).



PAGE 259—51 that nothing must be performed rashly nor must they depart (lit., it to be departed) from winter quarters without the order of Cæsar. 52 The fact is a witness. 53 Meantime reinforcements would arrive both from the nearest winter quarters and from Cæsar.

PAGE 260—54 Neither otherwise would the Carnutes have formed the design of killing Tasgetius nor would the Eburones have come etc.

PAGE 261—55 The English idiom would require some such form as this: who would persuade himself, or, would be persuaded, regarding this etc. 56 In which (i. e. following that advice) if not present danger etc.

PAGE 263—57 Everything is calculated why they may not remain without danger and why the danger is increased by the weariness and wakefulness of the soldiers. 58 They set out at early dawn from the camp in such a manner (lit., so) as they etc. 59 but by Ambiorix as a most faithful man.

PAGE 265—60 was performing the duties of a general in summoning and encouraging the soldiers and of a soldier in the battle. 61 this seemed to be done etc.

PAGE 267—62 that they could in nowise be injured (lit., it was possible as to nothing to be injured to them) because of the lightness of their arms and their daily exercise.

PAGE 268—63 Then Titus Balventius has each thigh pierced with a javelin. 64 who had led the first century i. e. had been first centurion.

PAGE 271—65 that there is no trouble, for the legion, having been suddenly crushed, which winters with Cicero, to be slain etc.

PAGE 272—66 as great as they are able — — 67 *necesse*, unavoidable (lit., necessary)

PAGE 273—68 they (the Romans) had brought together etc.

PAGE 274—69 *contabulantur*, i. e. are built up with stories. 70 *nocturnum* is emphasized by *quidem* in the regular text. 71 they exhibit Ambiorix for the sake of creating confidence (lit., of making faith). 72 *inveterascere*, lit., to become old 73 he himself hopes that they may obtain what they sought in view of his justice.

PAGE 277—74 i. e. it was spread into every part of the

camp. **75** but no one scarcely even looked back and besides all were fighting most fiercely and most valiantly.

PAGE 279—**76** *pugnaretur*, lit., when it was fought etc. **77** “or what opportunity (lit., place) of proving thy valor dost thou await?” **78** Pullo’s shield is pierced.

PAGE 283—**79** for the sake of passing (lit., bearing), the winter.

PAGE 284—**80** *reciderat*, lit., had fallen back.

PAGE 286—**81** and therefore was thinking he must relax with an easy mind from speed (lit., it must be relaxed)

PAGE 288—**82** and that there be confusion as much as possible in managing these things and that it be performed (*agi*) with a pretence of fear. The enemy having been tempted by all these things (lit., by all which things) etc. **83** they approach nearer i. e. the enemy approach.

PAGE 289—**84** after this time no longer would be the opportunity. **85** nor was he seeing that the place had been left with a trifling loss on their part.

PAGE 292—**86** without anxiety on the part of Cæsar etc.

PAGE 294—**87** they were not obedient to the command. It availed so much among barbarian men that some were found the leaders in waging war etc.

PAGE 295—**88** lost no time of the whole winter without sending ambassadors across the Rhine, inviting the states, promising money, (who) should say etc. **89** Nor yet was it possible to prevail upon any state of the Germans to cross the Rhine;

PAGE 298—**90** but was thinking he should not lose any opportunity for performing a matter well.

PAGE 299—**91** with many insulting words. **92** and enjoins, (lit., forbids), which refers to the part of the sentence below: *omnes peterent quemquam*.

## SIXTH BOOK

PAGE 302—**1** *augeri* cannot be translated literally, i. e. to be increased, the idea being that the loss can not only be repaired but may be more than made good, *supplemented* ap-

proaches the meaning. **2** *proximis* and **3** *ulteriores* Germans or states is understood — — **4** they bind each other (*inter se*) by an oath. **5** *parari, esse, venire, communicare, sollicitari,* are infinitives after *videret* (saw that), which are translated as finite past tenses.

PAGE 304—**6** and had united these states, (i. e. with the Senones,) but they were thought to have been absent from this council (the recent confederacy). *Hac re* this thing (the adjournment to Lutetia) etc.

PAGE 305—**7** for the sake of asking quarter.

PAGE 306—**8** Lit., not to be about to contend.

PAGE 307—**9** Lit., for the sake of peace to be sought.

PAGE 308—**10** at fifteen thousand paces (from Labienus).

PAGE 309—**11** Lit., at first light.

PAGE 310—**12** Lit., among themselves.

PAGE 312—**13** Lit., for the sake of themselves to be cleared

PAGE 313—**14** Lit., he becomes, or is made more certain.

PAGE 315—**15** from one another.

PAGE 316—**16** and forced them to swear publicly that they would enter (*esse* understood with *inituros*, lit., to be about to enter) into no design (lit., nothing of design) against the Sequani.

PAGE 317—**17** Lit., themselves to use — — **18** as it was perceived that they (*quos*) equaled the Ædui in favor etc.

PAGE 319—**19** Lit., they to whom it had been interdicted are held in the number etc.

PAGE 321—**20** Lit., to pass from some to others, — plural to correspond with pl. number of *animas*, not the form.

PAGE 322—**21** they vow that they will sacrifice them.

PAGE 323—**22** *depellere, tradere, tenere, regere,* are infinitives after *habent...opinionem*.

PAGE 324—**23** Supply *esse* with *proditum*.

PAGE 325—**24** according to the manner with slaves, i. e. torture. **25** Lit., to have been to the heart to them living.

PAGE 328—**26** as wide as possible.

PAGE 331—**27** they not themselves even compare etc., *se* is emphasized.

PAGE 337—**28** because he thought he must not contend in battle etc.

PAGE 340—29 for devastating this locality, lit., for this locality to be devastated.

PAGE 348—30 consciousness leaves Sextius, i. e. Sextius faints.

PAGE 350—31 through the midst of the enemy etc.

PAGE 352—32 would not have assaulted the camp etc.

PAGE 353—33 Lit., for harassing the enemy. 34 Lit., it would seem it to be perished by these.

PAGE 355—35 He inflicted death by flogging.

## SEVENTH BOOK

PAGE 357—1 Lit., at the peril of their head, like our term capital (head *caput*) punishment.

PAGE 359—2 Lit., it is departed from the council.

PAGE 360—3 Lit., the sun rising (abl. absolute) — — 4 i. e. between nine and ten P. M., viz., about sixteen hours. It must be kept in mind that many miles of the country were then uninhabited. 5 recourse is had to arms, lit., it is rushed to arms.

PAGE 363—6 who they ascertain had made this plan etc. 7 *virtute*, i. e. vigor. Sometimes translated: thanks to Cneius Pompey.

PAGE 366—8 Having been stirred by their entreaties etc. 9 because he had anticipated in his judgment that these things would come to pass as regards Vercingetorix, he departs from the army etc.

PAGE 367—10 for undertaking a plan.

PAGE 370—11 very few of the whole number of the enemy having missed, (or escaped), being captured etc. *Cuncti*, in sense, goes with *perpaucis ex numero*. 12 When ambassadors had come to him from this town etc.

PAGE 371—13 as soon as the townsmen had seen it (*quem* i. e. *equitatum*) and entertained the hope of aid etc.

PAGE 373—14 Supply *esse* with *laturus* and *progressuros*, that the Romans either would not bear privation or would proceed rather far from the camp, with great danger.

PAGE 376—15 Lit., that it should be gone.

PAGE 377—16 to such a degree that the soldiers etc.

PAGE 380—17 since he saw them (*quos*) so prepared in mind etc.

PAGE 381—18 that he prefers to have etc. 19 feebleness of purpose.

PAGE 382—20 *gratiam habendam*, thanks must be given, is understood before *huic*.

PAGE 384—21 and when they had caught them (*quos*) etc.

PAGE 385—22 at equal intervals apart (*inter se*) etc.

PAGE 386—23 In this passage the same phrase (*inter se*) may be rendered one another, each other.

PAGE 387—24 where first it should be thwarted (lit., it should be run to meet so as to frustrate or thwart).

PAGE 388—25 When the battle was raging in all places etc. 26 was depending on that instant of time (lit., to be placed in that instant etc., *esse* being understood with *positam*).

PAGE 389—27 Lit., was retarding the Romans for following.

PAGE 391—28 that if any advance to meet them (*obviam*) on any side they might fight with the battle line arrayed.

PAGE 392—29 that part of the camp which had fallen to each from the beginning.

PAGE 397—30 That is, each of them has his own (followers) adherents. might translate freely *suas eorum*, each of them has his own partisans.

PAGE 401—31 he resolved that he must not act regarding a seige etc.

PAGE 402—32 both in a large measure from water and from unrestricted (free) foraging etc.

PAGE 409—33 who (*quibus*) on account of the size of the camp must remain continually on the wall without relief (lit., the same).

PAGE 411—34 Although Cæsar was knowing these things (lit., which things — *quæ*) etc.

PAGE 419—35 While they are fighting (While the fighting proceeds) most violently etc.

PAGE 420—36 *Manus*, force lit., band, i. e. the force of the enemy.

PAGE 421—37 and was the salvation of his men. 38 viz., the tenth legion.



PAGE 427—38 Lit., it must be hastened by himself if it must be hazarded in building the bridges.

PAGE 429—40 or Melodunum, accoring to some authorities.

PAGE 431—41 aid must be sought from his own mental resources (lit., by the courage of mind)

PAGE 432—42 When he had come there etc.

PAGE 437—43 in a pitched battle.

PAGE 443—44 *Alesia*, the modern Alise-St-Reine where many relics of the seige have been excavated.

PAGE 446—45 and if they should be rather heedless (dilatatory) he shows etc.

PAGE 447—46 *Poenam capitis*, capital punishment.

PAGE 448—47 from each other eighty feet i. e. about four hundred of them.

PAGE 449—48 where if any (*qui*) might enter — — 49 the foot lit., feet, of each (the several feet) in the ground at the bottom (from [on] the lowest ground) were trodden in with earth.

PAGE 451—50 could be surrounded not by a multitude even great, *quidem* emphasizes *magna*. 51 (if it happens so through its withdrawal) i. e. the departure of the cavalry. This clause is generally omitted in translation.

PAGE 454—52 when these would be fighting in a sally etc.

PAGE 456—53 for the joy of it, i. e. for a mere idea.

PAGE 457—54 For what was in (lit., to) that war like this?

PAGE 460—55 active (soldiers) of the light armed troops.

PAGE 461—56 *ac* must be rendered as if *neq*, nor, i. e. neither a noble nor cowardly act could be concealed.

PAGE 462 —57 by one-pounder sling shots. 58 Mark Anthony, the triumvir.

PAGE 464—59 and because they could not enclose it in the works on account of the extent of the surface, our men etc. (*quem, viz.*, and . . it)

PAGE 465 60 There was fighting at the same time in all places,

PAGE 466—61 in which it was fitting that they should fight to the uttermost.

PAGE 468—62 when they are fighting more desperately etc.

# TRANSLATIONS

The business of the Translation Publishing Company, Inc., is devoted exclusively to the publishing of translations and of dictionaries, and to the distributing of the translations and dictionaries of all other publishers.

## **TEACHERS' PARALLEL TEXT TRANSLATIONS**

These translations have been prepared to include both the Latin text and its English translation, so arranged as to show the corresponding relation which the one bears to the other. The Latin, on the book's left page, is authentic and complete; the English, on the right page directly opposite, is the exact and literal equivalent.

**Caesar's Gallic War—First Four Books . . . . . \$1.50**

**Cicero's Orations—Against Catiline, For Archias  
the Poet and the Manilian Law . . . . . 1.50**

**Virgil's Aeneid—First Six Books . . . . . 1.50**

Other Teachers' Parallel Text Translations in preparation.

## **THE CLASSICS FULLY PARSED**

The purpose of this series is word by word to resolve into its grammatical parts each sentence of the text generally read by classical students so that their translation into English may be understood in every detail. Each book includes in addition to the original text and its literal translation, the parsing of every sentence, the defining of every word and the analysis of the structure of every idiomatic phrase.

**Caesar's Gallic War, Book 1 . . . . . \$2.00**

**Cicero's Orations Against Catiline, Book 1 . . . . . 2.00**

**Virgil's Aeneid, Book 1 . . . . . 2.00**

**Horace Odes, Books 1 and 2 . . . . . 2.00**

**Xenophon's Anabasis, Book 1 . . . . . 2.00**

Other Fully Parsed Classics in Preparation.

If you do not find on this list the particular Translation you desire write us and we shall secure it for you—if it exists.

**THE FIRST ORATION**  
**OF MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO**  
**AGAINST LUCIUS CATILINE.**

---

1. Quousque How far	tandem at length	abutêre, will you abuse.	Catilina, O Catiline
nostrâ (abl.) our	patientiâ (abl.)? patience?	Quamdiu How long	etiam also (will)
iste that	furor fury	tuus of yours	eludet (fut.) elude
finem end (will that)	effrenata unbridled	audacia audacity	jactabit (fut.) flaunt
Nihil In no wise	ne (has)	nocturnum the nightly	præsidium guard
nihil in no wise (have)	vigiliæ the watches	urbis, of the city.	nihil, in no wise (has).
timor the fear	populi, of the people.	nihil in no wise (has)	concurus the assemblage
omnium of all	bonorum, the good,	nihil in no wise (has)	hic this
locus place	habendi of holding	senatûs, the senate,	nihil in no wise (have)
que and	vultus looks	horum of these	moverunt (perf.) moved
Non (Do you) not	sentis perceive	tua (that) your	consilia counsels [plans]
Non (Do you) not	vides see	tuam (that) your	conjuracionem conspiracy
teneri to be [is] held	constrictam bound	conscientiâ by the consciousness	omnium of al <sup>l</sup> .

## VIRGIL'S AENEID.

### FIRST BOOK

#### *The Landing in Africa.*

Arma virumque cano, qui primus ab oris  
Arms and the hero I sing who first from the shores  
Troiae, profugus fato, venit Italiam Laviniaque  
of Troy, an exile by fate came to Italy and the Lavinian  
litora; multum iactatus ille et terris et  
shores, much tossed (was) he both on the lands and  
alto, vi superum, ob  
on the deep, through the violence of the gods above on account of  
memorem iram saevae Iunonis; et  
the unforgetting [relentless] rage of cruel Juno, and  
5 multa quoque passus bello, dum  
many things also having suffered in war, till  
conderet urbem inferretque deos Latino;  
he should found a city and introduce (his) gods into Latium,  
unde Latinum genus, Albanique patres, atque  
whence the Latin race, and the Alban fathers, and  
moenia altae Romae.  
the walls [ramparts] of lofty Rome.  
Musa, memora mihi causas, quo numine  
O muse, relate to me the causes [reasons]. what deity  
laeso, dolensve quid, regina deum  
having been offended or grieving at what, the queen of the gods  
impulerit virum 10 insignem pietate  
compelled a hero renowned for (his) piety [goodness]  
volvere tot casus, adire tot labores.  
to undergo so many calamities, to encounter so many toils.

## STUDENTS' LITERAL TRANSLATIONS

To one who is reading the classics a literal translation is a convenient and legitimate help. Every well-informed person will read the classics either in the original or in a translation :

Caesar's Gallic War—Seven Books .....	\$ .75
Cicero's Orations .....	.75
Cicero On Old Age and Friendship .....	.75
Virgil's Aeneid—First Six Books.....	.75
Horace—Complete .....	.75
Livy, Books 21 and 22 .....	.75
Tacitus' Germany and Agricola.....	.75
Xenophon's Anabasis .....	.75
Mérimée's Colomba.....	1.25
Alarcón's El Capitan Veneno.....	1.50
Hillern's Higher Than The Church.....	.75
Freytag's Die Journalisten.....	.75
Heyse's L'Arrabbiata .....	.75
Storm's Immensee.....	.75
Gerstacker's Germelshausen.....	.75

If you do not find on this list the particular Translation you desire, write us and we shall secure it for you—if it exists.

## STUDENTS' SERIES OF DICTIONARIES

Compiled from the best authorities on modern languages. Accurate in their definitions, precise in the arrangement of their text, sufficient in their detail to provide the student with a complete working knowledge of the foreign language. These books represent the utmost possible in a handy dictionary at a moderate price.

—Spanish-English—English-Spanish Dict'y...	\$1.25
—French-English—English-French Dict'y.....	1.25
—German-English—English-German Dict'y...	1.25
—Italian-English—English-Italian Dict'y.....	1.25

---

Noble's Large Type Spanish-English—English-Spanish Dictionary.....	\$3.50
--	--------









